

# Spire CXP5000 Color Server for Xerox DocuColor 5252 and 2045 Digital Color Presses

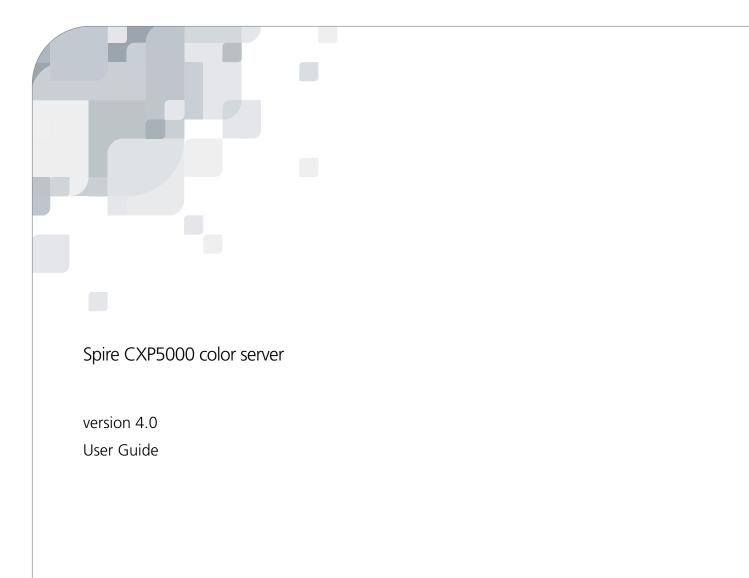
version 4.0

731-00181A-EN

Creo

www.creo.com

This page is intentionally left blank.





This page is intentionally left blank.

#### Copyright

Copyright © 2004 Creo Inc. All rights reserved.

No copying, distribution, publication, modification, or incorporation of this document, in whole or part, is permitted without the express written permission of Creo. In the event of any permitted copying, distribution, publication, modification, or incorporation of this document, no changes in or deletion of author attribution, trademark legend, or copyright notice shall be made.

No part of this document may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, published, used for commercial exploitation, or transmitted, in any form by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the express written permission of Creo Inc.

This document is also distributed in Adobe Systems Incorporated's PDF (Portable Document Format). You may reproduce the document from the PDF file for internal use. Copies produced from the PDF file must be reproduced in whole.

#### Trademarks

The Creo wordmark, Creo logo, and the names of the Creo products and services referred to in this document are trademarks of Creo Inc.

Adobe, Acrobat, and the Acrobat logo are registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated, and are registered in the U.S. Patents and Trademark Office and may be registered in other jurisdictions.

Apple, AppleTalk, AppleShare, EtherTalk, LocalTalk, Macintosh, and LaserWriter are trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows 2000, and Windows NT are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corp.

Xerox is a registered trademark of Xerox Corp.

Other brand or product names are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

#### FCC Compliance

The Creo equipment referred to in this document complies with the requirements in Part 15 of FCC Rules for a Class A computing device. Operation of the Creo equipment in a residential area may cause unacceptable interference to radio and TV reception, requiring the operator to take whatever steps are necessary to correct the interference.

#### Limitation of Liability

The product, software or services are being provided on an "as is" and "as available" basis. Except as may be stated specifically in your contract, Creo Inc. expressly disclaims all warranties of any kind, whether express or implied, including, but not limited to, any implied warranties of merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose and non-infringement.

You understand and agree that Creo Inc. shall not be liable for any direct, indirect, incidental, special, consequential or exemplary damages, including but not limited to, damages for loss of profits, goodwill, use, data or other intangible losses (even if Creo has been advised of the possibility of such damages), resulting from: (i) the use or the inability to use the product or software; (ii) the cost of procurement of substitute goods and services resulting from any products, goods, data, software, information or services purchased; (iii) unauthorized access to or alteration of your products, software or data; (iv) statements or conduct of any third party; (v) any other matter relating to the product, software, or services.

The text and drawings herein are for illustration and reference only. The specifications on which they are based are subject to change. Creo Inc. may, at any time and without notice, make changes to this document. Creo Inc., for itself and on behalf of its subsidiaries, assumes no liability for technical or editorial errors or omissions made herein, and shall not be liable for incidental, consequential, indirect, or special damages, including, without limitation, loss of use, loss or alteration of data, delays, or lost profits or savings arising from the use of this document.

#### Patents

This product is covered by one or more of the following U.S. patents:

-	-					
RE37,376	5,325,217	5,532,728	5,742,743	5,996,499	6,158,345	6,353,216
4,558,302	5,339,176	5,561,691	5,764,374	5,998,067	6,159,659	6,366,339
4,743,091	5,343,059	5,568,595	5,764,381	6,003,442	6,164,637	6,371,026
4,992,864	5,355,446	5,576,754	5,771,794	6,014,471	6,180,325	6,377,739
5,049,901	5,359,451	5,579,115	5,785,309	6,016,752	6,181,362	6,387,597
5,079,721	5,359,458	5,592,309	5,813,346	6,031,932	6,181,439	6,396,422
5,103,407	5,367,360	5,594,556	5,818,498	6,043,865	6,186,068	6,396,618
5,111,308	5,384,648	5,600,448	5,854,883	6,060,208	6,189,452	6,407,849
5,113,249	5,384,899	5,608,822	5,861,904	6,063,528	6,191,882	6,414,755
5,122,871	5,412,491	5,615,282	5,861,992	6,063,546	6,204,874	6,422,801
5,124,547	5,412,737	5,625,766	5,875,288	6,072,518	6,208,369	6,435,091
5,132,723	5,420,702	5,636,330	5,894,342	6,090,529	6,214,276	6,441,914
5,150,225	5,420,722	5,649,220	5,900,981	6,096,461	6,217,965	6,450,092
5,153,769	5,459,505	5,650,076	5,934,196	6,098,544	6,260,482	6,456,396
5,155,782	5,473,733	5,652,804	5,942,137	6,107,011	6,266,080	6,476,931
5,157,516	5,481,379	5,680,129	5,946,426	6,112,663	6,266,134	6,477,955
5,208,818	5,488,906	5,691,823	5,947,028	6,115,056	6,267,054	6,509,903
5,208,888	5,497,252	5,691,828	5,958,647	6,121,996	6,268,948	6,541,181
5,247,174	5,508,828	5,696,393	5,966,504	6,130,702	6,283,589	6,545,772
5,249,067	5,509,561	5,699,174	5,969,872	6,134,393	6,295,076	6,564,018
5,283,140	5,517,359	5,699,740	5,973,801	6,136,509	6,299,572	
5,291,273	5,519,852	5,708,736	5,986,819	6,137,580	6,318,266	
5,323,248	5,526,143	5,713,287	5,995,475	6,147,789	6,352,816	

Creo Inc. 3700 Gilmore Way Burnaby, B.C., Canada V5G 4M1 Tel: +1.604.451.2700 Fax: +1.604.437.9891

http://www.creo.com

.....

Internal 731 00181A-EN Revised April 2004

# **Environment Management System (EMS)**

#### **EMS** Overview

Creo is committed to the Environment Management System (EMS). According to this policy, we are committed to keeping customers and service engineers informed about the principles of handling company products with an emphasis on environmental conservation.

The Triple-R principles are **reduce**, **reuse**, and **recycle**.

Any item that can be recycled should be recycled and any item that can be reused should be reused, to reduce the quantities of trash that cities must handle.

#### Recycling

Used items such as paper, plastic, electronic parts, and glass – should be sent for recycling.

#### **Packaging Materials**

Packaging materials should be kept at the customer's premises. For disposal, they should be sent to a plant for paper, carton, and wood recycling.

#### **End of Product Life**

When the product reaches its end of life, it should be sent for recycling to a recognized local company.

This page is intentionally left blank.

# Contents

1	Welcome	1
	Welcome to the Spire CXP5000 Color Server User Guide	2
	Overview of Guide	
	Overview of Spire CXP5000 Color Server	
	Hardware and Software Components	6
	New Features	6
	Features	
	Supported Formats	
	Workflow	
	Data Flow	
	Spire CXP5000 Color Server Network Printers	
2	Getting Started	15
	Turning On the Spire CXP5000 Color Server	
	Opening the Workspace From the Start Menu	
	Logging On	
	The Workspace	
	Customizing the Workspace View	
	The Server and Printer Monitors	
	The Settings Window	
	The Resource Center	
	The Job Parameters Window	
	Handling Conflicts	
	Basic Job Workflow	
	Submitting	
	Processing	
	Storage	
	Resubmitting	
	Turning Off the Spire CXP5000 Color Server	
3	Working From a Client Workstation	37
	Default Network Printers	
	Setting PPD File Parameters	
	Working From Windows Client Workstations	
	Defining a Printer on Windows Client Workstations	
	Printing From Windows	
	Working From Macintosh Client Workstations	
	Defining a Printer on Macintosh Client Workstations	
	Printing from a Macintosh	
	Spire Web Center	

153

185

Downloads	83
Links	84
Using Hot Folders	
Hot Folder File Formats	86
Hot Folders and Brisque or Prinergy jobs (GAP Formats)	86
Using Hot Folders from Client Workstations	86
LPR Printing with the Spire CXP5000 Color Server	91
Setting up an LPR Printer in Windows NT 4.0	91
Setting up an LPR Printer in Windows 2000 and Windows XP	97
Windows NT, Windows 2000, Windows XP Command Line	105
Setting up an LPR Printer in Macintosh OS X (10.2)	
Using the Choose Spire Over IP Utility to set up an LPR Printer in Macintosh OS 9	108
Printing from Linux	114
Defining a Printer on UNIX Client Workstations	118
UNIX Connectivity	119
Installing the SFU 3.0 Software	
Increasing NFS Performance Using the Windows Registry	121
Creating a File-name Translation File	122
Configuring NFS Server Settings with SFU	123
Setting Up Windows SFU for Brisque	
Brisque Workstation Installation and Configuration Procedures	
Configuring and Setting up NDS	
Defining NDS Printer Queues in the NDS Tree	
Using the Novell NetWare Administrator Application	136
Using the NDS PConsole	148
Configuring IPX Printing	
Installing the Printer Drivers on a Novell Client Using the Adobe PS Application	151

#### 4 Basic Workflows

mporting and Printing Jobs	154
Importing Files	
Reprinting Jobs	
Basic Settings	
The Print Settings Tab	
The Paper Stock Tab	167
The Print Quality Tab	176

# 5 Managing Jobs

Dverview	186
Vanaging the Job Queues 1	186
Setting Queue Preferences 1	186
The Queues Window 1	
Queues Status Panel Information	
Job Batching Workflow 1	
Reordering Jobs in the Queues 1	

#### Contents

Suspending and Resuming Queues	193
Handling Jobs in the Queues	
Aborting a Running Job	
Moving Waiting Jobs to the Storage Window	
Deleting Jobs	
Viewing and Editing the Job Parameters	196
Running a Job Immediately	197
Managing the Storage Window	198
Discarding RTP Data	199
Filtering the List	199
Handling Jobs in the Storage Window	200
Submitting Jobs	201
Duplicating Jobs	201
Archiving and Retrieving Jobs	
Viewing the Job History	
Job Editor	205
Navigation buttons	205
Preview Buttons	
Viewing Pages in the Job Editor	
Editing RTP Jobs	
Job Accounting	
Viewing the Accounting Information	
Setting the Accounting/Message Viewer	
Printing and Exporting the Accounting Log	
Managing Virtual Printers	
Job Flow	
Job Ticket Report	226

# 6 Production Printing

Imposition Workflow	230
The Imposition Tab	231
Imposition Templates	242
Editing Imposition Jobs	
High-Resolution Workflow	
Creo APR	253
OPI	256
Creo APR and OPI File Formats	258
Preparing to Print Using Creo APR or OPI	258
Printing with Creo APR or OPI	259
Sample Job: Printing a Brochure Using the Creo APR Workflow	260
PDF Workflow	
Export as PDF2Go	264
Page Exceptions	
The Exceptions Tab	267
Using Page Exception Workflows	
Dynamic Page Exceptions	

Setting the Spire CXP5000 Color Server for Dynamic Page Exceptions	279
Adding Dynamic Page Exceptions in PostScript and Variable Print Specification Formats	
Adding Dynamic Page Exceptions in PDF	
Adding Dynamic Page Exceptions in VIPP Format	
Printing Tabs Using the Dynamic Page Exceptions Workflow	
Tips and Limitations	
The Finishing Tab	
Admin. Page	
Slip Sheet	
Front Cover	
Back Cover	
Finisher	
Fonts	
Font List	297
Managing Fonts on the Spire CXP5000 Color Server	
Downloading Fonts	301
Substituting Fonts	
-	

## 7 Color Workflow

Calibration	308
Guidelines for Successful Calibration	
The Calibration Process	
Calibrating the DTP34 Densitometer	
Color Calibration Methods	
Calibrating the Spire CXP5000 Color Server	
Reading Color Density Data	331
Printing the Job with the Calibration Table	
Default Color Flow	
Color Mode	
RGB Workflow	
CMYK Workflow	
Spot Workflow	
Destination Profile	
Screening	
Calibration	
Ink Saving (GCR)	
Color Adjustments	
Color Tools	
Profile Manager	
Spot Color Editor and Workflow	
Gradation Tool	

# 8 Graphic Arts Workflow

Printing PrePress Files - GAP Files	372
Importing GAP Files	372

Supporting GAP Files	
GAP File Structure	
Preflight Check	
Preflight Report	
Export as Creo Synapse InSite Job	

## 9 VI Workflow

VI Overview	382
VI Document Formats	383
Creo Variable Print Specification	384
VIPP	
VIPP 2001 and PPML	386
PostScript Files	387
Using Creo Variable Print Specification to Print a VI Job	387
Useful VI Print Options	388
Managing VI Elements	391
Deleting VI Elements	392
Archiving VI Elements	393
Retrieving VI Elements	393
Applying VI Structure to Large Files (Split to Booklets)	

# 10 System Administration

Setting Up and Configuring the Spire CXP5000 Color Server	398
Server Setup	398
Network Setup	401
Remote Tools Setup	405
Security	408
System Disks	410
Backing up the Configuration	411
Localization	
Pre-RIP Preview	416
General Defaults	417
Print Queue Manager	417
Color	
Messages	422
View Configuration	424
System Messages	425
The Alerts Window	425
Job History	427
The Message Viewer	428
Reinstalling the System	
Reinstalling the Operating System	434
Backing Up the Job List Database	434
Reinstalling the Windows 2000 Professional Operating System	
Reinstalling the Creo Application Software	

381

Disk Striping	437
Initial Disk Striping Procedure	437
Establishing the Correct Disk Striping Procedure	438
Striping Dynamic Disks	439
Striping Unknown Disks	443
The Configuration Wizard (If Backup Available)	452
Restoring the Configuration	452
The Configuration Wizard (If Recovery Fails or is Unavailable)	457
Choosing the Configuration Type	457
Setting the Language	458
Configuring the Host Name	459
Setting the Date and Time	462
Setting the Default Measurement Units	463
Configuring the IP Address	464
Configuring the Apple Talk Zone	466
Completing the Configuration	468
Installing and Configuring Novell Client for Spire	470
Backing Up the Creo System Partition	470
Backing Up the Job List Database	470
Configuring the McAfee VirusScan	470
Backing Up and Restoring the Creo System Partition	471
Backing Up and Restoring the Job List Database	473

# Glossary

Index

477



# Welcome

Welcome to the Spire CXP5000 Color Server User Guide2	
Overview of Guide	
Overview of Spire CXP5000 Color Server4	

# Welcome to the Spire CXP5000 Color Server User Guide

Welcome to your Spire CXP5000 color server User Guide. This user guide provides you with information about the Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press and also refers to the Xerox DocuColor 2045 Digital Color Press.

The Spire CXP5000 color server is a powerful, comprehensive color server that provides high throughput and print predictability to digital workflows. In combination with the Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press, the Spire CXP5000 color server effectively addresses the growth of on-demand printing needs and delivers the best output quality available.

Throughout this guide, we look forward to supporting you all the way from prepress to print.

This user guide will help you operate the Spire CXP5000 color server. It can also be used as a reference guide for questions or procedures. Study this user guide to take full advantage of the many unique and advanced features of the Spire CXP5000 color server.

This user guide is for Spire CXP5000 color server operators and system administrators. This guide explains how you can quickly and easily print from the Spire CXP5000 color server or from a client workstation. Stepby-step procedures are included for new and occasional Spire CXP5000 color server users. Detailed information is provided for users who require in-depth knowledge of the Spire CXP5000 color server.

# Overview of Guide

Table 1: Guide Overview

Chapter	Contents	Description
Chapter 1	Welcome	This chapter introduces the guide and the Spire CXP5000 color server features and workflows.
Chapter 2	Getting Started	This chapter explains how to turn on the Spire CXP5000 color server and provides explanations about the Spire CXP5000 color server workspace and main windows.
Chapter 3	Working from a Client Workstation	This chapter explains how set up Windows <sup>®</sup> and Macintosh <sup>®</sup> client workstations and how to configure LPR printing. It also explains how to setup and configure Novell Directory Services.
Chapter 4	Basic Workflows	This chapter explains how to perform basic workflows in the Spire CXP5000 color server, such as importing and printing jobs, and how to set basic parameters in the Print Settings, Paper Stock and Print Quality Tab.
Chapter 5	Managing Jobs	This chapter explains how to manage jobs in the Queue Manager and in the Storage window. It also explains how to export jobs to an InSite server and how to use the Job Preview & Editor tool and the Thumbnail window. A section about managing disk space is also provided.
Chapter 6	Production Printing	This chapter provides the workflows for imposition, high resolution, PDF, and page exception (manual/ dynamic) print jobs. In addition it describes how to select finishing options and work with fonts.
Chapter 7	Color Workflow	This chapter explains how to work with color in the Spire CXP5000 color server, and includes calibration and RGB and CMYK workflows. It also explains how to adjust colors, and to use color tools and post-RIP controls.

Table	1:	Guide	Overview
-------	----	-------	----------

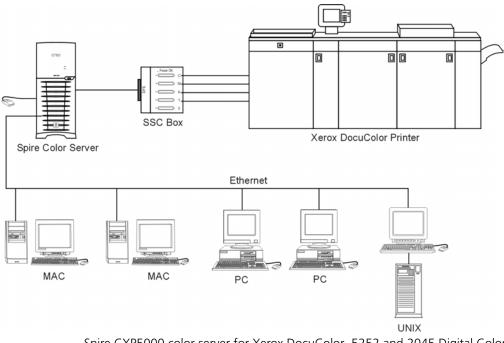
Chapter	Contents	Description
Chapter 8	Graphic Arts Workflow	This chapter contains the graphic arts workflow, which includes importing and supporting Graphic Art Port (GAP) files, performing a pre-flight check, and the Creo® Network Graphic Production workflow.
Chapter 9	Variable Information Workflow	This chapter contains the procedure for printing variable information jobs, from managing the VI data to converting PostScript <sup>®</sup> files to VI by splitting the file into a booklet.
Chapter 10	System Administration	This chapter explains how to administrate your system using the Administration window utilities.

# Overview of Spire CXP5000 Color Server

The Spire CXP5000 color server is an on-demand pre-press system that uses Creo Spire advanced pre-press technologies, to drive a Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press.

As an optimal digital color solution for printers, the Spire CXP5000 color server enables you to print from Windows, Macintosh, and UNIX® client workstations. The Spire CXP5000 color server processes image files in page-description language (PDL) formats—for example, PostScript, PDF, and Variable Information—using RIP (Raster Image Processor) technology. The system converts image files into a suitable RTP (Ready-To-Print) format for direct, high-quality digital printing. The Spire CXP5000 color server also streamlines the printing process by allowing printing with preset workflows.

In combination with the Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press, the Spire CXP5000 color server enables you to efficiently print flyers, brochures, pamphlets, dummy catalogs, short-run trials, and print-ondemand publications. When installed as a fast, network printer with the Spire CXP5000 color server, the Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press prints up to 52 full-color A4 (210mm x 297mm) or Letter (8.5 inches x 11inches) pages per minute. The Spire CXP5000 color server combines RIP functionalities, automation, control tools and special hardware development capabilities with PC architecture.



Spire CXP5000 color server for Xerox DocuColor 5252 and 2045 Digital Color Presses



**WARNING:** A shielded ethernet cable must be used from the Token Ring board to the Token Ring Hub to maintain compliance with Council Directive 89/336/ EEC.

#### Hardware and Software Components

The Spire CXP5000 color server is a dedicated Creo platform running in a Windows 2000 environment.

The Spire CXP5000 color server includes:

- Creo hardware, including the interface board
- Software, including:
  - □ Creo Application Software
  - □ Windows 2000 Professional Operating System
  - □ Adobe<sup>®</sup> Acrobat<sup>®</sup> version 5.0

#### **New Features**

The new version of the Spire CXP5000 color server includes the following new features:

New GUI Design

The Spire CXP5000 color server graphic user interface has been updated to a new design with new icons and a new feel that is moreuser-friendly. New features of the GUI include new options, such as user profiles and preference settings.

• Security Features

New and improved security features in the Spire CXP5000 color server, include access control, and removable disk and disk wipe options.

#### Client Tools

The following have been added for client workstations:

Font downloader for Windows fonts - The Spire CXP5000 color server provides a special hot folder for downloading fonts from a Windows client workstation. The hot folder is published in the Spire CXP5000 color server D:\Hot Folders\HF\_Fontdownloader. You can use the **HF\_Fontdownloader** hot folder to install new or missing fonts to the Spire CXP5000 color server fonts dictionary. The fonts are installed when you drag them to the hot folder.

- XPIF support The Spire CXP5000 color server can receive Xerox Programming Information Format (XPIF), and automatically convert this format to Spire CXP5000 color server job parameters.
- UNIX connectivity The NFS server enables the user to mount the Spire shared/hot folder

#### Color and Quality Enhancements

The following color and quality enhancements have been added:

- Import RGB profiles RGB source profiles can be imported via Profile Manager
- Destination profile Mapping to destination profiles according to paper sets

#### Feature Enhancements

The following feature enhancements have been added:

- Dynamic page exceptions More dynamic page exception commands within a job are supported, True Inserts within a job, Plex SPD commands, and Support XRX commands in PDF files. The **Preflight** parameter enables you to check if your file includes dynamic page exception commands.
- Image position on a page level The image position tool enables you to shift an image on a specific page or range of pages.
- Pre-separated files The Spire CXP5000 color server now supports pre-separated PostScript file and DCS file. These files are printed as composite files.
- APR enhancements The HiRes Path dialog box now includes the Search in the input folder check box. The Spire CXP5000 color server first searches for high-resolution images in the same folder as the PDL file, and then in the D:\Shared\High Res folder.

#### Features

The Spire CXP5000 color server provides the following:

#### • Creating jobs in RTP format

Using the Spire CXP5000 color server, RTP files can be created and stored on the Spire CXP5000 color server itself. This enables you to print RTP data at any time without further processing.

#### Powerful document printing capabilities

In combination with the Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press, the Spire CXP5000 color server enables complete printing and processing of documents, including the production of covers and pages on different paper stocks.

#### Enhanced job editing

The Spire CXP5000 color server enables you to edit jobs, both pre- and post-RIP. Pre-RIP editing includes full Adobe Acrobat functionality including: deletion, extraction, rotating, adding, and cropping of pages. Post-RIP editing includes deleting job pages and merging pages from different jobs to a new job. This minimizes the need to re-RIP jobs.

• **RIP - Adobe Postscript Level III and Extreme Certified technologies** The Spire CXP5000 color server uses the industry-standard Adobe RIP, with enhancements for Continuous Tone and Linework. Data are processed separately as Continuous Tone and Vector Data layers for increased efficiency and merged during printing.

#### Ready-to-Print job preview and editing

The Spire CXP5000 color server enables you to preview RTP jobs up to pixel levels to see all job details and to verify job quality and content post-RIP. It is also possible to view a thumbnail list of job pages, or the actual raster pages.

#### • Job management

The Spire CXP5000 color server enables you to monitor job progress during all stages of printing. Among other functions, you can promote, demote, delete, monitor the import process, and estimate when a job will be fully imported. You can also abort jobs during RIPing or printing, as well as archive and retrieve jobs.

#### Enhanced text and line art quality

You can choose superior text quality with the Creo proprietary algorithm. This function enhances the quality of diagonal lines,

borders, blends, and small text. The Creo anti-aliasing causes blends to appear smooth with no banding and diagonal lines to appear crisp without jagged edges (do not use this option with VI jobs). You can choose superior image quality with the Creo proprietary smooth scale algorithm. This function improves the quality of images containing various resolutions (such as images taken from the Internet).

#### • Trapping - FAF (Full Auto Frame)

The Spire CXP5000 color server uses the well-known Creo algorithm to trap job information easily. The FAF algorithm has been tailored for digital printing.

#### • Imposition

The Spire CXP5000 color server offers a full suite of Imposition functions, based on the well-known Ultimate Imposition engine. On the Spire CXP5000 color server, imposition is robust with user-friendly operation. And only the Spire CXP5000 color server enables imposition of Variable Information jobs.

#### Color Management

The Spire CXP5000 color server has a number of color management tools and utilities that will help you to improve the quality of your jobs. The Spire CXP5000 color server enables you to modify color onthe-fly, even for images that have already been RIPped. This functionality includes application of brightness and contrast adjustments, as well as changes to image gradation and calibration.

#### • Variable Information printing

The Spire CXP5000 color server enables processing of Creo Variable Print Specification and Xerox VIPP file formats and PPML for efficient VI (Variable Information) processing and printing. Repeated elements are RIPped once and cached, so there is no need to continually re-RIP them.

The Spire CXP5000 color server also provides easy management of VI elements, including previewing, deleting and updating. The Spire CXP5000 color server also offers imposition for VI jobs, the only digital solution in the industry with this capability.

#### Creo workflow extenders

This is a set of Adobe Photoshop and QuarkXPress software plug-ins and extensions that facilitate printing with the Spire CXP5000 color server. These extensions are located in the shared **Utilities** folder on the Spire CXP5000 color server or on CD #3 supplied with the Spire CXP5000 color server software kit.

#### **Supported Formats**

The Spire CXP5000 color server supports the following file formats:

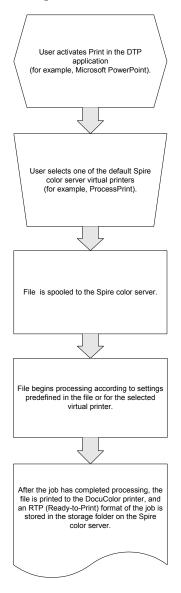
- PostScript (composite or pre-separated files)
- PDF
- EPS
- Creo VPS (Variable Print Specification)
- VIPP (Variable Data Intelligent PostScript Params)
- PPML (Personalized Print Markup Language)
- GAP (Graphic Art Port) files (file formats from various prepress systems, for example Brisque job and TIFF / IT)
- Creo CT & LW
- JPG, TIFF
- Pre-separated formats

#### Workflow

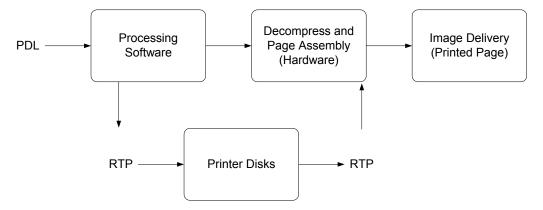
The Spire CXP5000 color server receives and processes files from the following client workstations:

- Macintosh running Mac OS 9.x or later and Mac OS X (10.1 and later)
- Windows running Windows 98, ME, Windows NT 4.0, 2000, and XP
- UNIX Workstations and Servers

The Spire CXP5000 color server basic workflow is as follows:



#### Data Flow



The Spire CXP5000 color server Data Flow is as follows:

- 1. The input file arrives at the Spire CXP5000 color server from either a client workstation, local hard disk, or external media and is submitted to the Process queue.
- 2. The processing sub-system produces an RTP job from the input file.
- 3. The RTP job is stored on an image disk.
- 4. When printing starts, the RTP job elements on the disk are decompressed and merged to the correct location on the page. This is done using Creo hardware.
- 5. The image delivery sub-system converts the RTP information into the print engine format.
- 6. The image delivery sub-system transmits the page information to the print engine.
- 7. The page data is delivered to the Print Engine and the job is printed.

#### Spire CXP5000 Color Server Network Printers

For Macintosh and Windows networks, the Spire CXP5000 color server provides three default network printers, known also as virtual printers.

Virtual printers are a function used for automating workflows, which then define job streaming. They contain preset workflows that are automatically applied to all print jobs processed with that virtual printer. There is no need to reset job settings for each job, thus increasing printing efficiency.



**Note:** The job (print) parameters set in the job (from the client) override the parameters set in the virtual printer.

The three default virtual printers are:

SpoolStore

Files are spooled directly to the Storage window and await operator processing. You can only import PDL files (such as: PS, PDF, VIPP, VPS) to the spool store, not RIPped - RTP files.

ProcessPrint

Files sent to this virtual printer are processed and printed directly to the Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press via the Spire CXP5000 color server.

ProcessStore

Files sent to this virtual printer are automatically processed and stored in RTP format. After processing, the files are stored in the Storage window of the Spire CXP5000 color server until the print operator resubmits them for printing.

With printing workflows tailored to your job requirements, the Spire CXP5000 color server enables you to:

- Define new virtual printers
- Choose from which virtual printer to print



For information on defining and editing virtual printers, see *Managing Virtual Printers* on page 220.

This page is intentionally left blank.

# 2

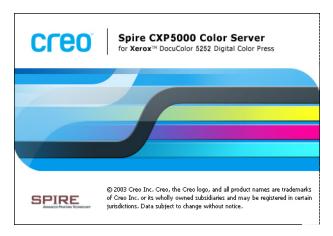
# **Getting Started**

Turning On the Spire CXP5000 Color Server	16
The Workspace	19
The Server and Printer Monitors	21
The Settings Window	25
The Resource Center	26
The Job Parameters Window	27
Basic Job Workflow	31
Turning Off the Spire CXP5000 Color Server	36

# Turning On the Spire CXP5000 Color Server

- 1. Turn on the monitor.
- 2. Press the power button on the front panel of the Spire CXP5000 color server.

The power indicator on the front panel lights up. The Windows operating system starts, and the Spire CXP5000 color server splash screen appears.



#### Opening the Workspace From the Start Menu

#### Notes:

- If the Spire CXP5000 color server workspace is already turned on, open the workspace from the **Start** menu. See *Opening the Workspace From the Start Menu* later in this chapter.
- By default, the **Auto Log On** check box is selected in the Settings window. This option enables you to open the workspace without having to go through the logon process each time. If you want to designate different access levels for each user, you need to set security settings in the Settings window. For more information about designating access levels, see *Security* on page 408.
- The title in the splash screen varies according to the printer you are using, Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press, or 2045 Digital Color Press.

The Spire CXP5000 color server program group appears in the Windows **Start** menu.



Select Start>CXP5000>CXP5000.

The Loading Drivers window appears and then the Spire CXP5000 color server workspace.



**Note:** The Spire CXP5000 color server includes a diagnostics utility that can check the hardware components of the system. Only service engineers should use this utility.

#### Logging On

By default, the **Auto Log On** check box is selected in the Settings window. This option enables you to open the workspace without having to go through the logon process each time. If you want each user to have to log on to the Spire CXP5000 color server, you need to clear the **Auto Log On** check box, and then assign each user an access level and password.



For more information about designating access levels, see Security on page 408.

The Login dialog box enables you to log on to the Spire CXP5000 color server with a designated access level and password. The system administrator assigns each user an access level, as follows:

- **Operator (default):** Enables the user to operate the Spire CXP5000 color server and configure the **Preferences** area in the Settings window.
- Administrator: Enables the user to access all features and settings in the Spire CXP5000 color server
- **Guest:** Enables the user to import a job through an existing virtual printer and view the workspace

#### Logging On as a Different User

If you are already working in the Spire CXP5000 color server workspace, you can change your access level—for example, if you are logged on as an operator and you need administrator privileges.

1. From the Job menu, select Logon as a different user.



2. In the Access level list, select a different access level.

3. If you want to log on as an administrator or operator, type your password.

Note: If you want to log on as a guest, you do not need a password.

4. Click Logon.

You are logged on with the new access level.

# The Workspace

After you turn on the Spire CXP5000 color server, the workspace automatically appears.

_			A_SF_OPAL2 - Adr Tools Control V												_		
2		IRE	Processing:		95%	Printing:			0%	ţ.	<b>İ</b> ,	Ready	}		<b>Cre</b> 19:51:1		
3	<b>+</b> (	] Q	$\mathbb{Z}$														
F				Queu	es			8				Paper	Stocks			8	$\square$
			Print Queue					Total 3	Tray	Status	Size	Paper Type	Weight				
	Statu	s Type	Title	Sender	Submitted	Pages	Sets		Tray 1	🔲 Read	ły A3	Uncoat	81-105 gsm			-	
	6	RTP	ColorFlowChart_V.	operator	Mar 4 19:50	3	1			🔲 Read		Uncoat	81-105 gsm				
	6	RTP	Creo_Spire_Ad_A.	operator	Mar 4 19:50	1	1		Tray 3	🔲 Read	iy A4	Uncoat	81-105 gsm			<u> </u>	
	6	RTP	Fern_A41	operator	Mar 4 19:50	1	1					Sto	rage			8	F
ŀ									Total	27					Show: 💿 ⊘ 🗉	0	
								_	Status	Туре	Title	Sender	Submitted	Pages	File size		
		_								RTP	Toys2	operator	Mar 4 19:47	1	11.96 M	-	
			Process Queue					Total 8	0	RTP	PS file with	. operator	Mar 4 19:46	1	2.71 M		
	Statu	sType	Title	Sender	Submitted	Pages	Sets		0	RTP	FH_LowRes	operator	Mar 4 19:44	2	3.16 M		
	0	PDF	Imposition Made Ea.	. operator	Mar 4 19:50	20	1	<u>+</u>	8	RTP	card	operator	Mar 4 19:39	1	2.08 M		
	6	PDF	Lizard_A41	operator	Mar 4 19:50	1	1		•	RTP	Tiger_A4	operator	Mar 4 19:26	1	4.55 M		
	6	PDF	Sunflower_A41	operator	Mar 4 19:50	1	1			RTP	CMY_Chart		Mar 4 19:26	1	5.32 M	-	
	6	PS	ATF_A31	operator	Mar 4 19:50	1	1		II) Drinter	RTP Dick Erco	Lizard A4	operator	Mar 4 19:26 Disk Free: 27.9	1 IPCR Lloods	9.25 M		
	•	PS	CMY_Chart_A31	operator	Mar 4 19:50	1	1	1.1	Frinter	DISKTICE	. 07.0400 0580			JOOD USEU.	. 2.2000	0	⊢
	_											Thur	nbnail			8	1
	_			Aler	ts			S Total 0				Job's title File type:	: Toys2 RTP				
	Date	& Time	Job Title	r	Details							Range:	All				
	Date	a nine	300 1116		/etails			_		Par (	Vientie	Copies: Total page	1 # <b>s:</b> 1				
5													3, Uncoated, 81	405			
	-1							1.1		900 A		Simplex, A.	3, Uncoated, 01	-rosigsm			
										<b>**</b> <							
										<b>6</b> 1	⇒ ⇒	1					
									N.	1	4 4	ļ					l l
					•	Clear	Clea	ar All									
													6				1

#### Table 2 describes the Spire CXP5000 color server workspace.

Table 2: Spire CXP5000 color server workspace

Item	Name	Description
1	Menu Bar	Consists of the <b>Job</b> , <b>Selection</b> , <b>Tools</b> , <b>Control</b> , <b>View</b> , and <b>Help</b> menus. Click a menu name to open the corresponding menu
2	Status Panel	Contains the logo <b>Pane</b> , <b>Processing</b> status area, and <b>Printing</b> status area, <b>server</b> icon, and <b>printer</b> icon
3	Toolbar	Consists of shortcut buttons for the Import window, Resource Center, Message Viewer, and Calibration window
4	Queues	Consists of the <b>Process Queue</b> , which lists the files to be processed. After a file has been processed successfully, it moves either to the <b>Print</b> <b>Queue</b> (the upper area) or to the Storage window.
5	Alerts	Lists all of the alert messages that are generated during the workflow
6	Thumbnail	Displays a thumbnail view of a specific page in an RTP job that has finished processing
7	Storage	The Storage window contains files that:
		• were successfully printed
		• were held, were aborted, or failed during processing or printing
		• were sent directly from the client workstation to the Storage window or were imported to the Storage window
8	Paper Stocks	Displays information about the paper in each tray and also shows whether the trays are ready for printing

# Customizing the Workspace View

✔ Queues
✓ Storage
✓ Alerts
✔ Thumbnail
Paper Stocks
• Spire classic view
Spire classic plus view
Queues view
Refresh View

The **View** menu enables you to customize the workspace. From this menu, you can open and close the Queues window. The menu also provides the following view options:

- **Spire classic view:** Displays the status panel, toolbar, Storage window, Queues window, Thumbnail window, and Alerts window
- Spire classic plus view: Displays the status panel, toolbar, Paper Stocks window, Storage window, Queues window, Thumbnail window, and Alerts window
- Queues view: Displays only the Print Queue and Process Queue
- **Refresh view:** Reverts to the factory default view for the view that is currently displayed



**Note:** The Spire CXP5000 color server always displays the workspace in the most recently selected view.



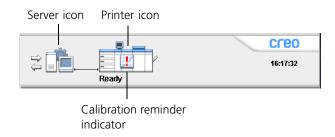
**Tip:** By default, the windows in the workspace are all docked-that is, attached to the workspace. You can detach, or undock, a window from the workspace by right-clicking the window's title bar and selecting **UnDock Window**.

#### The Server and Printer Monitors

The **server** and **printer** icons are on the right end of the status panel and indicate (through animation) whether processing and printing are taking place. If a finishing device is connected to the printer, the finishing device also appears in the printer icon. You can click the **printer** or **server** icon to display status information. You also view messages regarding the printer operation mode and status next to the **printer** icon. The **calibration reminder** indicator reminds you to calibrate the printer. You can set the reminder in the Settings window.



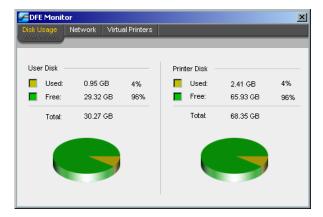
For more information about setting the calibration reminder, see *Color* on page 419.



#### The DFE Monitor

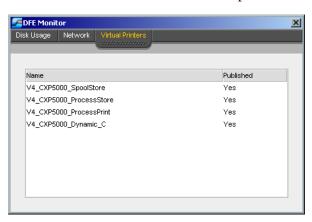
Click the **server** icon to open the DFE Monitor window. This window displays information about disk space, network details, and the virtual printers you have defined.

The **Disk Usage** tab shows how much space is available on the user disk and printer disk.



The **Network** tab provides information about the network.

DFE Monitor		
isk Usage Network	Virtual Printers	
Host Name:	V4_CXP5000	
Host Domain:	V4_CXP5000	
IP Addres:	10.4.18.169	
DHCP Server:	Enabled	
Apple Talk Zone:	NOVELL	
IPX Printing:		
IPX Setup:		



The Virtual Printers tab lists the virtual printers that you have defined.

#### The Printer Monitor

Click the printer icon to open the Printer Monitor window.

The Printer Monitor window displays information about the size and type of paper in each tray, the connected devices, the available toner, and other aspects of the consumables.

The **Paper Stock** tab displays information about the paper in each tray and also shows whether the trays are ready for printing.

🚰 Printer Moi	nitor			×
Ready				
PaperStock	Finisher Toner	Consumables		
ltem	Status	Paper Size	Paper Type	Paper Weight (gsm)
Tray 1	🔲 Ready	A3	Uncoat	81 - 105
Tray 2	🔲 Ready	A4	Uncoat	81 - 105

The **Finisher** tab displays information about finishing devices that are connected to the Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press.

Printer Me	onitor				
Ready					
The printer sh	nould be calibrated				
PaperStock	Finisher Toner	Consumables			
ltem	Top Tray	Stack Tray	Offset	Stapler	Staples
ост	Ready	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

The **Toner** tab shows whether there is enough toner.

Ready			
The printer sł	nould be calibrated		
PaperStock	Finisher Toner Consumables		
Item	Toner	Dispenser	
ttem G	Toner	Dispenser & Ready	
9	🎽 Ready	Seady	

Ready		
The printer should be ca	librated	
PaperStock Finisher	Toner     Consumables	
ltem	Status	
ttem Bottle	Status 🗋 Ready	

The **Consumables** tab displays the status of other refillables.

# The Settings Window

Administration	Server Name		
Server Setup		B0000 05 0	Change
Network Setup	Host Name:	POSQA_SF_O	Change
Remote Tools Setup	Date & Time		
Security	Date:	Feb 8 2004	
System Disks	-	44.04.50	01
Configuration Backup	Time:	14:34:56	Change
Preferences			
Localization			
Pre-RIP Preview			
General Defaults			
Print Queue Manager			
Color			
Messages			
View Configuration			

You can set all system preferences in the Settings window.

#### To open the Settings window:

> From the **Tools** menu, select **Settings**.

The window is divided into two areas:

- Administration: All users can view these settings, but only an administrator can configure the settings.
- **Preferences:** All users can view these settings, but only an administrator or operator can configure the settings.



**Note:** If you log on to the Spire CXP5000 color server as a guest, the Settings window is unavailable.



For more information about setting system preferences, see Setting Up and Configuring the Spire CXP5000 Color Server on page 398.

# The Resource Center

litle	Published	Override PPD	Dynamic page	Comments
CREO-C739F9881E_TimesEmulate	Yes	No	No	
CREO-C739F9881E_VI Cut&Stack	Yes	No	No	
CREO-C739F9881E_Z-Folds	Yes	No	No	
CREO-C739F9881E_4Up Imposed	Yes	No	No	
CREO-C739F9881E_2Up Imposed	Yes	No	No	
CREO-C739F9881E_Dynaminc VI	Yes	No	Yes	
REO-C739F9881E_B&VV Only	Yes	Yes	No	
REO-C739F9881E_SpoolStore	Yes	No	No	
REO-C739F9881E_ProcessStore	Yes	No	No	
CREO-C739F9881E_ProcessPrint	Yes	No	No	
4				

The Resource Center enables you to add, remove, and manage external resources for the Spire CXP5000 color server.

#### To open the Resource Center:



> From the toolbar, click **Resource Center**.

The Resource Center provides access to the following resources:

- Virtual Printers, see Managing Virtual Printers on page 220
- Fonts, see *Managing Fonts on the Spire CXP5000 Color Server* on page 300
- Imposition Templates, see Imposition Templates on page 242
- VI Elements, see Managing VI Elements on page 391
- Paper Sets, see *Managing Paper Sets* on page 168
- Profile Manager, see *Profile Manager* on page 352

# The Job Parameters Window

The Spire CXP5000 color server enables you to edit imported PDL files and change the job settings—for example, paper size, imposition, and color settings—in the Job Parameters window.

#### To open the Job Parameters window:

Double-click a job in the Storage window. Or:

Right-click a job in the Storage window, and from the menu select **Job Parameters**.

Job name: Golfer_Let	ter3 Virti	ual printe	r name: V4_SPIREC	OLORSE Su	bmitted: Mar 1	0,13:57:19
nt Settings	ck Print Quality	Color	Imposition	Services	Finishing	Exception
Parameters	Values	1	Number of copies	options		
Number of copies	1		Number of copies:	1		
Print range	All		Number of copies.			
Print method	Simplex					
Print order	From 1 to N					
Delivery	Face Up					
Collation	Yes					
Image position	0.0,0.0,0.0,0.0					
Image scale	100%					
Rotate 180	No					
Gallop	No					
			Submit		ave C	Cancel

The Job Parameters window title bar displays the following information:

- The name of the job
- The time of submission
- The name of the virtual printer

Each tab has a set of related parameters and values that you can select.

Table 3: Description of tabs in the Jobs Parameters window

This tab	Enables you to
Print Settings	Set print related job parameters—for example, <b>Print range</b> and <b>Print method</b> . See <i>The Print</i> <i>Settings Tab</i> on page 157
Paper Stock	Set job parameters related to paper stock—for example, <b>Paper size</b> and <b>Paper set name</b> . See <i>The</i> <i>Paper Stock Tab</i> on page 167
Print Quality	Set job parameters related to print quality—for example, <b>Trapping</b> and <b>Image quality</b> —and improve the quality of printed jobs. See <i>The Print</i> <i>Quality Tab</i> on page 176

This tab	Enables you to
Color	Apply last minute color corrections, or set the output job to match other output devices. See <i>Color Workflow</i> on page 307
Imposition	Set job parameters related to positioning, folding, trimming, and binding of pages—for example, <b>Margins</b> and <b>Template</b> . See <i>The Imposition Tab</i> on page 231
Services	Set job parameters that will assist your job workflow—for example, <b>APR path</b> and <b>Preflight</b> . See <i>Creo APR</i> on page 253, <i>Preflight Check</i> on page 374, <i>Substituting Fonts</i> on page 305, <i>Applying</i> <i>VI Structure to Large Files (Split to Booklets)</i> on page 395, and <i>Job Deletion</i> on page 389
Finishing	Select from various options to finalize your printed document—for example, define settings for the front and back cover. See <i>The Finishing</i> <i>Tab</i> on page 289
Exceptions	Define paper sets to include special exceptions in a job, and add inserts or interleaves. See <i>The Exceptions Tab</i> on page 267

Table 3: Description of tabs in the Jobs Parameters window

#### The Help Menu

The **Help** menu enables you to access the online help, which is based on this user guide, and provides information about the current version of the Spire CXP5000 color server installed on your computer.

#### To open the About window:

> From the **Help** menu, select **About**.

About		×
	Spire CXP5000 Color Server for Xerox <sup>TM</sup> DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press	
	Version: d29 Date: 23-Jan-2004 Updates:	

The About window displays the following information:

- Spire CXP5000 color server version number
- Date the version was installed
- Any updates that were installed on top of the version



**Note:** The title in the splash screen varies according to the printer you are using, Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press, or Xerox DocuColor 2045 Digital Color Press.

#### To open the online help:

> From the **Help** menu, select **Topics**.

## Handling Conflicts

If there are conflicts in the Job Parameters window, the Conflict window displays the two parameters that conflict—for example, Transparency conflicts with duplex printing. You can't print your job until the conflict is resolved.

Conflict - Con	trast	X
<u>.</u>	Conflict detected Between the following values: Type - Transparency Print method - Duplex head to head	
Resolve O	ptions:	
Simplex		
Details : `	Transparency can be printed only Simplex	
	Resolve Cancel	

To resolve the conflict, select one of the following options:

- In the **Resolve Options** area, select a resolve option, and then click **Resolve**.
- Click **Cancel** to remove the value you selected for the last parameter.

# **Basic Job Workflow**

The basic workflow in the Spire CXP5000 color server consists of three main stages:

- 1. Submitting a file from a client workstation, or importing and printing from the Spire CXP5000 color server, see *Submitting* on page 32
- 2. After a job is imported, the print engine starts to process the job, see *Processing* on page 33
- 3. The job is printed and stored in the Storage window for future use, see *Storage* on page 34

#### Submitting

There are two methods for submitting a file for printing:

- Submit a file from an application on your client workstation—for example, PDL formats that were created on client workstations that are not connected to the Spire CXP5000 color server, or files that are available only on external media.
- You can also import job files that reside locally on the Spire CXP5000 color server.

#### Printing From a Client Workstation

To print a job from a client workstation, select one of the following methods:

- Print the job via one of the Spire CXP5000 color server network (virtual) printers—for example, **ProcessPrint**. The job is spooled and then processed or printed (according to the selected job flow of the virtual printer). If you use this method, you can print from any application —for example, Microsoft Word— and use any file format from any client workstation (Windows, Macintosh, or UNIX).
- Drag the job to a hot folder. The job is spooled and processed or printed (according to the selected job flow of the corresponding virtual printer).



For more information about hot folders, see Using Hot Folders on page 85.

If you use the hot folder method, you can print most PDL files on the Spire CXP5000 color server— for example, PostScript, PDF, EPS, Variable Print Specification, and VIPP files.



**Note:** PDL jobs that are spooled to the Spire CXP5000 color server must have the appropriate file name extensions—for example, \*.ps or \*.pdf.

Importing and Printing From the Spire CXP5000 Color Server

You can import to the Spire CXP5000 color server any PDL file such as a PostScript or PDF file, that is located on any local or network drive —for example, a CD-ROM drive or a shared network drive.

#### Processing

After a job enters the Spire CXP5000 color server, it resides in the Queues window or the Storage window, depending on the job flow. The Queues window consists of two areas:

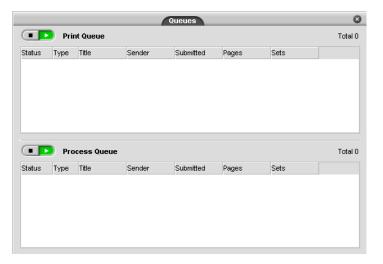
- The **Process Queue** lists the job currently being processed and all the jobs that are waiting to be processed.
- The **Print Queue** lists the job that is currently printing and all the jobs that were processed successfully and are waiting to be printed. The **Print Queue** also lists frozen jobs (jobs for which the specified paper stock is not available).

Each queue holds jobs in the order in which they enter the queue (unless a rush job "interrupts" the submission order).



For more information about rush jobs, see *Running a Job Immediately* on page 197.

The top job in the queue is the currently running job, while all the others are waiting to run. The **Print Queue** and **Process Queue** areas show you the number of jobs and their status. You can change the order of jobs, suspend them, resume them, or view and edit the parameters.





**Note:** If there are very short jobs in the **Print Queue**, several jobs may be running at the same time. The jobs marked as **running** are listed first and are printed in the order of the list.

# Storage

Status	Туре	Title	Sender	Submitted	Pages
•	RTP	swopTest	operator	Feb 8 13:25	3
•	RTP	GATF4pg1-4	operator	Feb 8 13:25	2
•	RTP	SwopGrayCreo2003A4	operator	Feb 8 13:25	1
•	RTP	Uniform	operator	Feb 8 11:29	8
0	RTP	dtp34_A4	operator	Feb 8 11:29	1

The Storage window is the main repository for jobs. It can contain:

- Completed jobs
- Jobs that were manually moved to the Storage window
- Jobs that were aborted during processing or printing
- Jobs that failed to complete processing or printing
- Jobs that were imported or spooled directly from a client workstation



For more information about the Storage window, see *Handling Jobs in the Storage Window* on page 200.

#### Resubmitting

You can easily reprint RTP jobs that are stored in the Storage window. Select the job you want to reprint and then submit it. The job is automatically placed in the **Print Queue**.

The Spire CXP5000 color server enables you to change job parameters and edit jobs prior to reprinting.

You can change job parameters in the Job Parameters window. Certain changes to the job parameters require you to re-RIP the job. The Spire CXP5000 color server automatically determines whether your file requires re-RIPing and places it in the appropriate queue when you submit it for reprinting.



For more information about resubmitting a job, see *Reprinting Jobs* on page 156.

You cannot re-RIP jobs that you edit in the Job Editor. When you save a job in the Job Editor, a new RTP file is created. No PDL file is associated with it. Therefore, parameters requiring re-RIPing can't be applied.



For more information about editing RTP jobs, see Editing RTP Jobs on page 211.

# Turning Off the Spire CXP5000 Color Server

1. In the Spire CXP5000 color server workspace, from the **Job** menu, select **Exit**.

Or:

Click in the upper-right corner of the Spire CXP5000 color server workspace.

The Spire CXP5000 color server workspace closes, and you return to the Windows desktop.



**Note:** If there are jobs that are being processed or printed, a message is displayed.

2. Verify that the Spire icon has disappeared from your taskbar.



- 3. From the Windows desktop, select Start>Shut Down.
- 4. In the shutdown dialog box, select **Shut down**.
- 5. When the Windows shutdown is complete, turn off the monitor.
- 6. On the Spire CXP5000 color server, click the power button behind the front door.

The power LED on the front panel turns off.



**Note:** Some situations may require the power button to be depressed for more than 4 seconds.

# 3

# Working From a Client Workstation

Default Network Printers	38
Setting PPD File Parameters	39
Working From Windows Client Workstations	48
Working From Macintosh Client Workstations	66
Spire Web Center	76
Using Hot Folders	85
LPR Printing with the Spire CXP5000 Color Server	91
UNIX Connectivity	.119
Configuring and Setting up NDS	135
Defining NDS Printer Queues in the NDS Tree	136
Configuring IPX Printing	.149
Installing the Printer Drivers on a Novell Client Using the Adobe PS Application	.151

# **Default Network Printers**

For Macintosh and Windows networks, the Spire CXP5000 color server provides three default network printers known as virtual printers, **ProcessPrint**, **ProcessStore** and **SpoolStore**.

Virtual printers contain preset workflows that are automatically applied to all print jobs processed with that virtual printer. Using virtual printers enables you to print jobs more efficiently.



**Note:** Unless you select the **Override PPD parameters** check box when you add a virtual printer, the job (print) parameters that are set in the job will override the parameters set in the virtual printer.

The Spire CXP5000 color server enables you to select from which virtual printer to print. It also allows you to define new virtual printers, with printing workflows tailored to your specific job requirements.



For more information about virtual printers, see *Managing Virtual Printers* on page 220 and *Spire CXP5000 Color Server Network Printers* on page 13.

An additional default network printer is provided for Macintosh networks.

#### FontDownLoader

This is a special network printer that you use with Macintosh client workstations to download fonts. The FontDownLoader enables you to send fonts to the Spire CXP5000 color server and use these fonts later in printed jobs. It is not possible to send files via the FontDownLoader, only fonts.



For more information about the Fontdownloader, see Using the Fontdownloader for Macintosh Networks on page 301.

## Setting PPD File Parameters

You can set job parameters from a client workstation using the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file or you can define a virtual printer with predefined PPD file settings.

To print a file from Windows, you first need to set up a Spire CXP5000 color server network printer with the appropriate PPD file. The PPD file contains all the parameters and paper stock definitions for the printer and enables you to print your file properly.

#### To use the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file:

In the Print window of your application, select print settings specific to printing to the Spire CXP5000 color server.



For more information about print settings, see *Printing From Windows* on page 64 and *Printing from a Macintosh* on page 75.

#### To define a virtual printer:

Set job parameters when you create or edit a virtual printer. These settings become the printer's default options.



For more information about virtual printers, see Adding a new printer on page 221 and Editing an Existing Printer on page 223.

The following table lists the PPD file parameters and the printing options that can be selected from the Print window of an application.



#### Notes:

- In the PPD file, the **Printer's Default** option is selected for all PPD file parameters. The **Printer's Default** option corresponds to the settings of the currently selected virtual printer.
- The parameter settings that were last modified or applied are the settings that are applied to the job. However, the print settings defined in the job file override the settings of the virtual printer.
- Grayscale images created in RGB applications (such as PowerPoint) should be specified as monochrome or you should select Gray RGB>Print grays using black toner in the PPD file when you submit the job to the Spire CXP5000 color server. This selection ensures that grayscale images are counted as black and white instead of color in both the Spire CXP5000 color server and in the Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press billing meters.

PPD Parameter	Printing Options
Print Method	<b>Simplex</b> prints single-sided pages (default). In <b>Duplex Head to Toe</b> , the image on the reverse side of the sheet is rotated 180 degrees. It is used for calendar-style hard copies and presentation-style copies (usually used with landscape jobs). In <b>Duplex Head to Head</b> , the head of the image appears at the top of the page on both sides of the sheet. It is used for normal book-style hard copies (usually used with portrait jobs).
Image orientation for imposition	<b>Landscape</b> specifies a landscape orientation for imposition. <b>Portrait</b> specifies a portrait orientation for imposition.
Reverse Print Order	<b>Yes</b> starts printing from the last page. <b>No</b> starts printing from the first page.
Face Up	Face Up delivers the pages face up on the printer. Face Down delivers the pages face down on the printer (when printing confidential documents).
Collation	<ul><li>Yes prints a complete copy of the job before the first page of the next copy is printed.</li><li>No prints all the copies of each page before all the copies of the next page are printed.</li></ul>
lmage Scale	<ul> <li>Select Fit to paper for the image to fit the selected paper in the paper stock</li> <li>100% prints at 100% of the original size (default)</li> <li>Select an image scale by which to proportionally increase or decrease the image size, 50%, 150%, 200%, 250%, 300%, 350%, 400%</li> </ul>
Rotate 180	Yes (only relevant for the Finisher Module > HCSS Staple Tray option), modifies the stapling position by 180 degrees. For example, instead of stapling on the upper left-hand corner, you can staple on the lower right-hand corner. No ignores this method.
Paper set	<b>Undefined</b> uses the parameters from the <b>Paper Stock</b> tab <b>Paper sets 1-10</b> are the predefined paper sets available on the Spire CXP5000 color server
Туре	Select Paper or Transparency as the media.

PPD Parameter	Printing Options
Weight	Select the required paper weight from the list. The following ranges are listed: <b>64-80</b> , <b>81-105</b> , <b>106-135</b> , <b>136-150</b> , <b>151-220</b> and <b>221-280</b> For example, <b>81-105</b> gsm prints on <b>81-105</b> gsm paper.
Coating	<b>Coated</b> prints on coated paper. <b>UnCoated</b> prints on uncoated paper.
Text and Line Quality	<b>High</b> provides superior text quality. This setting applies the Creo proprietary algorithm that enhances the quality of diagonal lines, borders, blends, and small text. The Creo anti-aliasing causes blends to appear smooth with no banding and diagonal lines to appear crisp without jagged edges. Do not use this option with VI jobs. <b>Normal</b> provides standard text quality.
Image Quality	<ul><li>High provides superior image quality. This setting applies the Creo proprietary smooth scale algorithm, which improves the quality of images containing several resolutions (such as images taken from the Internet).</li><li>Normal provides standard image quality and increased RIPing speed.</li></ul>
Trapping	<b>Yes</b> applies the Creo FAF (Full Auto Frame) algorithm to the job. Trapping solves misregistration between color separations in offset and digital printing. This occurs regardless of the printer device accuracy. This problem results in white lines around objects on top of a background (in a knock-out procedure) and also between adjacent colors. The FAF solution is to extract the element or background to create an overlap between them. Do not use this option with VI jobs. <b>No</b> does not begin image trapping while RIPing (this does not affect trapping incorporated by the authoring application). If trapping was applied in the authoring application, select <b>No</b> .

Table 4: PPD	parameters

PPD Parameter	Printing Options
Black Overprint	Yes provides better printing quality (as in FAF) and a richer, deeper black with the underlying CMY values equal to those of the printed background. As a result, misregistrations are not visible. Black Overprint ensures that 100% black text prints cleanly within a tint or picture area. Occasionally, white lines may appear around black text and the text may appear less dense than required as a result of misregistration between color separations. With Black Overprint, the Pure Black Text / Graphics option is automatically activated and there are no knock-outs under the black text. However, a knock-out occurs when you print only the topmost color. This results in less color density and can cause misregistration if separations are not perfectly aligned. No leaves the job as is.
PS Overprint	<ul> <li>PS Overprint offers the option to use the overprint, which exists in the PostScript file. It also determines whether the DTP application PS Overprint settings are honored in the RIP.</li> <li>Spire CXP5000 color server settings override PS Overprint commands from DTP applications. For example, if PS Overprint was set to Yes in a DTP application, selecting PS Overprint No in the Spire CXP5000 color server can not create PS Overprint that is not predefined in the file. Selecting PS Overprint Yes for a file that has not had overprinting defined in a DTP application does not result in overprinting.</li> <li>Yes (default) instructs the RIP to use the overprint information that exists in the input PostScript file. Also, if PS Overprint is applied in a DTP applications, it is implemented by the Spire CXP5000 color server. Background colors are not knocked out.</li> <li>For example, in the case of a yellow triangle overlapping a cyan circle, selecting Yes results in the overlapping area turning green. This is not seen on the screen, only in print.</li> <li>No ignores the overprint information that exists in the input PostScript file. Background colors are knocked out and only the top most color parts are seen on the screen in your DTP application.</li> <li>For example, in the case of a yellow triangle overlapping a cyan circle, selecting No results in the cyan background being knocked out, so only the yellow is printed.</li> </ul>

Table 4: PPD parameters

PPD Parameter	Printing Options
Image Noise	<b>No</b> (default) applies no image noise to your job. <b>Noise 2-10</b> apply image noise. The higher the level, the smoother the vignettes appear.
Color Mode	Grayscale prints all pages using black (K) toner only. Color prints all pages using all CMYK toners. If you selected Color, select the Print grays in black toner option in the Gray RGB list to print RGB gray images using black toner only. If you want grayscale CMYK elements to be printed using black toner only, you need to select Perceptual as the rendering intent.
RGB Workflow	This option changes gamma values, thus producing more color depth for RGB images. To use the embedded CSA, select <b>Use Source CSA</b> . To replace use a Spire or Adobe CSA, select <b>Use Spire RGB 1.8</b> , <b>Use Spire</b> <b>RGB2.1</b> , <b>Use Spire RGB 2.4</b> , <b>Use sRGB</b> , or <b>Use Adobe RGB</b> .
Gray RGB	Select <b>Print grays using CMYK</b> to print grayscale CMYK elements using black toner only. Select <b>Print grays in black toner</b> to print RGB gray images using black toner only.
Rendering Intent for RGB	<ul> <li>Rendering intent defines how colors are compressed from CIELAB values to printer color space.</li> <li>Relative Colorimetric provides an accurate general-purpose gamut mapping for all applications. The lowest density is mapped to white.</li> <li>Absolute Colorimetric preserves the substrate tint.</li> <li>Saturated (presentation) produces saturated colors that are suitable for office environment applications —for example, text documents and presentations.</li> <li>Perceptual (photographic) yields the most effective results on continuous tone and images.</li> <li>Saturated (presentation) and Perceptual (photographic) are the most effective rendering intent methods for RGB images.</li> </ul>

Table 4: PPD	parameters
--------------	------------

PPD Parameter	Printing Options
CMYK Workflow	Select Use Original CMYK values, Use Source CSA, or select a CMYK emulation, Printer's Default (None), Fogra Gloss Emulation, Fogra Matt Emulation, Fogra Uncoated, Euroscale, Gravure, Japan_Color, Offset, Match Print, iGen3 or SWOP. Printer's Default (None), applies Ink Saving (GCR) without emulation. In all cases, emulation applied in the original DTP application overrides the Spire CXP5000 color server settings.
Emulate Source Paper Tint	<b>Yes</b> to emulate also the original paper tint <b>No</b> This parameter is available only if you selected an emulation method.
Emulate RGB Elements	No Yes to emulate RGB colors according to the selected CMYK emulation method This parameter is available only if you selected an emulation method.
Preserve Pure Colors	<b>Yes</b> to emulate pure CMYK colors <b>No</b> This parameter is available only you selected an emulation method.
Rendering Intent for CMYK	Rendering intent defines how colors are compressed from CIELAB values to printer color space. <b>Relative Colorimetric</b> provides an accurate general-purpose gamut mapping for all applications. The lowest density is mapped to white. <b>Perceptual (photographic)</b> yields the most effective results on continuous tone and images. <b>Saturated (presentation)</b> produces saturated colors that are suitable for office environment applications (for example text documents and presentations). <b>Absolute Colorimetric</b> preserves the substrate tint. <b>Relative Colorimetric</b> and <b>Absolute Colorimetric</b> are the most effective rendering intent methods for CMYK images.
Use Spire Spot color dictionary	Yes to use the Spire spot color dictionary No

```
Table 4: PPD parameters
```

PPD Parameter	Printing Options
Destination profile	Linked uses the destination profile that was mapped to a paper color in the Resource Center>Profile Manager DC_5252.GA and DC_5252.COM are predefined destination profiles. The predefined ICC profiles for the Xerox DocuColor 2045 Digital Color Press areDC2000_GA and DC2000_COM.
Calibration	Normal prints using the normal calibration table. Saturated prints using the saturated calibration table. None prints without calibration, therefore, there is no balance between colors and gives no color calibration data.
Screening Method	Automatic applies two types of screens:
	• For CT, the system uses Dot type screen of 200 lpi.
	• For LW (text / line-art elements), the system uses Line type screen of 200 lpi.
	<ul> <li>Dot 150 applies Dot type screen of 150 lpi.</li> <li>Dot 200 applies Dot type screen of 200 lpi.</li> <li>Line 200 applies line type screen of 200 lpi.</li> <li>Line 300 applies line type screen of 300 lpi.</li> <li>Line 600 applies line type screen of 600 lpi.</li> </ul>
Ink Saving (GCR)	<b>No</b> does not use GCR and uses default maximum toner settings. Use <b>Low, Medium</b> , or <b>High</b> to set the amount of CMY toners to be replaced by the black toner. <b>High</b> provides low ink coverage while saving on toner (this prevents the occasional peeling of ink and the curling effect that may occur when printing transparencies).
Brightness	Brightness settings can be applied to RTP jobs without reprocessing (re- RIPing the file). <b>Normal</b> keeps the current job setting and does not apply extra brightness. To apply brightness, select one of the range options: <b>Light (5%)</b> , <b>Lighter</b> <b>(10%)</b> , <b>Lightest (15%)</b> , <b>Dark (5%)</b> , <b>Darker (10%)</b> , <b>Darkest (15%)</b> .
Contrast	Contrast settings can be applied to RTP jobs without reprocessing (re- RIPing the file). <b>Normal</b> keeps the current job setting and does not apply extra contrast. To apply contrast, select <b>Less Contrast</b> or <b>More Contrast</b> .

PPD Parameter	Printing Options
Automatic Deletion	<ul> <li>Always, Never, Successful Only, Failed Only</li> <li>On large VI jobs, which take up a large amount of the Spire CXP5000 color server's disk space, it is recommended (if you do not need to reprint the job) that you use the this option. Completed and failed jobs are automatically saved in the Storage window unless you select one of the Job Deletion options.</li> <li>Always removes all jobs after they are printed.</li> <li>Never does not delete any job after printing it.</li> <li>Successful Only continuously deletes pages once they have been successfully printed and thus sustains enough free disk space for the duration of the print run. Each successfully printed page of the job is immediately deleted while the rest of the job remains in the queue to print.</li> <li>Failed only removes failed jobs (while processing or printing) from the Spire CXP5000 color server.</li> </ul>
APR	Print with High Res prints using high-resolution files. Print with Low Res prints using low-resolution files.
Job Flow	<ul> <li>Process Print RIPs the PDL files and prints them, and then moves the files to the Storage window or deletes them in accordance with the deletion policy.</li> <li>Process Store RIPs the PDL files, and then moves them to the Storage window as RTP jobs.</li> <li>Spool Store copies the PDL files directly to the Storage window.</li> </ul>
Split to booklets	Select the required number of pages (1-10) per booklet. <b>Printers Default</b> (No) does not split the job to booklets.
Admin Page	Admin Page includes general information about the job, including paper stock parameters (Admin Page can also apply to completed jobs that weren't successful). Admin page is printed in the same order as the job, before each set for face-down printing and after each set for face-up printing. <b>No</b> (default) does not print an admin page with the job. <b>Yes</b> prints an admin page.

PPD Parameter	Printing Options
Slip Sheet	<b>Yes</b> inserts a sheet offset from the job stock between jobs or copies of a job or at the end of uncollated stacks of pages. <b>No</b> does not insert any slip-sheets.
Finisher Module	<ul> <li>To select the printed output's destination, select a finisher module from the list:</li> <li>OCT (Offset Catch Tray) prints to the output cache tray.</li> <li>If your printer is equipped with an HCS (High Capacity Stacker), select:</li> <li>HCS Top Tray to print to the top tray</li> <li>HCS Stack Tray to print to the stack tray, which is the internal tray</li> <li>If your printer is equipped with an HCSS (High Capacity Stacker Stapler), select:</li> <li>HCSS Top Tray to print to the top tray</li> <li>HCSS Stack Tray to print to the top tray</li> <li>HCSS Stack Tray to print to the stack tray (usually for many pages or copies).</li> <li>HCSS Staple Stack to print a document that is already stapled</li> </ul>
Finisher Offset	Yes shifts the sheets when a new page number is delivered. For example, if you requested three copies of each page uncollated, the printing output sequence is as follows, Page1, Page1, Page1, Offset, Page2, Page2, Page2, Offset, and so on. No does not use this printing method.
Staple Options	Landscape - Single TL a single staple in the top left corner Landscape - Single TR a single staple in the top right corner Landscape - Dual Right two staples along the right side Landscape - Dual Left two staples along the left side Landscape - Dual Top two staples along the top Portrait - Single TL a single staple in the top left corner Portrait - Single TR a single staple in the top right corner Portrait - Dual Right two staples along the right side Portrait - Dual Left two staples along the right side Portrait - Dual Left two staples along the left side Portrait - Dual Left two staples along the top

# Working From Windows Client Workstations

The Spire CXP5000 color server can print from a Windows client workstation that has one of the following operating systems:

- Windows 98, Windows ME
- Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP

The following section describes how to define a Spire CXP5000 color server network printer for each of the supported operating systems.

#### Defining a Printer on Windows Client Workstations

You use the Windows Add Printer wizard to define the Spire CXP5000 color server network printers.

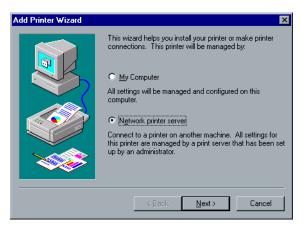


**Note:** When you add a new Spire CXP5000 color server network printer to a client workstation, there is no need to install the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file and Adobe PostScript printer driver separately. They are installed automatically in the Windows Add Printer wizard.

#### Defining a Printer on Windows NT 4.0

#### To define a network printer using the Windows Add Printer wizard:

- On your Windows desktop, click the Start button and select Settings>Printers.
- 2. Double-click the Add Printer icon.



3. Select Network printer server, and then click Next.

4. In the network, locate the Spire CXP5000 color server and doubleclick the server name.

**Connect to Printer** × ОK Printer: Cancel <u>H</u>elp Shared Printers: 🔽 Expand by Default ProcessStore ProcessPrint 🐴 SpoolStore PARIS2 RNP649D8B • ١ Printer Information Description: Status: Documents Waiting:

A list of the network printers is displayed.



**Note:** The Spire CXP5000 color server is provided with three network printers, **ProcessPrint**, **ProcessStore** and **SpoolStore**.

- 5. Select one of the network printers—for example, **ProcessPrint**—and then click **OK**.
- 6. Select **Yes** if you want to set this printer as the default printer on your computer. Otherwise, select **No**.
- 7. Click Next.
- Click Finish to complete the setup. The Spire CXP5000 color server network printer is now successfully installed.

#### To define a network printer using the network neighborhood:

- 1. Locate the required network printer.
- 2. Double-click the network printer icon.
- 3. In the message that appears, click **Yes** to setup the printer.

The network printer is defined on your Windows client workstation.

4. From the **Printers** list, select the Spire CXP5000 color server, and then click **Next**.

Note: To install additional network printers, repeat the process.

#### Defining a Printer - Windows 98



**Note:** When you add a new Spire CXP5000 color server network printer to a client workstation, there is no need to install the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file and Adobe PostScript printer driver separately. They are installed automatically in the Windows Add Printer wizard.

#### To define a network printer using the Windows Add Printer wizard:

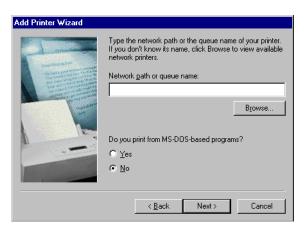
- 1. On your Windows desktop, click the **Start** button, and follow the path **Settings>Printers.**
- 2. Double-click the **Add Printer** icon.

The Add Printer wizard appears.

3. Click Next.



4. Select **Network printer**, and then click **Next**.



5. Type the network path or the queue name of your printer Or:

If you don't know the exact name, click **Browse** to view the available network printers.

- a. Select one of the network printers—for example, **ProcessPrint**.
- b. Click OK.
- 6. Click Next.

dd Printer Wizard	
	You can type a name for this printer, or you can use the name supplied below. When you have finished, click Next.
	Printer name: AdobePSCXP5000
	Do you want your Windows-based programs to use this printer as the default printer?
	© No
	< Back Next > Cancel

- 7. Select **Yes** if you want to set this printer as the default printer on your computer. Otherwise, select **No**.
- 8. Click Next.

9. Select **Yes** to print a test page.

The Spire CXP5000 color server network printer is now successfully installed.

10. Click **Finish** to complete the setup.

#### To define a network printer using the network neighborhood:

- 1. Browse to the required network printer.
- 2. Double-click the network printer icon.

The Add Printer wizard appears and the network printer is defined on your Windows client workstation.



Note: To install additional network printers, repeat the process.

#### Defining a Printer - Windows 2000 and Windows ME



**Note:** When you add a new Spire CXP5000 color server network printer to a client workstation, there is no need to install the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file and Adobe PostScript printer driver separately. They are installed automatically in the Windows Add Printer wizard.

#### To define a network printer using the Windows Add Printer wizard:

- 1. On your Windows desktop, click the **Start** button and follow the path **Settings>Printers.**
- 2. Double-click the **Add Printer** icon.

The Add Printer wizard appears.

3. Click Next.



- 4. Select **Network printer**.
- 5. Click Next.

Add Printer Wizard	
Locate Your Printer How do you want to locate your printer?	2
If you don't know the name of the printer, you can browse for one on the network.	
What do you want to do?	
<ul> <li>Type the printer name, or click Next to browse for a printer</li> <li>Name:</li> <li>Connect to a printer on the Internet or on your intranet</li> <li>URL:</li> </ul>	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	

6. Select Type the printer name, or click Next to browse for a printer.

7. In the **Name** box, type the exact name of the printer. Or:

Click **Next** to browse for a printer.

dd Printer Wizard	
Browse For Printer Locate your network printer	
Printer: \\CXP-911_ProcessPrint	
Shared printers:	
CXP-911 AA_FAF AA_FAF AA_DNLY ProcessStore ProcessPrint	CXP-911_\\     CXP-911_AA_FAF     CXP-911_AA_FAF     CXP-911_PrintToStore     CXP-911_PrintToStore     CXP-911_ProcessPrint     ✓
Printer information	
Comment:	
Status: Ready	Documents Waiting: 0
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

- 8. Select one of the network printers—for example, ProcessPrint.
- 9. Click Next.
- 10. Select **Yes** if you want to set this printer as the default printer on your computer. Otherwise, select **No**.
- 11. Click Next.
- 12. Click **Finish** to complete the setup.

The Spire CXP5000 color server network printer is now successfully installed.

#### To define a network printer using the network neighborhood:

- 1. Locate the required network printer.
- 2. Double-click the network printer icon.
- 3. In the message that appears, click Yes to setup the printer.

The network printer is defined on your Windows client workstation.



Note: To install additional network printers, repeat the process.

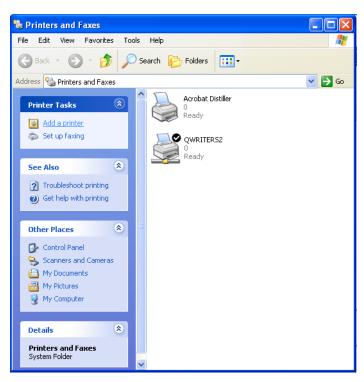


Defining a Printer - Windows XP

**Note:** When you add a new Spire CXP5000 color server network printer to a client workstation, there is no need to install the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file and Adobe PostScript printer driver separately. They are installed automatically in the Windows Add Printer wizard.

#### To define a network printer using the Windows Add Printer wizard:

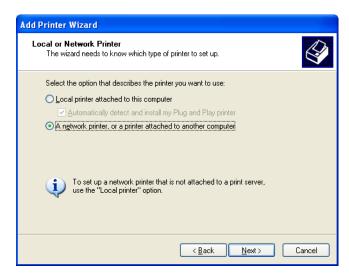
1. On your Windows desktop, click the **Start** button and select **Printers** and **Faxes**.



2. In the **Printer Tasks** area, select **Add a printer**.

The Add Printer wizard appears.

3. Click Next.



4. Select **A** network printer, or a printer attached to another computer and click Next.

Add Printer Wizard
Specify a Printer If you don't know the name or address of the printer, you can search for a printer that meets your needs.
What printer do you want to connect to?
Browse for a printer     Browse for a printer     Second
O Connect to this printer (or to browse for a printer, select this option and click Next):
Name:
Example: \\server\printer
O Connect to a printer on the Internet or on a home or office network:
URL:
Example: http://server/printers/myprinter/.printer
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> Cancel

5. Select Browse for a printer, and click Next.

6. Locate the Spire CXP5000 color server and double-click it to display the list of network printers.

Add Printer Wizard		
Browse for Printer When the list of printers appears, select the	e one you want to use.	Þ
Printer: \\CXP5000\CXP5000_ProcessPrint Shared printers:		
CXP5000 gali A PrintToStore	CXP5000_gali CXP5000_PrintToStore	
ProcessPrint     SpoolStore     *     C×P5000_SIM1	CXP5000_ProcessPrint	
Printer information Comment: Status: Ready	Documents waiting: 0	
	< <u>₿</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	

- 7. Select the printer you wish to setup, and click **Next**.
- 8. Select **Yes** if you want to set this printer as the default printer on your computer. Otherwise, select **No**.
- 9. Click Next.
- 10. Click **Finish** to close the wizard.

The Spire CXP5000 color server network printer is added to your printer list.

# To define a network printer in Windows XP using the network neighborhood:

- 1. Locate the required network printer.
- 2. Double-click on the network printer icon.

The network printer is defined on your Windows client workstation.

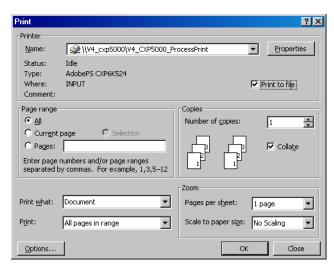
Note: To install additional network printers, repeat the process

#### Creating PostScript Files on Windows

The following procedures describe how to create PostScript files using the Spire CXP5000 color server from the client workstation. This is useful when you are not connected to the Spire CXP5000 color server and you need to distribute jobs for printing on the Spire CXP5000 color server remotely or on external media. These files can then be imported to the Spire CXP5000 color server for printing.

#### To create a PostScript File:

 Open a job in your DTP application —for example, Microsoft Word— and from the File menu, select Print.



- 2. Select the **Print to File** check box.
- 3. Click **OK**.

A PostScript file is created.

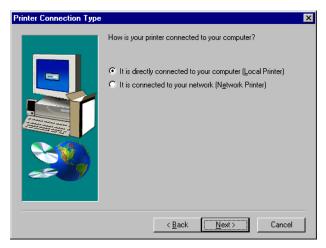
#### To define a print to file printer locally:

 Start the Adobe PostScript Driver application (the application is available on CD#3 in the Utilities folder, or at Adobe's Web site at <u>http://www.adobe.com/support/downloads/main.html</u>).

The Welcome window appears.

2. Click Next.

The End User Agreement window appears.



4. Select It is directly connected to your computer (Local Printer) and click Next.

Local Port Selection		×
	Click the port you want to use with this printer. Click Configure Port to view or change that port's parameters. Available ports: VNw_tansrv5\paris2_printtostore Fax Monitor Port C:YaxPress.splCoverpg.pcl Local Port COM1: Local Port COM2: Local Port COM2: Local Port COM3: Local Port COM4: Local Port COM4: Local Port FAXPORT Fax Monitor Port. FLE: Local Port LPT1: Local Port Configure Port.	•
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cance	

5. In the Available ports list, select File: Local Port and click Next.

3. Read the license agreement and click **Accept**.

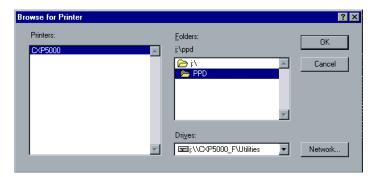
Select Pr	inter Model			×
I	Select the model of your p Browse to look for printers for a compatible printer.			
	If you cannot find a suitabl	le printer listed, select A	dobe Generic PostS	cript Printer.
Printers	κ.			
Generi	c PostScript Printer			
DEFP	RTR2.PPD	13492 bytes	03/09/00	B <u>r</u> owse
		< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

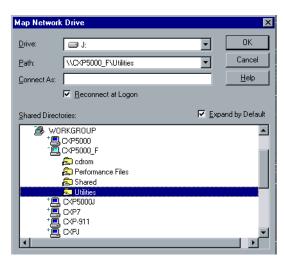
The next step is to configure the printer with the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file. The Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file is located in a shared folder on the Spire CXP5000 color server.



**Note:** The Spire CXP5000 color server uses the following PPD file names, **CXP5K524** for Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press and **CXP5K204** for Xerox DocuColor 2045 Digital Color Press.

6. Click Browse.





7. Click the **Network** button and browse to your Spire CXP5000 color server.

- 8. Locate the Spire CXP5000 color server and double-click on the server icon. Then, double-click the **Utilities** folder.
- 9. Click **OK**.

Browse for Printer		? ×
Printers:	<u>F</u> olders:	ОК
CXP5K524	g:\ppd	
	🗁 g:\	Cancel
	PPD Brazilian Portuguese	
	Dutch	<u> </u>
	🛅 English	
	European Portuguese	<b>•</b>
	Dri <u>v</u> es:	
-	g: \\posqa_sf_7\Utilities	▼ Network
	,	

10. Double click the **PPD** folder and select the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file name,



**Note:** The Spire CXP5000 color server uses the following PPD file names, **CXP5K524** for Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press, and **CXP5K204** for Xerox DocuColor2045 Digital Color Press.

11. Click **OK**.

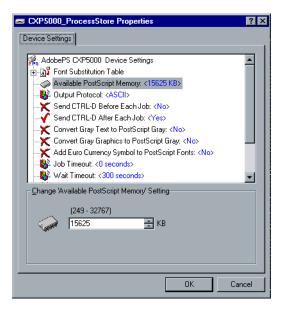
Select Pr	inter Model			×
I.	Select the model of your p Browse to look for printers for a compatible printer.			
	If you cannot find a suitable	le printer listed, select Ad	dobe Generic Post	Script Printer.
Printers	:			
CXP50 Generi	00 c PostScript Printer			
C×P5K	524, ppd	42700 bytes	08/02/01	Browse
		< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

- 12. In the **Printers** list, select the Spire CXP5000 color server printer, and then click **Next**.
- 13. In the Sharing dialog box, select Not Shared, and then click Next.

Printer Information	E Contraction of the second seco	<
	You can use the following name or enter another name for this printer. Printer Name: CXP5000_ProcessStore Do you want to use this printer as your default printer? • Yes • No Would you like to print the test page? • Yes (Recommended) • No	
	< Back Ne <u>x</u> t > Cancel	

- 14. Type a name for the printer which you will be able to identify on the client workstation—for example **CXP5000\_ProcessStore**.
- 15. Select **Yes (Recommended)** if you want to print a test page or select **No**, and then click **Next**.
- 16. Click **Install** to install the print to file printer with the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file. When prompted to configure the printer, click **Yes**, and then click **Next**.
- 17. Select Yes.

#### 18. Click Next.



- 19. Configure the printer according to your specifications, and then click **OK**.
- 20. Click **Finish** to complete the setup.

The printer appears in the Printers window.



You are now ready to print \*.ps and \*.prn files. Once printed, these files can be imported and printed on the Spire CXP5000 color server.

### Copying the PPD File from Windows

You need to use the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file to create PostScript files to send to the Spire CXP5000 color server. Therefore, you should copy and distribute the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file to the customer.

# To copy the PPD file from the Spire CXP5000 color server for distribution on a disk or by e-mail:

- 1. On the Windows desktop, double-click the **Network Neighborhood** icon.
- 2. Locate and select the Spire CXP5000 color server station—for example, **V4\_CXP5000**.
- 3. Double-click the Utilities folder, and then double-click the PPD folder.
- 4. Double-click the folder for the desired language—for example, **English**.



5. Copy the PPD file to a disk or send it by e-mail to the customer.



**Note:** The Spire CXP5000 color server uses the following PPD file names, **CXP5K524** for Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press, and **CXP5K204** for Xerox DocuColor 2045 Digital Color Press.

## **Printing From Windows**

- 1. Open the file you would like to print in the corresponding application—for example, open a PDF file in Adobe Acrobat.
- 2. From the File menu, select Print.

The Print window appears.

an

network printer—for example, **Spire\_ProcessPrint**. For more information about installing Spire CXP5000 color server network printers on client workstations, see *Working From Windows Client* 

3. From the Name list, select the required Spire CXP5000 color server

Print		<u>?</u> ×
Printer <u>N</u> ame:	Spire_ProcessPrint	Properties
Status: Type: Where: Comment:	Idle AdobePS CXP6K3_6 INPUT	Print to file
	page C Selection numbers and/or page ranges y commas. For example, 1,3,5–12	Copies Number of copies:
Print <u>w</u> hat: P <u>ri</u> nt:	Document  All pages in range	Zoom Pages per sheet: 1 page
Options		OK Cancel

4. If required, click the **Properties** button and modify the job parameters.



#### Notes:

- Unless the **Override PPD Parameters** option was selected in the virtual printer, any changes to the printer parameters override the parameters of the selected virtual printer.
- **Printer's Default** indicates that the value is taken from the settings of the selected virtual printer on the Spire CXP5000 color server.
- 5. Click **OK.**
- 6. Click **OK** in the Print window.

Workstations on page 48.

The file is sent to the Spire CXP5000 color server.

# Working From Macintosh Client Workstations

This section describes how to define a Spire CXP5000 color server network printer for Macintosh client workstations. The Spire CXP5000 color server can print to Macintosh client workstations running Mac OS 9 and Mac OS X (10.2).

You can also submit jobs using the Spire CXP5000 color server virtual printers over a TCP/IP protocol. This connection enables a significantly higher spooling speed.



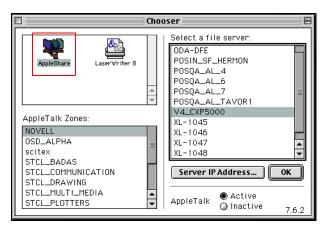
For more information about TCP/IP protocol, see Spire Over TCP/IP on page 108.

## Defining a Printer on Macintosh Client Workstations

# Copying the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD File for Mac OS 9

Before setting up a Spire CXP5000 color server network printer, you need to install the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file on your Macintosh client workstation.

- 1. From the Apple menu, select Chooser.
- 2. Select **AppleShare**, and then locate the Spire CXP5000 color server on the network.



3. Click **OK**.

The Login window appears.

	(		
	Connect to the file serve	r "¥4_CXP5000" ds:	
	🖲 Guest		
	Registered User		
CI	hange Password	Cancel Co	nnect
			3.9.4

4. Select the **Guest** option, and then click **Connect**.

The corresponding Spire CXP5000 color server window appears.

	V4_CXP5000
-	Select the items you want to use:
	HF_V4_CXP5000_ProcessStore
	Checked items will be opened at system startup time
	Cancel OK

5. Select **Utilities**, and then click **OK**.



**Note:** Do not select the **Utilities** check box. If you do, **Utilities** will mount with every reboot.

6. On the desktop, double-click the **Utilities** volume.

The Utilities window appears.

desired language—for example, **English**.

7. Double-click the PPD folder, and then double-click the folder for the



8. Copy the PPD file to the System Folder>Extensions>Printer Descriptions folder.



**Note:** The Spire CXP5000 color server uses the following PPD file names, **CXP5K524** for Xerox DocuColor 5252, and **CXP5K204** for Xerox DocuColor 2045 Color Press.

The Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file is now installed in the **Printer Descriptions** folder. It is ready to be configured with one of the Spire CXP5000 color server network printers.

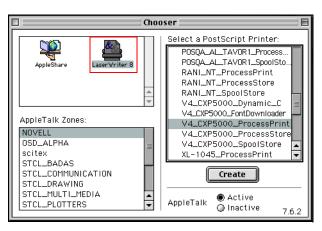
## Setting the Network Printer for Mac OS 9

1. Make sure that the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file has been copied to the **Printer Descriptions** folder on your client workstation.



For more information about copying the PPD file, see *Copying the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD File for Mac OS 9* on page 66.

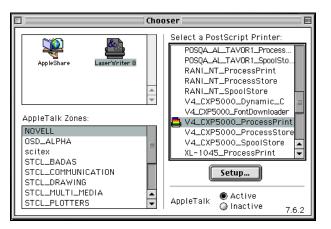
2. From the Apple menu, select Chooser.



3. Select **LaserWriter** and then locate the Spire CXP5000 color server on the network.

4. Select one of the Spire CXP5000 color server's network printers—for example, V4\_CXP5000\_ProcessPrint—and click Create.

The system automatically locates the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file and configures the printer as a Spire CXP5000 color server network printer.



If you have the Desktop Printer Spooler extension enabled, a printer icon appears on the desktop.



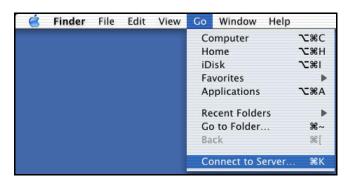


**Note:** Use this icon when you want to download PostScript files to the Spire CXP5000 color server.

# Copying the Spire CXP5000 Color Server PPD File for Mac OS X (10.2)

Before you define a network printer you need to install the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file on your Macintosh client workstation.

1. From the **Go** menu, select **Connect to Server**.



The Connect to Server window appears.

2. Locate the desired Spire CXP5000 color server, and then click **Connect**.



3. Select **Guest**, and then click **Connect**.

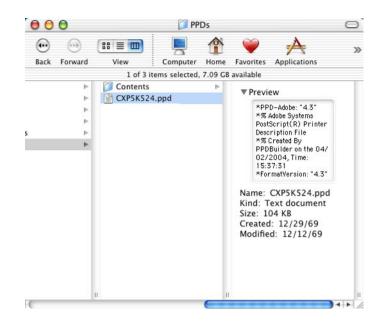


4. Select the **CXP5000\_Utilities** folder, and then click **OK**.

Select the volumes you wish to mount	
HF_V4_CXP5000_FontDownLoade	i i
HF_V4_CXP5000_ProcessPrint	ſ
HF_V4_CXP5000_ProcessStore	
HF_V4_CXP5000_SpoolStore	
V4_CXP5000_Shared	
V4_CXP5000_Utilities	
	HF_V4_CXP5000_FontDownLoade HF_V4_CXP5000_ProcessPrint HF_V4_CXP5000_ProcessStore HF_V4_CXP5000_SpoolStore V4_CXP5000_Shared

The **CXP5000\_Utilities** folder is mounted on your desktop.

- 5. Double-click the **CXP5000\_Utilities** folder on your desktop.
- 6. Double-click the **PPD** folder, and then double-click the folder for the desired language.
- 7. Copy the PPD file from the Spire CXP5000 color server to your Macintosh hard disk.



## Setting the Network Printer for Mac OS X (10.2)



**Note:** The Spire CXP5000 color server uses the following PPD file names, **CXP5K524** for Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press, and **CXP5K204** for Xerox DocuColor 2045 Digital Color Press.



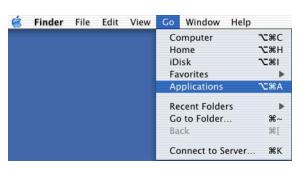
**Tip:** It is recommended that you copy the PPD file by dragging it from the Spire CXP5000 color server to the **Library**>**Printers**>**PPDs** folder on your Macintosh.

 Copy the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file to the Library>Printers>PPDs folder on your client workstation.



For more information about copying the PPD file, see *Copying the Spire CXP5000 Color Server PPD File for Mac OS X (10.2)* on page 70.

2. From the **Go** menu, select **Applications**.

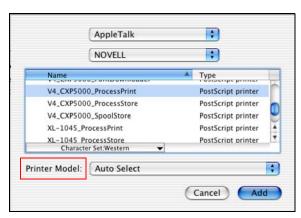




3. Open the **Utilities** folder and double-click the **Print Center** icon.

00	) 🖯	Pri	nter List	
0	Name	Ŧ	Kind	Status
θ	CXP-911_Print		LaserWriter	
		Delete	Add Printe	er)

4. Click Add Printer.



5. Select **AppleTalk** as the connection type and then locate the Spire CXP5000 color server.



**Note:** If you would like to use the LPR protocol instead, see the procedure *Setting up an LPR Printer in Macintosh OS X (10.2)* on page 106.

6. In the **Printer Model** list, select **Other.** 

select the file.

**Note:** The Spire CXP5000 color server uses the following PPD file names, **CXP5K524** for Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press, and **CXP5K204** for Xerox DocuColor 2045 Digital Color Press.

7. Locate the folder to which you have copied the PPD file, and then

From: 📁 PPDs	•
ो CXP5K524.ppd	*PPD-Adobe: "4.3" *% Adobe Systems PostScript(R) Printer Description File *% Created By PPDBuilder on the 1/ 6/2004, Time: 2:46:12 PM *FormatVersion: "4.3"
	Kind: Document Size: 108 KB
	512E. 100 KB

8. Click **Choose** to assign the PPD file to the selected Spire CXP5000 color server network printer.

	scitex	•
Name		🔺 Туре
V4_CXP5000	ProcessPrint	PostScript printer
V4_CXP5000	ProcessStore	PostScript printer
V4_CXP5000	SPD	PostScript printer
V4_CXP5000	SpoolStore	PostScript printer
V4_CXP5000	Tabs w SPD	PostScript printer
Character	Set:Western 👻	
nter Model:	CXP5K524.ppd	

9. Click Add to add the new printer to the printer list.



## Printing from a Macintosh

- 1. Open the file you would like to print, in the corresponding application—for example, open a Quark file.
- 2. From the **File** menu, select **Print**.

Printer: Color_ProcessPrint	◆ Destination: Printer ◆
┌ General 🔷 ——	
Copies: 1 Collated	
Pages: @ All From: To	
Paper Source: 🖲 All pages from:	Auto Select 🗢
O First page from:	Paper 🔷
Remaining from:	Paper 🔷
Save Settings	Cancel Print

3. From the **Printer** list, select the required printer—for example, **Color\_ProcessPrint**.



For more information about installing the Spire CXP5000 color server network printers on client workstations, see *Copying the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD File for Mac OS 9* on page 66 and *Setting the Network Printer for Mac OS X (10.2)* on page 72.

4. To set job parameters, click **General** and from the pop-up menu, select one of the **Printer Specific Options**.

Printer: Color_ProcessPrint 🔶	Z2-8.7 Destination: Printer 🔶
Printer Specific Options 1 😫	
Print Method: Printer's Default 🔶	
Face Up: Printer's Default 🗢	
Reverse Print Order: Printer's Default 😫	
Collation: Printer's Default 😫	
BW Printing: Printer's Default 😫	
Type: Printer's Default 🔶	
Weight: Printer's Default 😫	▶
Save Settings	Cancel Print

A window similar to the one shown below appears.

5. Adjust the printer options as required.

#### Notes:

- The **Printer's Default** option indicates that the value is taken from the virtual printer that is currently selected.
- The PPD parameters are divided into five **Printer Specific Options** in the drop-down menu.
- 6. After modifying the job settings, click **Print**.

The file is sent to the Spire CXP5000 color server.

## Spire Web Center

The **Spire Web Center** is an internet site that provides online Spire information and can be accessed from client workstations.

The Spire web center enables you to:

- View the status of jobs in the Spire queues, the Alerts window in its current state, and the printer system information
- Download remote client tools, utility applications, color profiles, and print drivers
- View Spire related documentation, such as release notes, Spire guides, frequently asked questions and answers, and other troubleshooting information
- Find links to related vendors or products

#### To connect to the web center from a client workstation:



**Important:** To connect to the Spire Web Center from a client workstation, you must first enable the web connect service on the Spire CXP5000 color server. To enable this service, select the Settings window>**Administration**>**Remote Tools Setup**.



For more information about setting up the web connect service, see *Remote Tools Setup* on page 405.

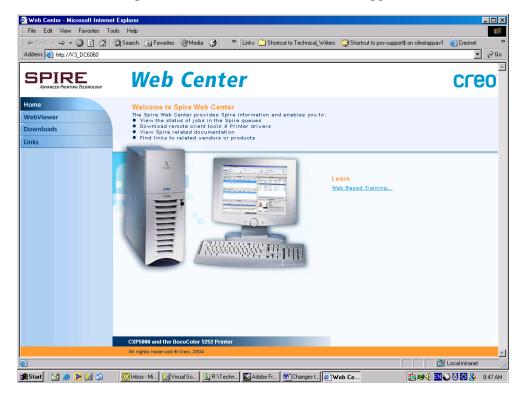
- 1. On your desktop, click the **Internet Explorer** icon.
- 2. When the Internet Explorer starts, in the address field type: http://<spire name>—for example, if the Spire station name is FALCON\_E, type http://FALCON\_E.



**Note:** You can also use the Spire color server IP address—for example, http://192.168.92.0.



**Important:** If you would like to connect to the Spire CXP5000 color server from a Macintosh client workstation, contact your system administrator to add the Spire name to the DNS. This is required since Windows name resolution protocols are not supported in Macintosh. The DNS addition is required when clients go through a main server on the network.



The Spire CXP5000 color server Web Center appears.

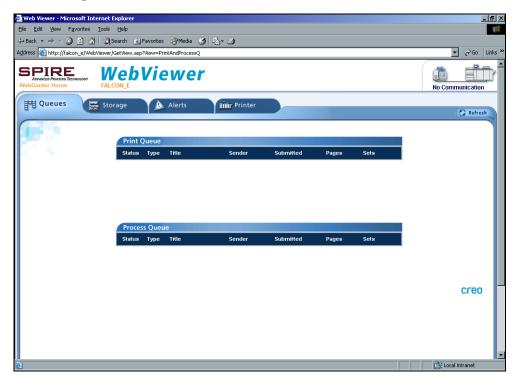
## The Web Viewer

The Web Viewer page enables you to view the printer configuration and system information, the jobs that currently reside in the Spire CXP5000 color server Queues window and Storage window, and to view the alerts that currently appear in the Alerts window. This information is important when you print from a client workstation because it enables you to monitor your jobs in the queues and then make any necessary changes.

In addition, if you have a system that uses XML protocol, you can retrieve information about the job list and printer status.

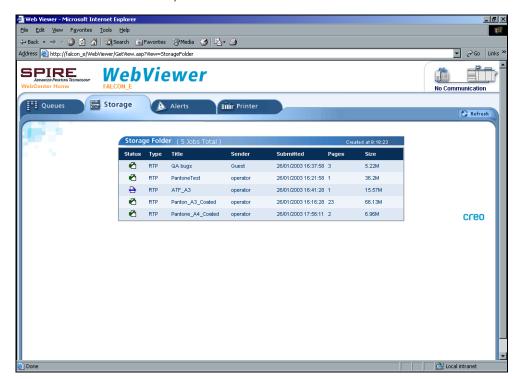
## The Queues tab

In the **Queues** tab you can view the jobs that are currently running in the Spire CXP5000 color server **Print Queue** and **Process Queue**.



## The Storage tab

In the **Storage** tab you can view the Spire CXP5000 color server Storage window and the jobs that reside in this window.



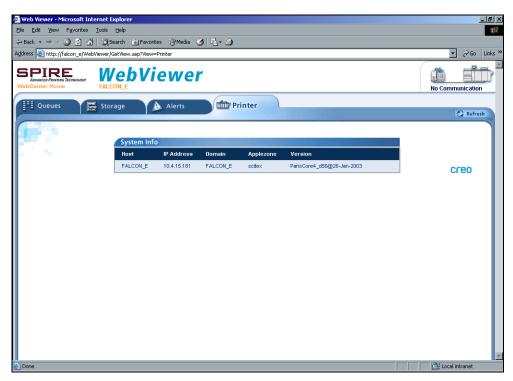
## The Alerts tab

In the **Alerts** tab you can view the Spire CXP5000 color server Alerts window messages. For example, if a job that you sent to print from your client workstation has failed—you can view the message in the Alerts window, edit the job parameters (PPD file), and then resend it for processing and printing on the Spire CXP5000 color server.

🗿 Web Viewer - Microsoft Internet Explorer	_ 8
Eile Edit View Favorites Iools Help	
⇔Back + → - 🙆 🛐 🚰 🥘 Search 🚋 Favorites 🛞 Media 🧭 🛃 + 🎒	
Address 🗃 http://falcon_e/WebViewer/GetView.asp?View=Alerts	▼ 🖓 Go Links
SPIRE Avvide Dentrier Home WebCenter Home FALCON_E	No Communication
III Queues 🗮 Storage 🛆 Alerts	C Refresh
Alerts (showing 1 - 43)	
Date & Time Description	
14:42:00, 01/26/2003 Job <chartselements34> Started processing of Restore!</chartselements34>	
	сгео
	I
	-
E Done	Cocal intranet

## The Printer tab

In the **Printer** tab you can view the Spire CXP5000 color server system information.



#### Web Viewer API

The **JobList.xml** file and the **Printer Status.xml** file enable you to retrieve information about the job list and the printer status.

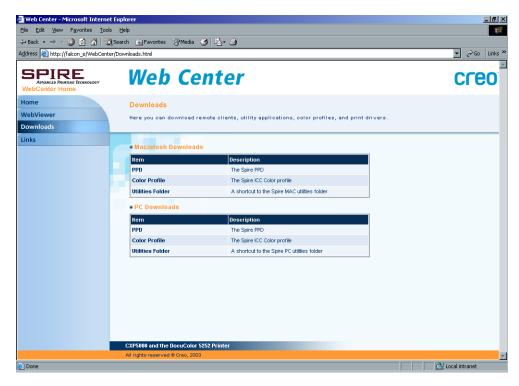
The JobList.xml file contains information about files in the Print Queue, Process Queue, and the Storage window.

To see the Job List view, type the following path: http://<ComputerName>/WebViewer/GetView.asp?View=JobList\_xml.

The **Printer Status.xml** file contains information about the various printer states. To see the Printer State view, type the following path: http://<ComputerName>/WebViewer/GetView.asp?View=PrinterStatus\_xml.

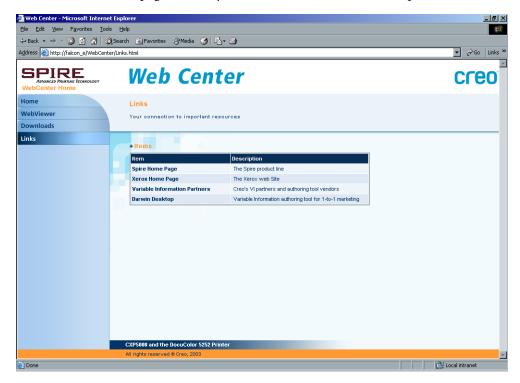
### Downloads

The **Downloads** page enables you to access the Spire CXP5000 color server **Utilities** folder and download available tools and files for Windows and Macintosh client workstations—for example, the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file.



## Links

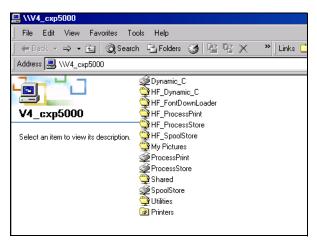
The Links page enables you to link to related vendors or products.



## Using Hot Folders

For every published Spire CXP5000 color server network printer that you define on a client workstation, a corresponding hot folder is automatically created in the Spire CXP5000 color server **D:\Hot Folders** folder. The Spire CXP5000 color server has three default hot folders, **HF\_ProcessPrint**, **HF\_ProcessStore**, and **HF\_SpoolStore**. These hot folders correspond to the three default printers.

Each hot folder carries the virtual printer's name (HF\_printer's name), see the following graphic.



When you connect from a client workstation to the Spire CXP5000 color server over the network, you can use the hot folder to submit PDL jobs to the Spire CXP5000 color server. When you establish a connection, drag your jobs onto the required hot folder (according to the selected workflow).



**Tip:** You can also drag the hot folder icon to your desktop to create a short cut to the folder for future usage.

Jobs that reside in the hot folder will automatically be submitted to the Spire CXP5000 color server through the corresponding virtual printer. Consequently, all of the virtual printer job parameters, inclusive of the workflow, will be applied to the job. As soon as the job has been spooled to the Spire CXP5000 color server, it disappears from the hot folder and enters the Spire CXP5000 color server **Process Queue** or Storage window, according to the selected workflow.



**Note:** If you send files for printing through a hot folder while the Spire CXP5000 color server application is down, when the application restarts, the files that reside in hot folders will immediately be imported to the system.

## Hot Folder File Formats

Hot folders may contain all PDL formats that are supported by the Spire CXP5000 color server, PS, PDF, EPS, PRN, VPS, VIPP, PPML, TIF, JPG and GAP.

Files with unsupported formats that are moved to a hot folder, will not be imported to the Spire CXP5000 color server and will remain in the hot folder.

## Hot Folders and Brisque or Prinergy jobs (GAP Formats)

When you use hot folders to print GAP jobs, the process is automated and the job is converted to a PDF, which is displayed in the Spire CXP5000 color server queues. The PDF files can then be programmed and printed as any other PDF file.



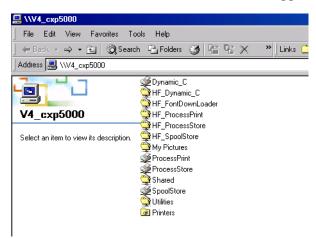
For more information about supported GAP formats, see *Printing PrePress Files* - *GAP Files* on page 372.

## Using Hot Folders from Client Workstations

You can use hot folders to process and print files from any client workstation. The following procedures explain how to print using hot folders from Windows, Mac OS 9, and Macintosh OS X.

#### To print a job using a hot folder from Windows:

- 1. On your Windows desktop, double-click the **Network Neighborhood** icon.
- 2. Locate your Spire CXP5000 color server.
- 3. Double-click the Spire CXP5000 color server.



A list of all the shared folders and hot folders appears.

4. Double-click the required hot folder—for example, HF\_ProcessPrint.



**Tip:** You can also drag the hot folder icon to your desktop to create and use a shortcut to the folder in the future.

You can now drag the required files to the hot folder. All the files are processed and printed automatically to the printer, according to the hot folder workflow.

#### To print a job using a hot folder from Macintosh OS 9:

1. Click the Apple menu, and then select Chooser.



2. Locate the Spire CXP5000 color server on the network, and then click **OK**.

7	Connect to the file server "CXP609" as:
	● Guest ○ Registered User
<u> </u>	hange Password Cancel Connect

3. Select **Guest**, and then click **Connect**.

FALC_W2K_U		
HF_ProcessP		
HF_ProcessS		
HF_SpoolSto	re	<b>□</b> -
Checked Iten startup time	is will be ope	ned at system



4. From the list, select the required hot folder—for example, **HF\_ProcessPrint**—and then click **OK**.

The hot folder icon appears on your desktop. You can now drag the required files to the hot folder icon. All the files are processed and printed automatically to the printer, according to the hot folder workflow.

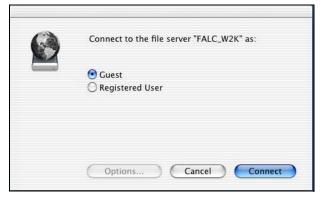
To print a job using a hot folder from a Mac OS X:

1. From the **Finder** menu bar, select **Go**>**Connect to Server**.

Go	Window Help	0
Ba	ck	Ж[
Fo	rward	⊮]
	Computer	ራ⊮ር
1	Home	☆ ૠ H
0	iDisk	ፚ፠፤
A	Applications	۵жА
۷	Favorites	ፚ፞፝፝ቾF
Fa	vorites	•
Re	cent Folders	•
Go	to Folder	<mark>ፚ</mark> ቼር
Co	onnect to Server	%K

The Connect to Server window appears.

		Connect to Server	
Choos	e a se	rver from the list or enter a	server address
	At:	FALC_W2K	
State       State         St		열 dolev44 열 dolev45 열 dolev50 열 DPC 열 dry4	
	▼ ▼ ▼ ▼ ▼ ▼ ▼ ▼ ▼	EFRAIMY     ELIZA36566     EXPOSEIF     Eyal's Mac     eyal6000     FALC_W2K     flex4047     Flusion_LA8111     Gail's Mac     dave6000	Name: FALC_W2K Service: afp Location: scitex URL: afp:/aW2K:scitex
52 items ddress: afp:/at/FALC	_W2	K:scitex	
Add to Favorites			(Cancel) (Conner



2. Locate your Spire CXP5000 color server on the network, and click **Connect**.

3. Select Guest, and then click Connect.

Select the volumes y	
FALC_W2K_Shared FALC_W2K_Utilitie	
HF_ProcessPrint	3
HF_ProcessStore	
HF_SpoolStore	



4. From the list, select the required hot folder—for example, **HF\_ProcessPrint**—and then click **OK**.

The hot folder icon appears on your desktop. You can now drag the required files to the hot folder icon. All the files are processed and printed automatically to the printer, according to the hot folder workflow.

# LPR Printing with the Spire CXP5000 Color Server

This section covers the procedures for setting up and configuring an LPR / TCP/IP printer from the following computers:

- Windows NT 4.0
- Windows 2000, Windows XP
- Windows NT, Windows 2000, Windows XP command Line
- Mac OS X (10.2)
- Mac OS 9 (using the Choose Spire Over IP utility)
- Linux
- AIX and UNIX command line

# Setting up an LPR Printer in Windows NT 4.0

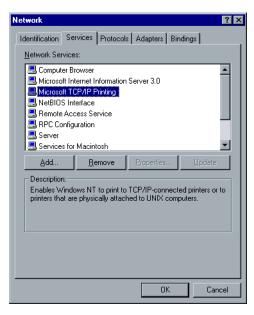
The following procedure describes how to configure an LPR printer in Windows NT 4.0 for printing to the Spire CXP5000 color server.

The following items must be installed and configured on a Windows NT 4.0 computer (server or client workstation version) before you begin:

1. TCP/IP protocol

Network			? ×
Identification Se	rvices Protocols	Adapters Bin	dings
Network Protoco	ols:		
TCP/IP Pro			
<u>A</u> dd	<u>R</u> emove	Properties	<u>U</u> pdate
Description: Transport Control Protocol/Internet Protocol. The default wide area network protocol that provides communication across diverse interconnected networks.			
		OK	Cancel

2. Microsoft TCP/IP Printing service



- Latest Adobe PostScript Printer Driver, you can install this from the Spire CXP5000 color server, D:\utilties\Utilities\PC utilities, or you can download the latest version free from <u>http://www.adobe.com/</u> support/downloads/main.html.
- 4. Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file copied to your client workstation (the PPD file is located in the **D:\utilities\PPD** folder on the Spire CXP5000 color server).

#### To define an LPR Printer:

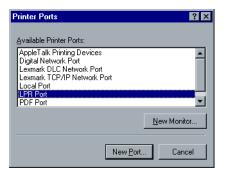
1. From the **Start** menu on the Windows desktop, select **Settings>Printers**.

The Printers window appears.

- 2. From the File menu, select Server Properties.
- 3. Click the **Ports** tab, and then click **Add Port**.

🧼 Print Server Propert	ies		? ×
Forms Ports Advance	ced ]		
POWER_VIGO	)R		_
Port	Description	Printer	
C:\WINNT\Profiles\ OPAL4:0PAL4 PR	Description Scitex Port PDF Port	POWER_VIGOR Acrobat Distiller	
LPT1: LPT2: LPT3:	Local Port Local Port Local Port		4
COM2: COM3:	Local Port Local Port		-
Add Por <u>t</u>	<u>D</u> elete Port	<u>C</u> onfigure Port	
		OK Cano	el

4. In the Available Printer Ports list, select LPR Port, and then click New Port.



5. In the **Name or address of server providing lpd** box, type the exact name of the Spire CXP5000 color server (this box is case-sensitive)— for example, **OPAL5**.

Add LPR compatible printer		×
Name or address of server providing lpd:	OPAL5	ОК
Name of printer or print queue on that server:	OPAL5_ProcessPrint	Cancel
		<u>H</u> elp

- 6. Type the exact name of the network printer from which you want to print. To view the exact name of the printer on the Spire CXP5000 color server, select Resource Center>Virtual Printers. In this example the Printer name is **OPAL5\_ProcessPrint**.
- 7. Click **OK**, and then close the Printer Ports window.

The new LPR port is now defined on your computer.

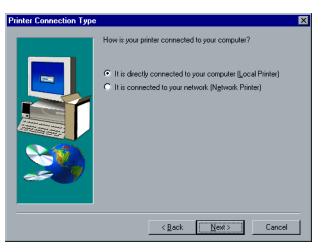
🧼 Print Server Properties	? ×
Forms Ports Advanced	
Ports on this server	
Port INPUT C:\WINNT\Profiles\All Users\Desktop\*.pdf OPAL5:0PAL5_PRODESSPRINT	Description  Scitex Port PDF Port
OPAL4:OPAL4_PROCESSPRINT LPT1: LPT2: LPT3:	Local Port Local Port Local Port
Add Port Delete Port	Configure Port
	OK Cancel

The next step is to define the LPR printer using the Adobe PostScript Printer driver application, see the following procedure.

#### To define an LPR Printer using the Adobe PostScript Driver:

- Start the Adobe PostScript Driver Application. You can install this from the Spire CXP5000 color server, D:\utilties\Utilities\PC utilities, or you can download the latest version free from <u>http://</u> www.adobe.com/support/downloads/main.html.
- 2. In the Welcome window, click Next.

- 3. The End User License Agreement window appears, read the license agreement, and then click **Accept**.
- 4. Select Install a new PostScript Printer, and then click Next.



5. In the Printer Connection Type window, select **It is directly connected to your computer (Local Printer)**, and then click **Next**.

Local Port Selection		х
	Click the port you want to use with this printer. Click Configure Port to view or change that port's parameters. Available ports: COM3: Local Port COM4: Local Port ILE: Local Port ILE: Local Port ILE: Scate Port	1
	LPT1: Local Port LPT2: Local Port LPT3: Local Port DPAL4:0PAL4_PR0CESSPRINT	
	OPAL5:OPAL5_PROCESSPRINT	1
		_
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	

 Select the LPR port you defined earlier—for example, OPAL5\_ProcessPrint LPR—and then click Next.

The next step is to configure the printer with the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file. Make sure that you have copied this to your computer, or that you have access to the Spire CXP5000 color server on your network.

7. In the Select Printer Model window, click **Browse**.

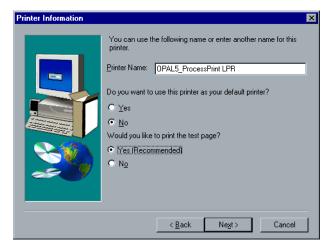
The Browse for Printer window appears.

8. Locate and select the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file.

**Note:** The Spire CXP5000 color server uses the following PPD file names, **CXP5K524** for Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press, and **CXP5K204** for Xerox DocuColor 2045 Digital Color Press.

Browse for Printer		? ×
Printers: CXP5K524	Eolders: g:\ppd g:\ PPD Brazilian Portuguese Dutch English European Portuguese	Cancel
	Drives:	Network

- 9. Click OK.
- 10. In the Select Printer Model window, select **CXP5K524**, and then click **Next**.
- 11. In the Sharing window, select Not Shared, and then click Next.



12. Type a name for the printer that you will be able to identify on your computer—for example, **OPAL5\_ProcessPrint LPR**. You can also keep the original name of the printer.

- 13. To set this printer as the default printer on your computer, select **Yes**. Otherwise, select **No**.
- 14. Select **Yes (Recommended)** if you want to print a test page. Otherwise, select **No**.
- 15. Click Next.
- 16. In the Setup Information window, click **Install** to install the LPR printer with the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file.
- 17. When prompted to configure the printer, click **Yes**.
- 18. Click Next.
- 19. In the Printer Configuration window, select **Yes** when prompted to configure the printer now.
- 20. Click Next.

The CXP5000 Properties window appears.

- 21. Configure the printer according to your specifications, and then click **OK**.
- 22. In the Setup Complete window, click Finish to complete the setup.

The new LPR printer is now listed with your other printers on the Windows NT computer, and you are now ready to print to the Spire CXP5000 color server using the LPR.

## Setting up an LPR Printer in Windows 2000 and Windows XP

The following procedure describes how to configure an LPR printer in Windows 2000 and Windows XP for printing to the Spire CXP5000 color server.

The following items must be installed and configured on the Windows 2000 and Windows XP computer before you begin:

- 1. TCP/IP protocol
- Latest Adobe PostScript Printer Driver, you can install this from the Spire CXP5000 color server, D:\utilties\Utilities\PC utilities, or you can download the latest version free from <u>http://www.adobe.com/</u> <u>support/downloads/main.html</u>.

 Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file copied to your client workstation (the PPD file is located on the Spire CXP5000 color server in the D:\utilities\PPD\ folder).

#### To define an LPR Printer:

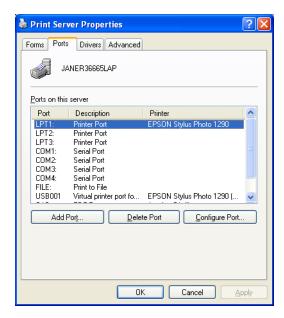
1. From the **Start** menu on the Windows desktop, select **Settings>Printers**.

The Printers window appears.

2. From the File menu, select Server Properties.

The Print Server Properties window appears.

3. Click the **Ports** tab, and then click **Add Port**.



4. In the Available Printer Ports list, select Standard TCP/IP Port, and then click New Port.

ł	Printer Ports	? 🛛
	<u>Available port types:</u>	
	Local Port PDF Port	
	Standard TCP/IP Port	
	New Port Type	New Port Cancel

The Add Printer wizard screen appears.

5. Click Next.

The **Add Port** screen appears.

Add Standard TCP/IP Printer P	ort Wizard	
Add Port For which device do you want t	o add a port?	
Enter the Printer Name or IP ad	dress, and a port name for the desired device.	
Printer Name or IP <u>A</u> ddress:	OPAL5	
Port Name:	0PAL5_ProcessPrint LPR	
	<pre>&lt; Back Next &gt;</pre>	Cancel

- 6. In the **Printer Name or IP Address** box, type the exact name of the Spire CXP5000 color server (this box is case-sensitive)—for example, **OPAL5.**
- 7. In the **Port Name** box, type a name for the printer that you will be able to identify on your computer—for example, **OPAL5ProcessPrint LPR**.
- 8. Click Next.

Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard 🛛 🛛 🔀
Additional Port Information Required The device could not be identified.
The detected device is of unknown type. Be sure that: 1. The device is properly configured. 2. The address on the previous page is correct. Either correct the address and perform another search on the network by returning to the previous wizard page or select the device type if you are sure the address is correct.
Device Type
Standard Generic Network Card     ✓
O <u>C</u> ustom <u>Settings</u>
Kack Next > Cancel

## The Additional Port Information Required screen appears.

9. In the **Device Type** area, select **Custom**, and then click **Settings**.

The Configure Standard TCP/IP Port Monitor screen appears.

Configure Standard TCP/IP P	ort Monitor 🛛 🔶 🔀
Port Settings	
Port Name:	OPAL5_ProcessPrint LPR
Printer Name or IP Address:	OPAL5
Protocol	
◯ Raw	⊙ LPR
Raw Settings	
Port Number: 9100	
LPR Settings	
Queue Name: OPAL_	ProcessPrint
LPR Byte Counting Enabled	
SNMP Status Enabled	
Community Name: public	
SNMP Device Index: 1	
	OK Cancel

- 10. Select the following options:
  - Protocol: Select LPR
  - LPR Settings:
    - Queue Name: Type the exact name of the network printer you want to print to (you can view the exact name of the printer on the Spire CXP5000 color server under Resource Center>Virtual Printers). In this example the Printer name is OPAL5\_ProcessPrint.
    - LPR Byte Counting Enabled: Select this check box
- 11. Click **OK**, and then click **Next**.
- 12. Click Finish.
- 13. In the Printer Ports window, click **Close**.

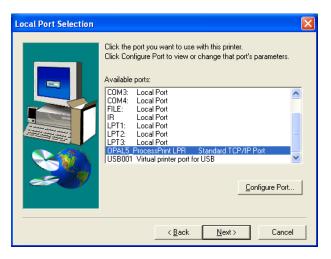
The new Standard TCP/IP Printer Port is now defined on your computer.

🍓 Print Ser	ver Properties	? 🗵
Forms Ports	Drivers Advanced	
J4	ANER36665LAP	
Ports on this	server	
Port	Description	Printer 🔼
COM1: COM2: COM3: COM4: FILE: USB001	Serial Port Serial Port Serial Port Serial Port Print to File Virtual printer port for USB	EPSON Stylus Pr
OPAL5		
	PDF Port	Acrobat Distiller 🕑
<		
Add F	Por <u>t D</u> elete Port	Configure Port
	Close	Cancel Apply

The next step is to define the TCP/IP Printer using the Adobe PostScript Printer Driver application, see the following procedure.

#### To define an LPR Printer using the Adobe PostScript Driver:

- Start the Adobe PostScript Driver Application. You can install this from the Spire CXP5000 color server, D:\utilties\Utilities\PC utilities, or you can download the latest version free from <u>http://</u> www.adobe.com/support/downloads/main.html.
- 2. In the Welcome window, click **Next**.
- 3. The End User License Agreement window appears, read the license agreement, and then click **Accept**.
- 4. Select Install a new PostScript Printer, and then click Next.
- 5. In the Printer Connection Type window, select **It is directly connect to your computer (Local Printer)**, and then click **Next**.



6. In the **Available ports** area, select the Standard TCP/IP port you defined earlier on—for example, **OPAL5\_ProcessPrint LPR**—and then click **Next**.

The next step is to configure the printer with the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file. Make sure that you have copied this to your computer, or that you have access to the Spire CXP5000 color server on your network.

7. In the Select Printer Model dialog box, click **Browse**.

The Browse for Printer dialog box appears.



8. Locate and select the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file.

**Note:** The Spire CXP5000 color server uses the following PPD file names, **CXP5K524** for Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press, and **CXP5K204** for Xerox DocuColor 2045 Digital Color Press.

Browse for Printer		? 🛛
Printers:	Eolders: z:\ Z:\ Z:\	OK Cancel
×	, Drives: Im z: \\Posqa_sf_7\Uniities\PP ▼	Network

- 9. Click **OK**.
- 10. In the Select Printer Model window, select the **CXP5K524**, and then click **Next**.
- 11. In the Sharing window, select Not Shared, and then click Next.

Printer Information		×
	You can use the following name or enter another name for this printer. Printer Name: OPAL5_ProcessPrint LPR Do you want to use this printer as your default printer? C Yes No Would you like to print the test page? (No No	
	< <u>B</u> ack Ne <u>x</u> t > Cancel	

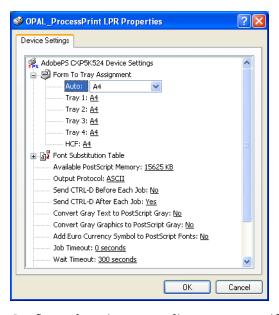
- In the Printer Name box, type a name for the printer that you will be able to identify on your computer—for example, OPAL5\_ProcessPrint LPR. You can also keep the original name of the printer.
- 13. Select **Yes**, if you want to set this printer as the default printer on your computer. Otherwise, select **No**.

- 14. Select **Yes (Recommended)** if you want to print a test page. Otherwise, select **No**.
- 15. Click Next.
- 16. In the Setup Information window, click Install.

This installs the LPR printer with the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file.

- 17. When prompted to configure the printer, click Yes.
- 18. Click Next.
- 19. In the Printer Configuration window, select **Yes** when prompted to configure the printer.
- 20. Click Next.

The CXP5000 Properties window appears.



- 21. Configure the printer according to your specifications, and then click **OK**.
- 22. In the Setup Complete window, click Finish to complete the setup.

The new LPR printer is now listed with your other printers on the Windows NT computer, and you are now ready to print to the Spire CXP5000 color server.

## Windows NT, Windows 2000, Windows XP Command Line

You can also submit PostScript, PDF, or Variable Print Specification files for printing to the Spire CXP5000 color server using the following commands in the Windows command line. The following procedure is suitable for Windows NT, Windows 2000, or Windows XP.

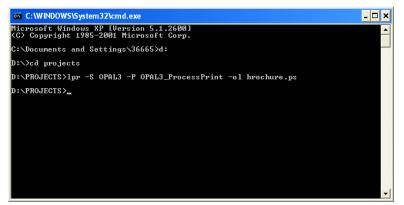


**Note:** All PostScript files should be created using the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file. The Spire CXP5000 color server uses the following PPD file names, **CXP5K524** for Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press, and **CXP5K204** for Xerox DocuColor 2045 Digital Color Press.

- 1. From the **Start** menu, click **Run**.
- 2. Type cmd, and then click OK.
- 3. Locate the directory that contains the file(s) you want to print.
- 4. Type the following in the command line: lpr -S <server name> -P <virtual printer name> -ol <file name> and then press ENTER. For example: lpr -S OPAL3 -P OPAL3\_ProcessPrint -ol brochure.ps



**Note:** All commands, server name, and printer name are case-sensitive.



Your file is printed to the Spire CXP5000 color server using the LPR command.

# Setting up an LPR Printer in Macintosh OS X (10.2)



**Note:** Before you configure the LPR printer, make sure that you have installed the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file on your Macintosh client workstation, see *Copying the Spire CXP5000 Color Server PPD File for Mac OS X (10.2)* on page 70.

## Configuring an LPR Printer

- 1. Follow the procedure *Setting the Network Printer for Mac OS X (10.2)* on page 72 until step 5.
- 2. In the Printer List window, select LPR Printers using IP as the connection type.

IP Printing	•
Printer's Address:	
Internet address or DNS name	
☑ Use default queue on server	
Queue Name:	
Printer Model: Generic	:
6	ancel Add

3. In the LPR Printer's Address box, type the TCP/IP address or hostname of the Spire CXP5000 color server—for example, 10.4.18.169.

\$

4. Clear the **Use default queue on server** check box.

 In the Queue Name box, type the full name of the Spire CXP5000 color server network printer—for example, V4\_CXP5000\_ProcessPrint.



**Note:** This box is case-sensitive.

- 6. In the **Printer Model** list, select **Other.**
- 7. Locate the folder to which you have copied the PPD file.



**Note:** TThe Spire CXP5000 color server uses the following PPD file names, **CXP5K524** for Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press, and **CXP5K204** for Xerox DocuColor 2045 Digital Color Press.

From: DPDs	•
ੇ CXP5K524.ppd	*PPD-Adobe: "4.3" *% Adobe Systems PostScript(R) Printer Description File *% Created By PPDBuilder on the 1/ 6/2004, Time: 2:46:12 PM *FormatVersion: "4.3" Kind: Document
	Size: 108 KB
Go to:	

8. Click **Choose** to assign the **CXP5K524.ppd** file to the selected Spire CXP5000 color server network printer.

IP Printin	ig 🛟
Printer's Address: Internet address or DNS name	10.4.18.169
	Complete and valid address.
🗌 Use default queue o	n server
Queue Name: V4_C	XP5000_ProcessPrint
Printer Model: CXP5	K524.ppd

The following dialog box appears.

9. Click **Add** to add the new printer to the printer list.

The new printer is displayed in the Printer List window.

			Printer List		 0
8		8-0 1			
Make Default Ad	d Delete Cor	nfigure			
Name				Status	
POSQA_SF_JADE4_N	ewPrinter				
POSQA_SF_JADE4_Pro	cessStore				
V4_CXP5000_10.4.1	8.169				

Using the Choose Spire Over IP Utility to set up an LPR Printer in Macintosh OS 9



**Note:** Before you set up a network printer, make sure that you have installed the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file on your Macintosh client workstation, see *Copying the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD File for Mac OS 9* on page 66.

## Spire Over TCP/IP

The Spire Over TCP/IP application enables you to submit jobs from a Macintosh client workstation using the Spire CXP5000 color server virtual printers over a TCP/IP protocol. This connection provides a significantly higher spooling speed.



**Important:** The TCP/IP settings on your Macintosh must match the Spire CXP5000 color server TCP/IP network settings.

To install this application, you need a Macintosh OS version 9.0 or later, with an installed LaserWriter application version 9.0 or later, or Adobe Photoshop 8.8 or later (available at <u>http://www.adobe.com/support/downloads/main.html</u>). If you do not have a compatible LaserWriter application installed, you can download this application from the Spire CXP5000 color server, **D:\Utilities\Mac utilities** folder.

#### To install the Choose Spire Over IP application:

1. On your Macintosh client workstation, from the **Apple** menu, select **Chooser**.



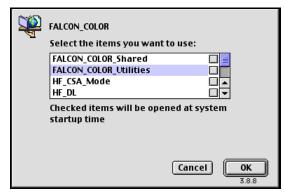
2. Select **AppleShare** and browse the network to the required Spire CXP5000 color server—for example, **Falcon\_Color**—and then click **OK**.

The Login dialog box appears.

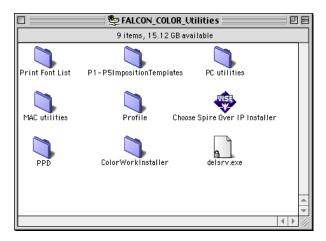
Connect to the file server "FALCON_COLOR" as:
● Guest ○ Registered User
hange Password Cancel Connect 3.8.8

#### 3. Select Guest and click Connect.

The corresponding Spire CXP5000 color server dialog box appears.



- 4. Select the **Utilities** folder and then click **OK**.
- 5. The **Utilities** folder icon appears on your desktop; double-click the icon to open the folder.



- Choose Spire Over IP Installer
- 6. Double-click the Choose Spire Over IP Installer icon.

7. Click Install.

After the installation is complete, a message appears.

8. Click Quit.

The Choose Spire Over IP option is now added to the Apple menu.

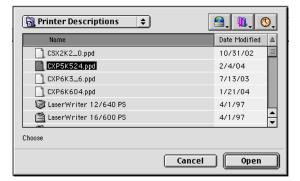


- Choose Spire Over IP ΞE Setup Kind Nam ▶ 🔠 netvision.net.il Neighborhood → 
  → 
  → Local Services Neighborhood 🖶 FALCON\_COLOR Print Server FALCON\_COLOR\_ProcessPrint Print Queue **P**3 FALCON\_COLOR\_ProcessStore Print Queue . FALCON\_COLOR\_SpoolStore Print Queue 4
- 9. To create desktop printers for printing over IP, from the **Apple** menu, select **Choose Spire Over IP**.

- 10. To view the print queues of the Spire CXP5000 color server, doubleclick **Local Services** and then double-click the Spire CXP5000 color server icon—for example, **FALCON\_COLOR**.
- 11. To create a desktop printer for a specific print queue, select the print queue from the list—for example, **FALCON\_COLOR\_Process Print** and then click the **Setup** button.

Choose Spire Over IP
The PostScript Printer Description (PPD) file for this printer is available on the the server. Do you want to download the PPD file from the server, use a local file, or use a generic PPD?
🔾 Download PPD file from server
Select a PPD file on this computer
🔘 Use a generic PPD for this printer
Cancel OK

12. Select Select a PPD file on this computer, and then click OK.



13. Locate the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file that you copied to your computer in step 1, and then click **Open**.



**Note:** The Spire CXP5000 color server uses the following PPD file names, **CXP5K524** for Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press, and **CXP5K204** for Xerox DocuColor 2045 Digital Color Press.

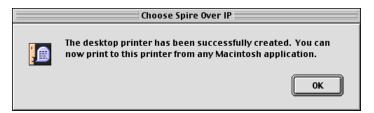
Choose Spire Over IP
What do you want to call this desktop printer?
Falcon_Color_ProcessPrint
Cancel OK

14. You can change the printer name if you want. Otherwise, click **OK**.

The desktop printer is created and configured and the following progress indicator appears.



When the printer is successfully created, the following message appears.



#### 15. Click **OK**.

The printer icon appears on your desktop.



You can now print your jobs using this printer through a TCP/IP protocol.

## **Printing from Linux**

The following procedure describes how to print from Linux to the Spire CXP5000 color server using the command line or by defining a printer using the Linux user interface (in this case Red Hat Linux).



**Note:** You do not need to use the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file when you print from Linux.

## Linux Command Line

- 1. Select **System Tools>Terminal Window** to open a Terminal window.
- 2. If your Linux computer is not configured with DHCP in the network settings, you will need to add the hostname and TCP/IP address of the Spire CXP5000 color server that you want to print. You add the hostname in the **/etc/hosts** file.
- 3. Locate the directory that contains your file(s), and then type the following command:
  # lpr -P <virtual printer name>@<server name>

```
<filename>
For example:
```



# lpr -P OPAL3\_ProcessPrint@opal3 letter.ps
Note: All commands and printer names are case-sensitive. The server name is
the name defined in the /etc/hosts file or the registered name in the DNS server
on your network (DHCP use).

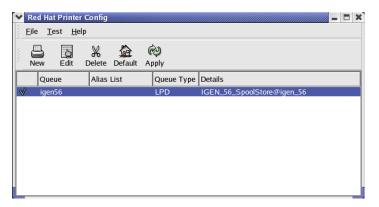
4. Press ENTER.

Your file is printed to the Spire CXP5000 color server.

## Linux User Interface

The following procedure reflects Red Hat Linux version 8.0

1. Select System Settings>Printing.



2. Click **New** to setup a new LPR/LPD printer.

The Add A New Print Queue dialog box appears.

3. Click Forward.

The Set the Print Queue Name and Type dialog box appears.

🗙 Red Hat Printer Config: A	Add a New Print Queue 🖉 🗕 🖿 🗙
Set the Print Q	ueue Name and Type
They must begin with letters	e characters "a-z", "A-Z", "0-9", "-", and "".
Queue Name:	
OPAL3_LPR	
Queue Type	
O Local Printer	LOCAL
Onix Printer	LPD
<ul> <li>Windows Printer</li> </ul>	SMB
O Novell Printer	NCP
<ul> <li>JetDirect Printer</li> </ul>	JETDIRECT
	★ Cancel ★ Back Forward

- 4. In the **Queue Name** box, type a name for the printer that you will be able to identify on your computer—for example, **OPAL3\_LPR**.
- 5. Click Forward.

The Configure a Unix Print Queue dialog box appears.

Y Red Hat Printer Config: Add a New Print Queue	_ = ×
Configure a Unix Print Queu	e
Configure the server and queue of your remote lpd s queue is specified, you will use the default queue on server. Select strict RFC1179 compliance if you are problems connecting to an older lpd server.	the remote
Server: OPAL3	
Queue: OPAL3_ProcessPrint	
Strict RFC1179 Compliance	
🗶 <u>C</u> ancel	ack

- 6. In the **Server** box, type the Spire CXP5000 color server name—for example, **OPAL3**.
- 7. In the **Queue** box, type the exact name of the network printer you wish to print to—for example, **OPAL3\_ProcessPrint.**



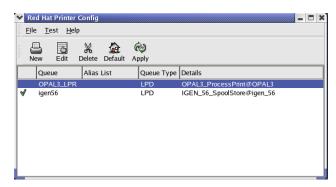
**Note:** To view the exact name of the printer on the Spire CXP5000 color server, select Resource Center>**Virtual Printers**.

- 8. Click Forward.
- 9. In the Select a Print Driver screen, select **PostScript Printer**, and then click **Forward**.

Red Hat Printer Config: Add a New Print Queue	- 🗆 X
Select a Print Driver	
Select a print driver for your printer.	
Printer	
Postscript Printer	
Text Only Printer	
Raw Print Queue	
▷ Alps	
▶ Anitech	
▷ Apollo	
▷ Apple	
▷ Avery	
▷ Brother	
▷ Citoh	
Canon	
🗶 <u>C</u> ancel 🛛 🖨 <u>B</u> ack	orward

The Finish, and Create the New Print Queue screen appears.

- 10. Click Apply.
- 11. In the Red Hat Printer Config dialog box, click Apply.



12. When prompted, click **OK**.

The new LPR/LPD printer is now listed with your other printers on the Linux computer and you can print to the Spire CXP5000 color server.

~	Inform	nation	×
	9	lpd restart succeeded	
		₩ <u>o</u> k	

# Defining a Printer on UNIX Client Workstations

# AIX and UNIX Command Line

## To define an AIX 4.2.1 printer for printing through LPR:

1. On your UNIX workstation—for example, **AIX 4.2.1**—type SMIT and follow the sequence,

## Print Spooling>Add a Print Queue>remote>Standard processing.

2. In **Name of QUEUE to add**, type the name of the print queue to be used on your UNIX client .

Note: Use a logical name to recognize the remote printer.

- 3. In **HOSTNAME of remote server**, type the hostname of the remote server where the printer is defined—for example, **CXP5000**.
- 4. In **Name of QUEUE on remote server**, type the exact name of the print queue defined on the remote server—for example, **ProcessPrint**.



**Note:** Verify that the printer name defined on the remote server contains no more than 20 characters. Unix is case sensitive.

5. Click **OK**.

# Printing from a UNIX Client Workstation

## To print from a UNIX client through LPR:

- Type the following: <lpr><space><-P><space><local UNIX printer name><space><PS file name> For example, to print frog.ps on a printer named ProcessPrint, type: lpr -P ProcessPrint frog.ps.
- Press ENTER.
   The PostScript file is downloaded to the printer. All settings are taken from the remote printer on the Spire CXP5000 color server.



**Note:** Use alphanumeric and underscores for names. Names are case sensitive—for example, ProcessPrint not processprint. UNIX does not require PPD files to print jobs.

# **UNIX** Connectivity

This section describes how to install and configure Microsoft Windows Services for UNIX (SFU) version 3.0 on a workstation running Windows 2000 or Windows XP.

Windows SFU version 3.0 adds UNIX NFS (Network File System) protocol compatibility to a Windows workstation. This compatability enables UNIX platforms to mount the workstation's volume.

## Installing the SFU 3.0 Software

This procedure describes how to install the Microsoft SFU 3.0 software.

#### To install the SFU 3.0 software:

1. Insert the Windows Services for UNIX CD-ROM in the computer's CD-ROM drive.



**Note:** If the installation program does not start automatically when the Windows Services for UNIX compact disc is inserted into the CD-ROM drive, open the CD-ROM drive in Windows Explorer, and then double-click the Setup.exe program.

- 2. In the Windows Services for UNIX Wizard window, click Next.
- 3. Click in the User name box, and type your name.



**Note:** If the name of your organization does not appear in the **Organization** text box, type the name.

- 4. In the **CD Key** boxes, type the product key number that is located on the back of the CD-ROM's case, and then click **Next**.
- 5. Read the End User License Agreement carefully. If you accept the terms of the agreement, click I accept the terms of the License Agreement, and then click Next to continue installation.



**Note:** If you click **I do not accept the License Agreement**, the installation terminates.

6. Click Customized Installation, and then click Next.

7. Click the icon that appears next to each component that you want to install. Under each component, select the items you want to include in the installation.

Select only the following:

- Server for NFS
- Authentication tools for NFS>Server for NFS Authentication
- Authentication tools for NFS>User Name Mapping.

When you have finished specifying all the components to install, click **Next**.

🖥 Microsoft Windows Services for UNIX Maintenance Wizard	<u>-  ×</u>
Selecting Components You can choose the components of Microsoft Windows Services for UNIX that you want to add or remove.	
Click a component to see its description. Click the arrow next to it or press the spar for installation options. Components:	ce bar
Server for NFS     Password Synchronization     Remote Connectivity     Authentication tools for NFS     User Name Mapping     Server for NFS Authentication     Server for PCNFS	▲ 
Description: Allows UNIX clients to access files on this computer.	
< Back Next >	Cancel

8. Click Next.

A dialog box appears stating that low-level **security settings** need changing.

- 9. Click Next.
- 10. In the User Name Mapping dialog box, type the system name of the computer on which you are installing SFU. Then click **Next**.



**Note:** NFS components will not work unless you specify the name of the User Name Mapping server.

- 8
- 11. Click in the **Installation location** text box, and type the full path of the directory where you want to install Windows Services for UNIX. Then click **Next**.

**Note:** The path you specify can contain only alphanumeric characters and the underscore (\_) character.

- 12. Start the Component Services application and configure the **Server for NFS** service that setup disabled for starting-up automatically.
  - a. Click the Windows Start button and select Control Panel.
  - b. Double-click the **Administrative Tools** icon.
  - c. Double-click the **Component Services** icon.
- 13. Restart the computer.



**Note:** After you have installed Services for UNIX 3.0, you can add or remove additional program components whenever you choose by inserting the SFU 3.0 CD-ROM.

## Increasing NFS Performance Using the Windows Registry

The Windows Services for UNIX 3.0 application disables disk write caching in the Windows registry by default (caching=**0**).

When write chaching is enabled, the speed of NFS file write operations is increased. You can expect NFS file write performance to be in the range of 5-7 MB/second.

You can download a special registry file that automatically enables write caching.

To enable write caching automatically in the Windows registry:

Obtain the **sfu\_better\_performance.reg** file from Xerox Support, and then run the file.



**Note:** For detailed information about the Windows Registry, visit Microsoft support at <a href="http://support.microsoft.com/default.aspx?scid=kb:EN-US;256986">http://support.microsoft.com/default.aspx?scid=kb:EN-US;256986</a>.

# Creating a File-name Translation File

Windows Services for Unix 3.0 lets you import a special text file that translates UNIX-specific text characters into characters that are recognized by Windows NTFS.

The most problematic UNIX character that is not recognized by NTFS is the colon character (:). The Helios application uses colon characters to store Macintosh file name descriptions so that UNIX recognizes them. Other UNIX characters that are not residencies by NTFS are the asterisk (\*) and the question-mark (?) characters.

You can obtain the **trans.txt** translation text file from Xerox Support and import it into SFU.

#### To import the translation text file into SFU:

- 1. Save the **trans.txt** file to any location on your PC.
- 2. Click on the Windows **Start** button, and select **Programs>Windows Services for UNIX>Services for UNIX Administartion**. The SFU 3.0 application starts.
- 3. In the navigation pane, select the Server for NFS icon.
- 4. In the File name handling area, select the Translate file names check box.
- 5. Click **Browse**, and navigate to the directory location where the **trans.txt** file is located.
- 6. Click **Open**.
- 7. Click Apply.

The translation file is imported.

# Configuring NFS Server Settings with SFU

The Windows Services for Unix 3.0 application lets you configure the settings required for the Server for NFS.

#### To configure NFS server settings:

1. Click on the Windows Start button, and select Programs>Windows Services for UNIX>Services for UNIX Administration.

The SFU 3.0 application starts.

- 2. In the navigation pane, select the Server for NFS icon.
- 3. In the Server for NFS on local computer pane, select the Server Settings tab.
- 4. Configure the Server for NFS using the same settings that are shown in the figure below:

Action Yew       Yew       Image: Control of NES         Services for NES       Services for NES on local computer       Beload       Accolv         Services for NES       Control for NES       Services for NES performance:         Services for NES       Settings that affect Server for NES performance:       Services for NES performance:         Services for NES       Settings that affect Server for NES performance:       Services for NES performance:         Services for NES       Settings that affect Server for NES performance:       Services for NES performance:         Services for NES       Settings that affect Server for NES performance:       Settings that affect Server for NES performance:         Services for NES       Settings that affect Server for NES performance:       Settings that affect how file names are stored or returned to clients:         Directory cache size:       [128]       KB         Settings that affect how file names are stored or returned to clients:       Case sensitivity         With Tranglate file names       We character translation files:       Copy         Use Copy       Copy       Set on Second	🚡 Services For UNIX Administr	ration	STREET, STREET, ST				X
Services for URDX [local] Services for URDX [local] Concer for NPS on local computer Logono Concer for NPS on local computer Logono Concer for NPS on local computer Logono Server Settings Settings that affect Server for NPS performance: Server options Preable ICP support Preable ICP support Preable ICP support Directory cache size: 128 KB Settings that affect how file names are stored or returned to clients: File name handling Translate file names Use character translation files: CASE Sensitivity Case sensitivity logolups Choose the case you want to return filenames in: Upper Lower Preserve Case cose cose CDPS: Case cose cose CDPS: Cose de case you want to return filenames in: Upper Lower Preserve Coses cose cose CDPS: Cose de case you want to return filenames in: Upper Lower Preserve Coses cose cose CDPS: Cose de case you want to return filenames in: Upper Lower Preserve Coses cose cose CDPS: Cose de case you want to return filenames in: Upper Lower Preserve Coses cose cose CDPS: Cose de case you want to return filenames in: Upper Lower Preserve Coses cose cose CDPS: Cose de case you want to return filenames in: Upper Lower Preserve Coses cose cose CDPS: Cose de case you want to return filenames in: Upper Lower Preserve Coses cose cose CDPS: Cose de case you want to return filenames in: Upper Lower Preserve Coses cose cose CDPS: Cose de case you want to return filenames in: Upper Lower Preserve Coses cose cose CDPS: Cose de case you want to return filenames in: Upper Lower Preserve Coses cose cose CDPS: Cose de cose you want to return filenames in: Upper Lower Preserve Cose cose cose CDPS: Cose de cose you want to return filenames in: Cose de cose you want to return filenames in: Upper Lower Preserve Coses cose cose CDPS: Cose de cose you want to return filenames in: Cose de cose you want to retu	Action Yew						
Use character translation files:       Chose the case you want to return filenames in:         C:\SFU\trans.txt       Upper Lower Preserve case you want to return filenames in:	Action         Yew         ← →         €           Tree	Image: Server for NFS on local computer           Logno         Locing         Clent Groop           Settings that affect Server for NFS performance:         Server options         Server options           Enable ICP Support         Directory cache size:         128 To KB           Settings that affect how file names are stored or reb         File name handling	Authentication  Renew au  Do not re  rened to clients:  Case sensitivit	options	on every: [	Apply	0
Done		Use character translation files: C:\SFUGrans.txt <u>Browse</u> Create files that have names beginning with '1' as hidden files.	Choose the o CDFS: FAT:	upper case	vant to retu Lower case	Preserve case @	
	Done						

- 5. Click Apply.
- 6. In the navigation pane, right-click the **Server for NFS** icon, and select **Stop**.
- 7. In the navigation pane, right-click the **Server for NFS** icon, and select **Start**.

Setting Up Windows SFU for Brisque

## **Configuring Windows User-Name Mapping**

Before you configure user-name mapping in the SFU application, copy the UNIX user name and group name files from Brisque to your Windows workstation via FTP (File Transfer Protocol). You will import these files later into the SFU application to map existing Brisque users and groups to Windows users and groups.

#### To copy Brisque user and group files:

1. Click the Windows Start button and select Run.

The Run dialog box appears.

2. In the Run text box, type cmd and click OK.

A command line prompt window appears.

- 3. At the command line prompt, type ftp <Brisque IP address>, and press ENTER. For example, type ftp 192.9.100.1, and press ENTER.
- 4. At the User prompt, type root, and press ENTER.
- 5. At the Password prompt, type ripro, and press ENTER.
- 6. At the **ftp** prompt, type six command as follows:
  - Type lcd c:\SFU, and press ENTER.
  - Type cd /etc, and press ENTER.
  - Type ascii, and press ENTER.
  - Type get passwd, and press ENTER.
  - Type get group, and press ENTER.
  - Type quit, and press ENTER.

#### To map user-names:

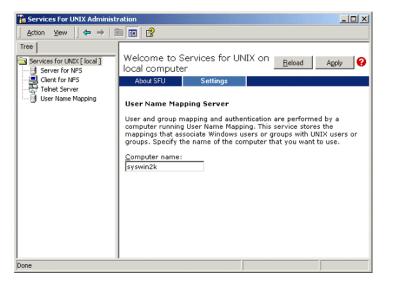
1. Click the Windows Start button, and select Programs>Windows Services for UNIX>Services for UNIX Administration.

The SFU 3.0 application starts.

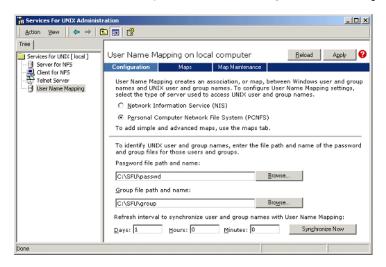
2. In the **Tree** navigation pane, double-click the **Services for UNIX** [local]icon.

The Welcome pane appears.

- 3. Click the **Settings** tab.
- 4. In the **User Name Mapping Server** area, check that the name displayed in the **Computer name** text box is the same as the name of the local Windows system being used.



- 5. In the **Tree** navigation pane, select the **User Name Mapping** icon. The **Configuration tab** options appears in the adjacent pane.
- 6. Select the Personal Computer Network File System (PCNFS) option.



7. In the **Password file path and name** box, click **Browse** and select the password file that you copied from Brisque via FTP. Then click **Open**.

- 8. In the **Group file path and name** text box, click **Browse** and select the group file that you copied from Brisque via FTP. Then click **Open**.
- 9. From the menu bar at the top of the pane, select the **Maps** tab.

The Maps options appear, listing Windows and UNIX users.

10. Click the **Show User Maps** link. The Maps pane lists the Windows and UNIX users. This link changes its name to Hide User Maps.

Action       gew       Image: Strength (USC)       User Name Mapping on local computer       Below       Activ         Image: Server for NFS       Server for NFS       Maps       MapMatAvance       Below       Activ         Image: Server for NFS       Server for NFS       You can create bath simple and advanced maps. When the Windows and UNIX user or group names are not identical select for implemanas. To map one name to serveral other names or when the names are not identical select for names. To map one name to serveral other names or when the names are not identical select for names. To map one name to serveral other names or more to map. Simple maps.         Simple maps       Select the name of the Windows domain that contains the Windows user or group names that you want to maps. (Bick Steply: User Name Mapping creates the maps automatically.         Advanced maps.       To map user names., click Show User Maps. To map group names, click Show Group Maps.         Windows users:       Windows Users:       UID         Windows users:       Windows Users:       UID         Windows user name:       UID       Select the maps in the maps in the maps in the Mapped users list, select the set on maps in the aps in the maps in thema	Services For UNIX Adminis	stration
Services for Utic( loci)       User Name Mapping on local computer       Betod       Actv         Services for Utic( loci)       Generation 200       Negs       Magnet Market       Actv         Services for Utic( loci)       Tothet Service       You can create bath simple and advanced maps. When the Windows and UNIX user or group names are not identical, select Simple maps. To map one name to service atter names or when the names are not identical select the name of the Windows domain that contains the Windows user or group names that you want to maps.         Simple maps       Select the name of the Windows domain that contains the Windows user or group names that you want to map.         Windows domain name:       Windows domain name:         Windows domain name:       Windows Gomain name:         Windows users:       UNIX users:         Windows users:       UNIX user is         Windows user name:       UNIX user is         Windows user name:       UNIX user name:         Addministrator       Select beow, To display simple maps in the Mapped users list, select the test is test is         Vindows user name:       UNIX user name:         Advanced maps are listed below. To display simple maps in the Mapped users list, select the test is test is test is to or UNIX user name:         Advanced maps are listed below. To display simple maps in the Mapped users list, select the test is test is test is to or UNIX user is and and ick Stow is user so must is test is the test is the test is the testow	Action ⊻jew 🛛 🗢 →	
Configuration       Maps       Mg/Md/Advance         Continue (MS)       To create both simple and advanced maps. When the Windows and UNIX user or group names are not identical, select simple maps. To map one name to several other names or when the names are not identical view of the name of the Windows domain that contains the Windows user or group names that you want to maps.         User Name Mapping       Simple maps.         State the name of the Windows domain that contains the Windows user or group names that you want to maps.         Windows domain name:       Windows domain name:         Windows users:       Windows users:         Windows users:       UNIX users:         Windows users:       UNIX users:         Windows user name:       UNIX user name:         Addring toto:       sold         Windows user name:       UNIX user name:         Addring toto:       sold         Windows user name:       UNIX user name:         Addring toto:       sold         Windows user name:       UNIX user name:         Advect maps are listed below. To display simple maps in the Mapped users list, select the doek with the primary. To set a map to be the primary map. select the maps and click Set Primary. <td>Tree</td> <td></td>	Tree	
Concernent of the Mission of the second maps. To map one name to several other names or when the names are not identical select simple maps. To map one name to several other names or when the names are not identical select simple maps.         Simple maps         To rester maps, click kplv, User Name Mapping creates the maps automatically.         Advanced maps         To map user names, click khow User Maps. To map group names, click Show Group Maps.         List Windows Users       List Windows Users:         Windows users:       UNIX users:         Windows user name:       UNIX user name:         Administrator       Guast         Guast       201         itst       Socies         Advanced maps are listed below. To display simple maps in the Mapped users list, select the map to be the primary. To set a map to be the primary maps, select the map and click set Primary. <td></td> <td>User Name Mapping on local computer Beload Apply</td>		User Name Mapping on local computer Beload Apply
User Name Mapping       Identical, select simple maps, the Amplitude maps in the User Mathematical and the Machine Sectore and Sectore	Server for NPS	Configuration Maps Map Maintenance
Salest be a me of the Windows domain that contains the Windows user or group names that you want to map. Windows domain name: Windows domain that contains the Windows user anames, click Show User Maps. To map group names, click Show Group Maps. Mindows domain name: Windows domain name: Windows domain name: Windows users: UNIX user name: user name to be the primary may, select the map and click Set Primary. To set a map to be the primary may, select the map and click Set Primary. To set a map to be the primary may, select the map and click Set Primary. To set a map to be the primary may. Set Primary Mindows User name: 200 UNIX User User Name Name Name Name Name Name Name Name		identical, select Simple maps. To map one name to several other names or when the names are not identical
map. Windows domain name: VSYSWINZK To oreate maps, click Apply. User Name Mapping creates the maps automatically. Advanced maps To map user names, click Show User Maps. To map group names, click Show Group Maps. Lick User Mass Show Group Maps. Lick User Mass Windows domain name: VSYSWINZK Lick Windows Users Windows Users: Windows Users: Windows Users: Windows Users: Windows Users a map. enter user names you want to map, and click Add. Advanced maps are listed below. To display simple maps in the Mapped users list, select the set one maps to be the primary. To set a map to be the primary map. select the map and click Set Primary. Mapped users: Windows User Set Maps and User Set To come to the set a map to be the primary. To set a map to be the primary map. select the map and click Set Primary. Mapped users: Mapped		Simple maps
To create maps, click Apply. User Name Mapping creates the maps automatically. Advanced maps To map user mames, click Show User Maps. To map group names, click Show Group Maps. <u>Hick User Maps</u> <u>Windows domain name:</u> <u>Windows domain name:</u> <u>Windows Users:</u> <u>UNIX users:</u> <u>UNIX users:</u> <u>UNIX users:</u> <u>UNIX users:</u> <u>UNIX users:</u> <u>UNIX users:</u> <u>UNIX users:</u> <u>UNIX user name:</u> <u>Adviministrator</u> <u>Goast</u> <u>t test</u> <u>t test</u> <u>t test</u> <u>t test</u> <u>d c maps</u> enter user names you want to maps in the Mapped users list, select the <u>check tox blew. If multiple Mindows user sare mapped to ene UNIX user sits, select the <u>check tox blew. If multiple Mindows user sare mapped to ene UNIX user sits, select the <u>check tox blew. If multiple Mindows user are maps to the Mapped users:</u> <u>Windows User:</u> <u>Mapped users:</u> <u>Mapped users:</u></u></u>		
Advanced maps         To map user names, click Show User Maps. To map group names, click Show Group Maps.         Tick User Maps.         Windows domain name:         Windows domain name:         Windows users         Windows users         Guest         root         down user name:         Windows user name:         Addministrator         To create a map, enter user names you want to map, and click Add.         Advanced maps are listed below. To display simple maps in the Mapped users list, select the onesh box blow. If multiple Windows user names are mapped to one UMIX user name, you mult select one map to be the primary. To set a map to be the primary map, select the map and click Set Primary.         Mapped users:       Set Primary         Windows User       UMIX Dom UNIX User       Set Primary         Mapped users:       Set Primary       Set Primary         Mapped users:       Set Primary       Set Primary         Mapped users:       Windows User       Mapped users:         Mapped users:       Set Primary       Set Primary		Windows domain name: \\SYSWIN2K -
To map user names, click Show User Maps. To map group names, click Show Group Maps. Mide User Brow Group Maps. Windows Users: Windows Users: Windows User name: Windows User name: Windows User name: Administrator To create a map, chter user names you want to map, and click Add. Advanced maps are listed below. To display simple maps in the Mapped users list, select the check box below. It multiple Windows user names are mapped to user list. Advanced maps are listed below. To display simple maps in the Mapped users list, select the check box below. It multiple Windows user names to be the primary map, select the maps and click Selfer Mindows User: Mapped users: Windows User It windows User It windows User It maps to the Mapped user list, select the discle Selfer It windows User It windows User It maps to the Mapped user list, select the selfer It windows User It windows User It maps in the Mapped user list, select the selfer It windows User It w		To create maps, click Apply. User Name Mapping creates the maps automatically.
Hick User Mess       Show Ginxo Mess         Windows domain name:		
NSYSMIN2K       Itel UNIX Users       Itel UNIX Users         Windows users:       UNIX users:       UNIX users:         Windows Users       UNIX users:       Including users		
List Windows Users:     List Windows Users:       Windows users:     URIX users:       Windows Users:     URIX Users:       Unix Users:     URIX users:       Unix Users:     URIX users:       Windows user name:     URIX user name:       Addiministrator     0       Sectex     200       Windows user name:     URIX user name:       Addiministrator     Sectex       To create a map, enter user names you want to map, and click Add.     Add       Advanced maps are listed beings are mapsed to one UMIX user name; so unus select one map to be the primary. To set a map to be the primary map, select the map and click Set Primary.     Sectex       Mapped users:     Vindows User     Sectex       Vindows User     UNIX Dom., UNIX User     Sectex       Mapped users:     Sectex     200       Vindows User     Sectex     200		Windows domain name:
Windows users:       URIX users:         Windows Users       UD         Administrator       nobody         Guest       429         root       5         sorroot       0         sorroot       0         windows user name:       URIX user name:         Administrator       0         goroot       0         sorroot       0         windows user name:       Sorroot         Advanced maps are listed below. If multiple Windows user names are mapped to one UNIX user name, solet the map and click S&Primary.         Set Primary.       Set Primary         Mapped users:       Windows User         Windows User		\\SYSWIN2K ▼
Windows Users       UID            Administrator         Gostst         robody         d 29         nucop         Softex         robody         d 29		List Windows Users List UNIX Users
		Windows users: UNIX users:
Administrator       nucop       6       prod         Guest       204       204       prod         root       0       0       0         test       0       0       0       0         Windows user name:       UNIX user name:       200       0       0         Administrator       Scitex       0       0       0       0         To create a map, enter user names you want to map, and click Add.       Add       Add         Advanced maps are listed below, Ta display simple maps in the Mapped users list, select the oheck box below. If multiple Windows user names are mapped to one UNIX user name, you must select one map to be the primary. To set a map to be the primary map, select the map and click Set Primary.       Mapped users:       Set Primary         Windows User       UNIX Dem       UNIX User       UNIX Dem       Set Primary         NSYSWINZKAdministrator       PCNFS       scitex       200       Mapped         More dgarn       More dgarn       More dgarn       More dgarn		
Guest reot reot test       pradmin control       204 control         Windows user name:       UNIX user name:         Administrator       scilex         Administrator       scilex         Advanced maps are listed below. To display simple maps in the Mapped users list, select the oheck box below. If multiple Windows user names are mapped to one UNIX user name, solution the the primary map, select the map and click set Primary.         Mapped users:       Windows User         Windows User       UNIX Dom         UNIX User       Unit User         Windows User       UNIX Dom         UNIX StrSWIN2KVAdministrator       PCNFS         Scifex       200         Mover up       Regove         Mover up       Mover up		
test     screat     0       Windows user name:     URIX user name:     Screat       Vindows user name:     URIX user name:     Screat       Administrator     Screat     Screat       To create a map, enter user names you want to map, and click Add.     Add       Advance a map are listed below. To wisplay simple maps in the Mapped users list, select the check box helow. If multiple Windows user names are mapped to ene UNIX user name, you must select one map to be the primary. To set a map to be the primary map, select the map and click Scr Primary.       Mapped users:     Windows User       Windows User     UNIX Dem       Windows User     UNIX Dem       Windows User     Out       Windows User     UNIX Dem       Windows User     Windows user names       Windows User     UNIX Dem       Windows User     Out       Windows User     Out       Windows User     Out       Windows User     Out       Windows User     UNIX Dem       UNIX Variante     Scr Primary       Regove     Move com		Guest prnadmin 204
Setex     200       Windows user name:     Administrator       Administrator     Scillar       To create a map, enter user names you want to map, and click Add.     Add       Advanced maps are listed below. To display simple maps in the Mapped users list, select the check box below. If multiple Windows user names are mapped to one UNIX user name, you must select one map to be the primary. To set a map to be the primary map, select the map and click Set Primary.       Mapped users:     Windows User       Windows User     UNIX Dom       Windows User     UNIX Dom       Windows User     UNIX Dom       Windows User     UNIX Dom       Windows User     Windows user       Windows User     UNIX Dom       Windows User     UNIX Dom       Windows User     Wore to map.       Mover down     Mover down		
Administrator     scitex.       To create a map, enter user names you want to map, and click Add.     Add       Advanced maps are listed below. If multiple Windows user names are mapped to one UNIX user name, you must select one map to be the primary. To set a map to be the primary map, select the map and click Set Primary.     Mapped users:       Windows User     UNIX Dem     UNIX User     Usid       Windows User     UNIX Dem     UNIX User     Set Primary.       Begore     Yor User     Move dom     Move dom		
To create a map, enter user names you want to map, and click Add. Add Advanced maps are listed below. To display simple maps in the Mapped users list, select the check box holow. If multiple Windows user names are mapped to one UMX user name, you must select one map to be the primary. To set a map to be the primary map, select the map and click Set Primary. Mapped users: Windows User UNIX Dem UNIX User Urid Prim Set Primary. NSYSWIN2K/Administrator PCNFS softex 200 * Move user		Windows user name: UNIX user name:
Advanced maps are listed below. To disalay simple maps in the Mapped users list, select the shalab ban taken. If multiple Mindow user names are mapped to one UNIX user name, you must select one map. Is be the primary. To set a map to be the primary map, select the map and click Set Primary. Mapped users:           Windows User         UNIX Dom         UNIX User         Uid         Prim           Windows User         UNIX Dom         UNIX User         Uid         Prim         Set Primary.		Administrator
check box below. If multiple Windows user names are mapped to one UNIX user name, you must select one map to be the primary. To set a map to be the primary map, select the map and click Set Primary. Mapped users: Windows User UNIX Dem UNIX User Usid Prim Windows User UNIX Dem UNIX User Usid Prim Set Primary. Begove Move Up Move Up		To create a map, enter user names you want to map, and click Add.
Windows User         UNIX Dom         UIIX User         Uid         Prim         Strt Primary.           \\\SYSWIN2K\Administrator         PCNFS         softex         200         *         Regione           More up         More up         More up         More up         More up		check box below. If multiple Windows user names are mapped to one UNIX user name, you must select one map to be the primary. To set a map to be the primary map, select the map and click
ALSYSWIN2KVAdministrator PCNFS softex 200 * Regione Regione Move up Move up		Mapped users:
VSYSWIN2KVAdministrator PCNFS softex 200 * Regione Move up Move up		
Move dgen		\\SYSWIN2K\Administrator PCNFS scitex 200 *
, Display simple maps in Mapped users list		
		Display simple maps in Mapped users list
Done	1.c.s	

- 11. Click in the Windows users list, and select Administrator.
- 12. Click in the **UNIX users** list, and select **scitex**.
- 13. Click **Add**.

A dialog box appears.

14. Click **OK**.

The mapping appears in the Mapped users list area. A message appears: Are you sure you want to set advanced mapping for this account?

- 15. Click Yes.
- 16. Click the **Show Group Maps** link. This link changes its name to **Hide Group Maps**. The Maps pane lists the Windows and UNIX groups.
- 17. Click Apply.

To Services For UNIX Administ	ration	<u>_ 0 ×</u>
Action ⊻lew		
Tree		
Services for UND( [ local ]	User Name Mapping on local computer	Reload Apply
Server for NPS     Client for NPS	Configuration Maps Map Maintenance	
Client for NPS Telnet Server	You can create both simple and advanced maps. When the Windows and UNIX use identical, select Simple maps. To map one name to several other names or when t use Advanced maps.	
	Simple maps	
	Select the name of the Windows domain that contains the Windows user or grou map.	p names that you want to
	Windows domain name: WSYSWIN2K	w.
	To create maps, click Apply. User Name Mapping creates the maps automatical	γ.
	Advanced maps	
	To map user names, click Show User Maps. To map group names, click Show Gi <u>Show User Maps</u> <u>Hide Group Maps</u> Windows domain name:	roup Maps.
	NSYSWIN2K	
		List UNIX Groups
		ret nivez Groote
	Windows groups: UNIX groups:	
	<ur> <li><unmapped></unmapped></li> <li>Administrators</li> <li>perf</li> <li>printq</li> </ur>	SID  20 9 204 1
	Power Users security 7	200
		21 💌
	Windows group name: UNIX group name:	
	Administrators	
	To create a map, enter group names you want to map, and click Add.	Add
	Advanced maps are listed below. To display simple maps in the Mapped users I select the check box below. If multiple Windows group names are mapped to o UNIX group name, you must select one map to be the primary. To set a map be the primary map, select the map and click Set Primary.	ine
	Mapped groups:	
	Windows Group         UNIX Dom         UNIX Group         Gid         Prim           \\SYSWIN2K\Administrat         PCNFS         softex         200         *	Set Rimage Remove
		Move up. Move dovg
	Display simple maps in Mapped groups list	
Done	,	
le er er	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	1

- 18. Click in the Windows group list area, and select Administrators.
- 19. Click in the UNIX groups list area, and select scitex.
- 20. Click Add. A dialog box appears.
- 21. Click **OK**.
  - The mapping appears in the Mapped groups list area.
- 22. Click Apply.

### Sharing an NFS Folder or Entire NFS Volume

Before Brisque can mount individual Windows 2000 folders or the entire Windows 2000 volume, the desired folders or entire volume must be shared as an NFS volume.

#### To share an NFS folder or entire NFS volume:

- 1. Start Windows Explorer or my My Computer.
- 2. Right-click the desired folder or volume and select **Properties**. Or:

Right-click the icon that represents the disk's volume and select **Properties**.

The NFS Share Properties dialog box appears.

3. Select the **NFS Sharing** tab.

NFS Share Properties	? ×
General NFS Sharing Web Sharing Sharing Security	
You can share this folder among other users on your network. enable sharing for this folder, click Share this folder.	То
C Do not share this folder	
Share name: NFS_Share	
Encoding: ANSI	
Allow anonymous access	
Anonymous UID: 200	
Anonymous <u>G</u> ID: 200	
To set permissions for how users access this folder over the network, click Permissions	ן נ
OK Cancel App	lly –

4. Select the Share this folder option.

**Note:** You can either share the entire drive or you can share a single folder.

- 5. Select the Allow anonymous access check box.
- 6. Click in the Anonymous UID text box, and type 200.
- 7. Click in the Anonymous GID text box, and type 200.

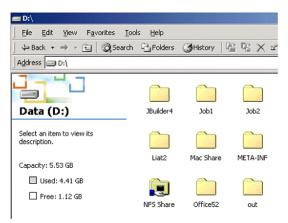
#### 8. Click the **Permissions** button.

The NFS Share Permissions dialog box appears.

NFS Share Permis	sions			<u>? ×</u>
NFS Share Path:	D:\NFS Share			
<u>N</u> ame:				
ALL MACHINES	Read-Write	ANS	I Root Acces	s Allowed
				Bemove
Type of access:	Read-Write	-	Allow root access	
Encoding:	ANSI	•		
			<u> </u>	Cancel

- 9. Click the **Type of access** list box, and select **Read-Write**.
- 10. Select the **Allow root access** check box.
- 11. Click **OK**.

The shared folder appears in the Windows Explorer or My Computer window with a distinctive icon.



# Checking that NFS Is Started and Will Run Automatically at Startup

1. From the Windows desktop, right-click the **My Computer** icon and select **Manage**.

The Computer Management application window appears.

- 2. In the navigation pane, select the Services and Applications icon.
- 3. Select the **Services** icon.

A list of services that are currently running is displayed in the adjacent pane.

4. From the list of services, select the **Server for NFS** icon. If the **Server for NFS** service is listed, the service is running.

🔜 Computer Management						_ 🗆 🗵
Action ⊻iew   ⇐ ⇒   🔂 🔢	2° 2 🖳 🙎 🕨	III III III:				
Tree	Name 🛆	Description	Status	Startup Type	Log On As	*
Computer Managemerk (Local)  System Tools  System Tools  System tools  System tools  System tools  System tools  Device Managemerk  Shared Folders  Device Managemerk  Device Managemerk  Disk Nonagemerk  Disk N	Remote Registry Se Removable Storage Removable Storage Removable Storage Security Accounts Server Server for 145 Server Korth Sanat Card Heber System Event Korth System Event Korth TCP/ID Net5105 Hel TCP/ID Net5105 Hel System Event Korth Storage Storage TCP/ID Net5105 Hel System Event Korth System Korth Korth System Korth Korth Korth System Korth Korth Korth System Korth K	Allows rem Manages r Offers rout Enables st Stores sec Provides st Provides s Provides s Enables a Enables a Enables a Enables a r Manages a Starts and Starts and Task sched Instals, re Provides s Starts end Provides s	Started	Automatic Automatic Disabled Automatic Automatic Automatic Automatic Automatic Automatic Automatic Automatic Automatic Automatic Automatic Manual Automatic Manual Automatic Manual Automatic Manual Automatic Manual Automatic	LocalSystem LocalSystem	



**Note:** To start or stop the service or change the service's settings, double-click anywhere in the **Server for NFS** row.

## Brisque Workstation Installation and Configuration Procedures

The following procedures describe the installation and configuration procedures that are necessary to enable Brisque to mount and use a Windows 2000 volume.

#### Adding the Windows System as a Brisque Host

This procedure describes how you add the Windows 2000 computer as a Brisque host by editing the /etc/hosts file.

#### To add the Windows system as a Brisque host:

1. From the Brisque Launch Pad, open the **Services** panel, and double click the **Terminal** icon.

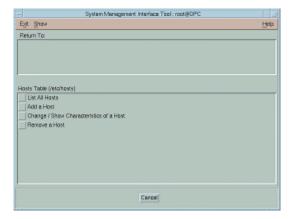
The Password dialog box is displayed.

- 2. Click in the User text box, and type root.
- 3. Click in the Password text box, and type ripro.
- 4. Click **OK**.

A terminal window appears.

5. At the command line prompt, type smit hosts.

The System Management Interface Tool dialog box appears.



6. Select Add a Host.

The Add a Host Name dialog box appears.

F	Add a Host Name : root@rdev5			
	* INTERNET ADDRESS (dotted decimal)	10.4.27.240]		
	* HOST NAME	syswin2k		
	ALIAS(ES) (if any - separated by blank space)	Ĭ		
	COMMENT (if any - for the host entry)	NT		
	OK Command Reset Cancel ?			
-				

- 7. Click in the **INTERNET ADDRESS (dotted decimal)** text box, and type the IP address of the Windows 2000 workstation.
- 8. Click in the **HOST NAME** text box, and type the host name of the Windows 2000 workstation.
- 9. Click in the **COMMENT** text box, and type NT.
- 10. Click **OK**.
- 11. From the **Exit** menu, click **Exit**.

#### Mounting the Windows NFS Volume

This procedure describes how you mount the Windows 2000 volume on Brisque.

#### To mount the Windows NFS volume:

- From the Brisque Launch Pad, open the File Manager panel and double-click the MountPro icon. The Devices & Remote Stations dialog box appears, and lists any volumes that are already mounted on Brisque.
- 2. Click the **Mount** button.

Station Type:	NT Server 📃	
Remote Station:	syswin2k	List
Volume:	<b>/</b> Test	List
Logical Name:	syswin2k.1.0	
Permission:	Read/Write	

The Mount dialog box appears.

3. From the Station Type list box, select NT Server.



**Note:** This step is only required if you are running Brisque version 3.x and Brisque version 4.0. Brisqueversion 4.1 automatically inserts the station type, using the information configured in the **/etc/hosts** file.

4. Click in the **Remote Station** text box and type the host name of the Windows 2000 workstation to mount.

Or:

Click **List** and select the desired host name of the workstation to mount.

5. Click in the **Volume** text box, and type the name of the Windows 2000 volume to mount.

Or:

Click List and select the desired volume to mount.



**Note:** If you are running Brisque version 3.x or Brisque version 4.0, the volume is listed with the syntax **host.x.y**, which is the same naming convention used by Windows. For example, syswin2k.1.0. If you are running Brisque version 4.1, the volume is listed using the syntax **volume.x.y**. For example, test.1.0.

- 6. From the **Permission** list, select **Read/Write**.
- 7. Click **OK**.

# Sending a Sample Job, Page or File to the Windows NFS Volume

This procedure describes how to send a sample job, page or file to the mounted Windows 2000 NFS volume. If you complete this procedure successfully, this confirms that the Windows NFS volume is mounted correctly.

1. From the Brisque File Manager, right click on Brisque job, page or file, and select **Send**.

🚬 Send Jo	Send Job	
Destination:	jsyswin2k	List
Volume:	syswin2k.1.0	List
Path:	syswin2k.1.0	Selection
Send Param Data Files: Overwrite Remove o	Copy ONOve	
ок		Cance

The Send Job dialog box appears.

 Click in the **Destination** text box and type the host name of the Windows 2000 workstation. Or:

Click List and select the host name of the workstation.

3. Click in the **Volume** text box and type the name of the Windows 2000 volume.

Or:

Click List and select the volume name of the workstation

4. Click in the **Path** text box and type the path name of the Windows 2000 folder or volume.

Or:

Click List and select the folder or volume name.



**Note:** In Brisque version 4.1, there is an option named **Do not send .srsc directory**. The .srsc directory is required if you are running Helios, and is also required if you intend to copy the files you sent from the Windows 2000 workstation.

# Configuring and Setting up NDS

This section describes how to configure the connection between a Novell Directory Services (NDS) Server and the Spire CXP5000 color server, in a Novell working environment.



**Important:** The Novell client should also be installed in the Spire CXP5000 color server since it is not installed by default.

#### To configure this connection:



**Note:** The following procedures should be performed on a Windows client workstation running the Novell Client, and configured by the Novell Administrator to access the NWAdmin program.

- 1. Create the NDS Print Server "nwprintserver" in the NDS.
- 2. Create an NDS Printer object in the NDS.
- Create all print queues using the following format,<hostname\_VirtualPrinterName> in the NDS.
- 4. Verify the connection information.
- Configure the IPX Printing parameters: Tree and Context, using the Spire CXP5000 color server Settings window (Network Setup/IPX Printing) in the Spire CXP5000 color server.
- 6. Install the printer drivers on a Novell Client.

#### To perform these procedures, you need:

- Administrative permissions assigned by the Novell administrator
- The user name and password for access to the NDS Server
- An account in the appropriate NDS Tree and Context with permissions to create objects
- The full Context (location in the NDS Tree) where you will be creating the Print Server, Printer and Print Queues
- Background and know-how of NDS Server

# Defining NDS Printer Queues in the NDS Tree

# Using the Novell NetWare Administrator Application

Perform the following procedures to create the Print Server, Printer and Print Queues, using the NetWare Admin application:

1. Define the NDS Print Server, Printer, and Print Queue in the NDS Tree,



For more information about defining NDS printers, see *To define an NDS print server*: on page 138, *To define an NDS printer*: on page 139, and *To define the NDS print queues*: on page 140.

2. Assign the printer to the Print Server and the Print Queues to the printer.



For more information about assigning print servers and print queues, see *To* assign a printer name to nwprintserver print server: on page 143, and *To* assign a print queue to the printer: on page 145.

3. Check the print layout to verify the connections and perform a test print.



For more information about verifying NDS connections, see *To verify the new NDS layout:* on page 147.

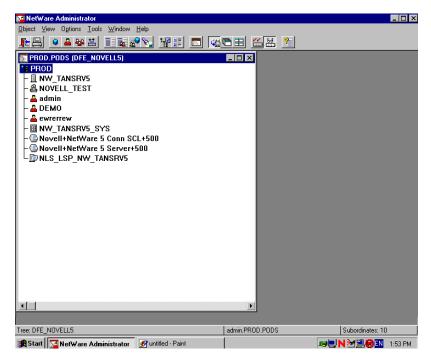


**Important:** Perform these procedures in the specified order.

#### To open the Netware Administrator Application:

 Open the Netware Administrator Application (provided by your Novell Administrator).

The NetWare Administrator window appears and displays the NDS window. The following example shows the existing Trees, Queues and other Novell connections.



#### To define an NDS print server:



**Note:** Before performing the following procedure, check the Novell Server window and if the **nwprintserver** already exists, proceed to the next procedure *To define an NDS printer:* on page 139.

- 1. From the NDS window, select the required Context.
- 2. From the **Object** menu, select **Create**.

The New Object dialog box appears.

New Object	×
Parent:	ОК
PROD	
	Cancel
Class of new object:	Context
NDPS Manager	
🕰 NDPS Printer	Help
A Organizational Role	
🔓 Organizational Unit	
tige organizational on t	
🚵 Print Server (Non NDPS)	
🖶 Printer (Non NDPS)	

- 3. In the Class of new object list, select Print Server.

**Note:** In Novell NDS version 5.0 and later, the words **Non NDPS** also appear.

4. Click **OK**.

The Create Print Server dialog box appears.

Create Print Server	×
Print Server <u>n</u> ame:	<u>C</u> reate
nwprintserver	Cancel
Define additional properties	
Create another Print Server	<u>H</u> elp

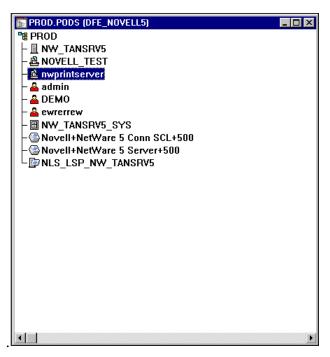
5. In the Print Server name box, type nuprintserver.

### Notes:

- It is important that you only use this server name, in lower case.
- Do not define a password for the Print Server.

6. Click Create.

The NDS nwprintserver printer is created and appears in the NDS window.



#### To define an NDS printer:

1. From the **Object** menu, select **Create**.

The New Object dialog box appears.

New Object	×
Parent: PBOD	OK
	Cancel
Class of new object:	Context
📃 NetWare Server	
🔒 Organizational Role	<u>H</u> elp
📲 Organizational Unit	
🟥 Print Queue	
🙇 Print Server (Non NDPS)	
🚊 Printer (Non NDPS)	
E Profile	
😽 SLP Directory Agent	<b>•</b>

#### 2. From the Class of new object list, select Printer.

**Note:** In Novell version 5.0 NDS and later, the words **Non NDPS** also appear.

#### 3. Click **OK**.

The Create Printer dialog box appears.

Create Printer	×
Printer <u>n</u> ame:	<u>C</u> reate
Spire_Printer	Cancel
<u>D</u> efine additional properties Create <u>a</u> nother Printer	<u>H</u> elp

- 4. In the **Printer name** box, type any printer name— for example, **Spire\_Printer**.
- 5. Click Create.

The printer name is added to the NDS window.

#### To define the NDS print queues:



# Notes:

- Both <hostname\_ProcessPrint> and <hostname\_ProcessStore> queues should be defined.
- Prior to performing this procedure, verify that in the Spire CXP5000 color server, both network printers <hostname\_ProcessPrint> and <hostname\_ProcessStore> are present.
- Both virtual printers <hostname\_ProcessPrint> and <hostname\_ProcessStore> should not be deleted from the Spire CXP5000 color server.
- 1. From the **Object** menu, select **Create**.

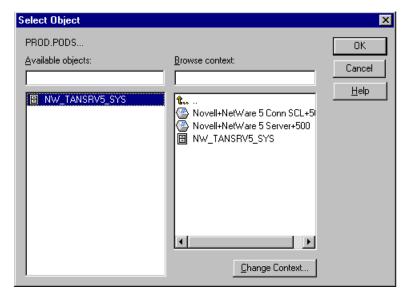
New Object	×
Parent: PROD	OK Cancel
<u>Class of new object:</u>	
🕰 NDPS Printer	Context
🔲 NetWare Server	Help
🐥 Organizational Role	
📲 Organizational Unit	
📇 Print Queue	
A Print Server (Non NDPS)	
Printer (Non NDPS)	
E Profile	<b>•</b>

The New Object dialog box appears.

- 2. In the Class Of New Object list, select Print Queue.
- 3. Click **OK**.

Create Print Queue	×
Djrectory Service Queue	Create
$\bigcirc$ <u>R</u> eference a bindery queue	Cancel
Print Queue <u>n</u> ame:	
Spire7_ProcessPrint	<u>H</u> elp
Print Queue ⊻olume:	
<u><u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u></u></u>	
Define additional properties	
Create another Print Queue	

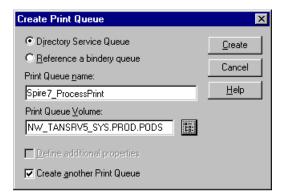
- 4. Verify that **Directory Service Queue** is selected.
- In the Print Queue name box, type the exact (case sensitive) virtual printer name: <hostname\_ProcessPrint>—for example— Spire7\_ProcessPrint.
- 6. Select the **Create another Print Queue** check box.



#### 7. Click the **Print Queue Volume** icon.

- 8. Select any existing volume.
- 9. Click **OK**.

The print queue volume name appears in the **Print Queue Volume** box.



10. Click Create.

The print queue is now added to the NDS window along with the nwprintserver and the printer name (Spire\_Printer).



**Note:** Notice that the Create Print Queue dialog box reappears so that you can define the second print queue.

ኬ

- 11. In the Create Print Queue dialog box, verify that **Directory Service queue** is selected.
- 12. Clear the **Create another Print Queue** check box.
- In the Print Queue name box, type the exact (case sensitive) second virtual printer name: <hostname\_ProcessStore>—for example— Spire7\_ProcessStore.
- 14. Click the **Print Queue Volume** icon.

The Select Object dialog box appears.

- 15. Select any existing volume.
- 16. Click **OK**.

The print queue volume name appears in the **Print Queue Volume** box.

17. Click Create.

Both queues now appear in the NDS window.



To assign a printer name to nwprintserver print server:

1. In the NDS window, double-click **nwprintserver**.

The Print Server dialog box appears.

📴 Print Server (Non NDPS) : nwprintserver 🛛 🗙 🔀			
Assignments	Identification		
Printers:			
Printer	Assignments		
	Users		
	Operator		
	Auditing Log		
	Security Equal To Me		
	Print Layout (Non NDPS)		
Add Delete Erinter Number			
OK Cancel Page Options Help			

2. Click Assignments to open the Assignments tab.

3. Click Add.

The Select Object dialog box appears.

Select Object		×
Select Object PROD.PODS Available objects:	Browse context: the main of the second sec	OK Cancel <u>H</u> elp
	✓ ►	

4. From the printers, select the printer name you have defined—for example, **Spire\_Printer**—and then click **OK**.

Print Server (Non NDPS) : nwprintserver			
Assignments	Identification		
Printer Number Spire_Printer.PROD.PODS 0	Assignments		
<u>opno mici, rico, coo</u>	Users		
	Operator		
	Auditing Log		
	Security Equal To Me		
	Print Layout (Non NDPS)		
Add Delete Printer Number			
OK Cancel Page Options Help			

The printer appears in the **Printers** list.

5. Click **OK**.

# To assign a print queue to the printer:

1. In the NDS window, double-click the printer name you have defined—for example, **Spire\_Printer**.

The Printer dialog box appears.

📴 Printer (Non NDPS) : CSX_Printer	×
Assignments	<u> </u>
Print server:	Identification
nwprintserver.PR0D.P0DS	Assignments
Print gueues:	
Queue Priority	Configuration
	Notification
	Features
	Security Equal To Me
Add Delete Priority: 1	See Also
De <u>f</u> ault print queue:	
CK Cancel Page Options Help	

2. Click Assignments to open the Assignments tab.

3. Click Add.

The Select Object dialog box appears.

Select Object		×
Select Object PROD.PODS Available objects:	Browse context: the second s	Cancel

4. Select the queue name <hostname\_ProcessStore> you have defined, and click **OK**.

5. Click **Add** and select <hostname\_ProcessPrint>.

Both printer queues now appear in the **Print queues** list.

📴 Printer (Non NDPS) : CSX_Printer	×
Assignments	
Print server:	Identification
nwprintserver.PROD.PODS	Assignments
Print gueues:	
Queue	Configuration
Spire_ProcessPrint PROD. PODS 1 Spire_ProcessStore.PROD.PODS 1	Notification
	Features
	Security Equal To Me
Add Delete Priority: 1	See Also
De <u>f</u> ault print queue:	
Spire_ProcessStore.PROD.PODS	
OK Cancel Page Options Help	

6. Click **OK**.

## To verify the new NDS layout:

1. In the NDS window, double-click **nwprintserver**.

The Print Server dialog box appears.

2. Select the **Print Layout** tab.

🔜 Print Server (Non NDPS) : nwprintserver	x
Print Layout (Non NDPS)	Identification
함, nwprintserver ▲ Spire_Printer │ ☱ Spire7_ProcessPrint	Assignments
Spire7_ProcessStore	Users
	Operator
	Auditing Log
	Security Equal To Me
	Print Layout (Non NDPS)
Update Status	
OK Cancel Page Options Help	

- 3. Verify that the nwprintserver server, the printer, and queues are displayed as shown in the above example.
- 4. Click Cancel.

# Using the NDS PConsole

The Spire CXP5000 color server virtual printers can be defined as NDS printer queues at the NDS Server, using the NDS PConsole. This procedure includes the following stages:

- In the Spire CXP5000 color server, verify that the two virtual printers <hostname\_ProcessPrint> and <hostname\_ProcessStore> are present.
- 2. In the NDS PConsole:
  - Create the Novell NDS Print Server "nwprintserver".

#### Notes:

- It is important to use only this server name, in lower case.
- In any case, do not define a password for the Print Server.

- Create the NDS printer object.
- Create the NDS print queues <hostname\_ProcessPrint> and <hostname\_ProcessStore>.
- 3. In the Spire CXP5000 color server:
  - Configure the IPX Printing parameters: Tree and Context (the exact tree name and the full context path name) in the Spire CXP5000 color server Settings window, see *Configuring IPX Printing* on page 149.
  - Restart the Spire CXP5000 color server application.
- 4. Install the Novell Printer Queue on the Novell Client.

# **Configuring IPX Printing**



**Note:** You do not need to define the context and tree if they were defined in the Novell configuration process.

#### To setup the Spire CXP5000 color server IPX parameter:

1. From the **Tools** menu, select **Settings**.

The Settings window appears.

Network Setup         Context:         Change Settings           Remote Tools Setup         Context:         Change Settings           Security         TCP/IP         Setup	settings			
System Disks Configuration Backup IP Address 10.4.18.169 Change Settings Preferences Subnet Mask 255.255.254.0 Localization Default Gateway 10.4.18.1 Pre-RIP Preview General Defaults Preferred DNS Server: 10.4.2.12 Print Gueue Manager Alternate DNS Server: 10.4.58.11 Color Apple Talk Setup	Administration Server Setup Network Setup	Tree:		Change Settings Change Settings
General Defaults         Preferred DNS Server:         10.4.2.12           Print Queue Manager         Alternate DNS Server:         10.4.58.11           Color         Apple Talk Setup	System Disks Configuration Backup Preferences Localization	IP Address Subnet Mask	255.255.254.0	Change Settings
the System will appear in zone.	General Defaults Print Queue Manager Color Messages	Alternate DNS Server: Apple Talk Setup	10.4.58.11	Change Calling
	view Configuration	The System will appear in zo	ne:	Change Settings
		]	Save	Cancel

2. Under Administration, select Network Setup.

3. In the **IPX Printing** area, click **Change Settings** next to the **Tree** parameter.

<del>;</del>	PX Print	ing				×
	Select	Novell Directory Ser	vices			
	¥	Tree			Browse	
	먣	Context			Browse	
	围	NwLink IPX/SPX	Transport		Properties	
				OK.	Cancel	]

- 4. Type the exact **Tree** parameter and the full containers path of the **Context** parameter, in their respective boxes. You can also click **Browse** and browse to the required **Tree** and **Path**.
- 5. Click **OK**.
- 6. Restart the Spire CXP5000 color server application.

# Installing the Printer Drivers on a Novell Client Using the Adobe PS Application

- 1. Use the Adobe PostScript application with the Spire CXP5000 color server PPD file (provided in the Spire CXP5000 color server, **Utility** folder).
- 2. In the Adobe PostScript Wizard, verify that you have selected the Novell printer queue from the NetWare Network, and not the Spire CXP5000 color server virtual printers. See the following example.

Browse for Network Printer	×
NetWare Network NetWare Servers NW_TANSRV5 SFIDA5_PROCESSSTORE SFIDA5_PROCESSPRINT STIL_NFS Novell Directory Services Microsoft Windows Network	
	OK Cancel

The following screen shows the Printers window after installing the Novell printer queue.

**Note:** The Novell printer has the NDS name as an extension—for example, **NW\_TANSRV5**.

<mark>i∋ Printers</mark> File Edit View Help	
☑ Printers ■ L L B B C > X B D D D D D D D D D D D D D D D D D D	<b></b>
Add Printer	
SFIDA5_ProcessStore on NW_TANSRV5	
🍘 Acrobat Distiller	
Acrobat PDFWriter	
🐳 SFIDA5_NewPrinter	
SFIDA5_ProcessStore	
🗑 SFIDA5_ProcessPrint	
SFIDA5_SpoolStore	

3. Perform a test print using the installed Novell NetWare printer.

This page is intentionally left blank.

# 4

# **Basic Workflows**

Importing and Printing Jobs	154
Reprinting Jobs	156
Basic Settings	157

# Importing and Printing Jobs

You import jobs for printing in the following situations:

- When a page-description language (PDL) file is created on a client workstation that is not connected to the Spire CXP5000 color server
- When a PDL file is located on an external medium, such as a CD-ROM
- When the required file resides locally on the Spire CXP5000 color server

# **Importing Files**

#### To import files to the Spire CXP5000 color server:

1. From the **Job** menu select **Import Job**.

The Import window appears.

<b>2</b> Import			×
Look in: Sample_Files	<b>†</b>		
Name	Date	Size	Туре
Color Files	1/5/04 10:13 AM		File Folder
General Postscript and PDF	1/5/04 10:13 AM		File Folder
🛅 Imposition	1/5/04 10:13 AM		File Folder
🛅 Variable Data	1/5/04 10:13 AM		File Folder
Files of type: All Spire Supported files (	*.ps, *.vps, *.p <b>\$</b>		
			Open
0 Items			
Virtual Printer: V3_DC5000_ProcessPri	nt 🗢		
	•	Import	Cancel



2. To access the required files, click the **up one level** button, or doubleclick on the file folders to go down the file tree.



3. In the upper list in the Import window, select the required files and click the **add** button.

**Note:** Use SHIFT or CTRL to select several files or CTRL+A to select all the files. If required, add the same file more than once.

The file(s) appear in the lower list.

4. Select a printer from the Virtual Printer list.



- To remove files, select the required files in the lower list in the Import Job window and click the **remove** button.
- Use SHIFT or CTRL to select several files at once.
- 5. Click Import.

All files currently listed on the lower list are sent to the Spire CXP5000 color server to be processed and printed as defined in the selected virtual printer.

#### To check the status of imported jobs:

1. Click the **Server** icon arrow.



Importing/Retrieving	X
Importing/Retrieving: From: Job Size:	ATF_A3 D:\Sample_Files\Color Files\ATF Europe (A4_A3)\AT 19.18Mb (0% transferred)
Remaining Jobs:	1
	skip this Job Abort all Jobs Close

The Importing/Retrieving window appears.

The Importing/Retrieving window indicates the name of the file being imported, its location and the job size. It also indicates the percentage of the job already transferred, both numerically and graphically.

- 2. Select one of the following options:
  - Click **Skip This Job** to stop importing the current file and import the next job in the import queue.
  - Click **Abort All Jobs** to stop importing all the files.
  - Click **Close** to close the Importing/Retrieving window.

# **Reprinting Jobs**

# Submitting an RTP Job Requiring no Changes

Select the job in the Storage window and from the Job menu select Submit.

The job(s) are placed in the appropriate queue (**Process Queue** or **Print Queue**).



**Note:** Use SHIFT or CTRL to select several jobs.

# Submitting a Job that Requires Re-RIPing

- 1. Double-click the job to open the Job Parameters window.
- 2. Change the required parameter and click Submit.

The Spire CXP5000 color server automatically determines if your job needs to be re-RIPped and places it in the appropriate queue.

# **Basic Settings**

Basic settings are set in the Job Parameters window.



For more information about opening the Job Parameters window, see *The Job Parameters Window* on page 27.

The following tabs in the Job Parameters window are used in the basic workflows:

- Print Settings tab
- Paper Stock tab
- Print Quality tab

# The Print Settings Tab

The **Print Settings** tab enables you to set print-related job parameters such as the print range, the number of copies you would like to print, the print method and order. In addition you may define the collation, the image position on the sheet, the image scale, set the gallop workflow if required, or rotate your job.

# No. of Copies

Derameters	ter3 Virtus	nrinter	name: V4_SPIREC		hmitted: Mar 1	0 13:57:10
nt Settings	Þ	Color		Services	Finishing	Exception
Parameters	Values		Number of copies	options		
Number of copies	1		Number of copies	1	_	
Print range	All		Number of copies			
Print method	Simplex					
Print order	From 1 to N					
Delivery	Face Up					
Collation	Yes					
Image position	0.0,0.0,0.0,0.0					
Image scale	100%					
Rotate 180	No					
Gallop	No					
			Submit	<b>S</b>	ave	Cancel

> Enter the **Number of Copies** to be printed.

# Print Range

Parameters		
Job name: Golfer_Let	ter3 Virtual prim	ter name: V4_SPIRECOLORSE Submitted: Mar 10 , 13:57:
nt Settings Paper Sto	ick Print Quality Col	or Imposition Services Finishing Except
Parameters	Values	Print range options
Number of copies	1	O All
Print range	All	U AII
Print method	Simplex	Odd pages
Print order	From 1 to N	Even pages
Delivery	Face Up	
Collation	Yes	Pages:
Image position	0.0,0.0,0.0,0.0	(Total pages: 1)
Image scale	100%	
Rotate 180	No	
Gallop	No	
		Submit Save Cancel

Job Parameters					×
Job name: iTrustBank_L	etter Virtual pri	nter name: V4_SPIRECO	DLORSE Subm	itted: Mar 10 , 1	4:05:34
Print Settings Paper Stock	Print Quality Col	or Imposition	Services	Finishing E	Exceptions
Parameters Number of copies Print range Print method Print order Delivery	Values 1 All Simplex From 1 to N Face Up	Print range options All Odd Even Booklets	3		
Collation Image position Image scale Rotate 180 Gallop	Yes 0.0,0,0,0,0,0 100% No No				
		Submit	Save		ancel

If the printed job is a VI job, the **Print Range** display is as follows:

Select the desired Print range.

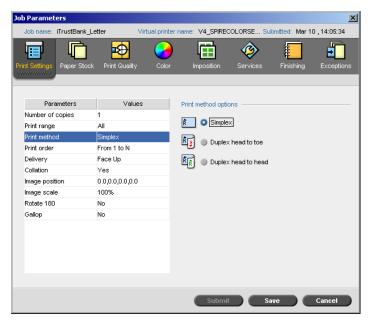
To select specific pages/booklets or page ranges, select **Pages/Booklets** and specify the pages or booklets to be printed as follows:

- □ Type one or several numbers separated by commas and no spaces. For example, **1,3,5**.
- □ Type a range of pages or booklets with a hyphen between the starting and ending numbers in the range. For example, **1-5**.

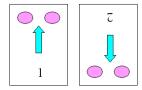


**Note:** For imposed jobs, instead of typing the required pages, you should type the required imposed sheets.

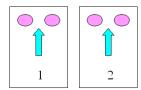
## **Print Method**



- > Select the **Print method** to one of the following:
  - **Simplex:** for single-sided printing
  - □ **Duplex Head to Toe:** for calendar-style hard copies (usually used with landscape jobs)



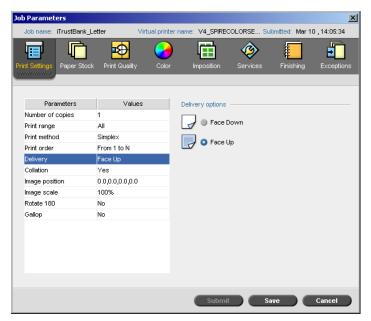
□ **Duplex Head to Head:** for printing book-style hard copies (usually used with portrait jobs)



#### Print Order Job Parameters × Job nam iTrustBank\_Letter Virtual printer name: V4\_SPIRECOLORSE... Submitted: Mar 10 , 14:05:34 ٨ Ē ₽ 0 Exception the second Print Quality Paper Stock Values Parameters Print order options Number of copies 1 🗗 🔍 💿 From 1 to N Print range All Simplex Print method From N to 1 Print order From 1 to N Delivery Face Up Collation Yes 0.0,0.0,0.0,0.0 Image position . 100% Image scale Rotate 180 No Gallop No Submit Save Cancel

Set the print order to From 1 to N (front to back) or From N to 1 (back to front).

# Delivery



> Select Face Up or Face Down as the delivery option.



Tip: Use Face Down when printing confidential documents.



Note: When you collate a document, select Face Down (or Face Up and From N to 1 in the Print order parameter) to print the set in the correct order.

#### Job Parameters × Virtual printer name: V4\_SPIRECOLORSE... Submitted: Mar 10 , 14:05:34 Job nar iTrustBank\_Letter r 똅 Ð E Ð the second secon Print Quali Exception imp Service Parameters Values Collation options Number of copies 1 🕒 💿 Yes All Print range Print method Simplex 🕛 🛛 № Print order From 1 to N Delivery Face Up Collation Ye 0.0,0.0,0.0,0.0 Image position 100% Image scale Rotate 180 No Gallop No Submit Save Cancel

Select the **Collation** option:

Collation

- Yes: prints a complete copy of the job before the first page of the next copy is printed
- **No:** prints all copies of each page before going on to the next page

For example, if you have a 20 page job and you select **Yes**, all 20 pages will be printed before the next copy of the job is printed. If you select **No**, 20 copies of page one will be printed before going on to print 20 copies of page two, and so on.

#### **Image Position** × Virtual printer name: V4\_SPIRECOLORSE... Submitted: Mar 10 , 14:05:34 iTrustBank\_Letter Job na r E ₽₽ 2 Ð Excentio Parameters Values Image position options Number of copies 1 Same on both sides All Print range Print method Simplex Print order From 1 to N Rear 0.0 Delivery Face Up 0.0 in Lead: Collation Yes Image pos 0.0,0.0 • Center Image 100% Image scale Rotate 180 No Gallop No 0.0 in 0.0 in Lead: Center Image Cancel

This option enables you to adjust the image positioning on the sheet's printed page (simplex or duplex).

This function uses the following terminology:

- **Rear:** the sheet's edge near the printer rear, where printing stops
- Lead: the edge of a sheet at which printing begins

The page's Lead and Rear edges are determined just after the page is printed out, before making any change in the page orientation.

To adjust the image positioning in duplex printing, do one of the following:

- Select **Same on both sides** to shift the image on the sheet's second side (face down image) according to the shift on the sheet's first side (face up image).
- Click **Center Image** to set the **Rear** and **Lead** values to **0**.

• Set page offsets by clicking the directional arrows or by entering **Rear** and **Lead** values.

Click the arrows to change the numerator values as follows:

- Positive (negative) values for shift toward (away from) the leading edge
- □ Top (bottom) arrows for positive (negative) values toward (away from) the rear edge



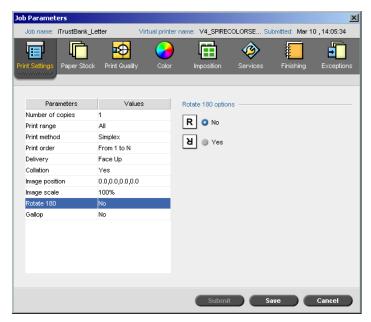
**Note:** Use the arrows to move duplex page data away from the spine. (Duplex printing only).

# Image Scale

b Parameters						
Job name: iTrustBank_L	.etter Virtu	al printer	name: V4_SPIREC	OLORSE Su	bmitted: Mar 1	0,14:05:34
int Settings	< Print Quality	Color	Imposition	Services	Finishing	Exceptions
Parameters	Values		Image scale option	ns		
Number of copies	1		100%			
Print range	All		<ul> <li>Fit to paper</li> </ul>			
Print method	Simplex		Custom:		%	
Print order	From 1 to N		Custom.		76	
Delivery	Face Up					
Collation	Yes					
Image position	0.0,0.0,0.0,0.0					
Image scale	100%					
Rotate 180	No					
Gallop	No					
			Submit		ave	Cancel

- Select the desired Image scale option:
  - **100%:** prints at 100% of the original size (default)
  - □ **Fit to Paper:** for the image to fit the selected paper in the paper stock
  - □ **Custom**: select **Custom** and enter the percent by which you would like to proportionally decrease/increase the image size

Rotate 18	30°
-----------	-----



> To rotate your job by 180°, select **Yes**.

# Gallop

Job name: ITrustBank_Letter Paper Stock Pr Parameters Number of copies 1 Print range AII	int Quality Color	ame: V4_SPIRECOL			14:05:34
Parameters 1		Imposition \$	Services	Finishing	Exceptions
Number of copies 1	Values	Gallop options			
Drint renge All		Ves			
Frinciange All		Print after:			
Print method Simp			pages		
Print order From	n 1 to N	No			
Delivery Face	e Up				
Collation Yes					
Image position 0.0,0	0.0,0.0,0.0				
Image scale 1009	%				
Rotate 180 No					
Gallop No					

The **Gallop** function enables you to begin printing a defined number of pages before the entire job has been RIPed. This enables you to print and RIP concurrently.

Gallop reduces the amount of time required to RIP and print a job and is especially useful for long runs such as VI jobs. When combined with a deletion policy, Gallop enables you to free printer disk space.

Gallop is not recommended for relatively small jobs, since the benefit of engaging the process is marginal, and the total production time will be shortened by only a few seconds.

#### To set the gallop:

Select Yes and enter the number of pages to RIP before starting to print.



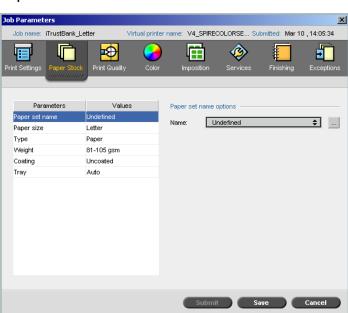
**Note:** The default number of pages to be RIPed before printing is 50. For complicated jobs using numerous shared elements, you can increase or decrease this number.

# The Paper Stock Tab

The **Paper Stock** tab enables you to set paper stock-related job parameters.

The Spire CXP5000 color server uses multiple paper stock parameters such as paper size, type, weight and coating to specify the paper stock. You may either select each parameter separately or select a complete paper set which already includes all parameters.

If the selected paper set is unavailable, the current job is frozen until the appropriate set is available (the job receives a **frozen** status indicator, its line appears in blue and a message appears in the Alerts window). Other jobs can print while jobs are held.



# Paper Set Name

#### To set the required paper set:

Select the required paper set from the Name list. If required, a paper set can be added (see *Managing Paper Sets* on page 168).

The selected paper set values (**Paper Size**, **Type**, **Weight** and **Coating**) appear in the corresponding parameters in the **Paper Stock** tab.

#### **Managing Paper Sets**

The Spire CXP5000 color server is provided with predefined paper sets for your convenience. These paper sets cannot be removed but they can be modified. In addition, you can add, modify or remove custom paper sets according to your requirements.

#### To add a new paper set:

1. Click the **browse** button.

#	≣	Paper Set Name	Size	Туре	Weight	Coating	Color
1		A4_Un_81-105	A4	Paper	81-105 gsm	Uncoated	White
2		A4_Co_81-105	A.4	Paper	81-105 gsm	Coated	White
3		A4 Transparency	A4	Transparen	81-105 gsm	Uncoated	Clear
4		A3_Un_81-105	A3	Paper	81-105 gsm	Uncoated	White
5		A3_Co_81-105	A3	Paper	81-105 gsm	Coated	White
6		A5_Un_81-105	Custom	Paper	81-105 gsm	Uncoated	White
7		A5_Co_81-105	Custom	Paper	81-105 gsm	Coated	White
8		SRA3_Un_81-105	SRA3	Paper	81-105 gsm	Uncoated	White
9		SRA3_Co_81-105	SRA3	Paper	81-105 gsm	Coated	White
10		MaxSize	Custom	Paper	81-105 gsm	Uncoated	White
11		Tab	Custom	Paper	106-135 gsm	Uncoated	White
12		Text	SEF Letter	Paper	106-135 gsm	Uncoated	White
13		Admin sheet	SEF Letter	Paper	106-135 gsm	Uncoated	Green

|--|

# 2. Click the **Add** button.

The Paper Set Properties window appears.

Paper Set Propert	ies	X
Name:	<type name="" new=""></type>	
Size:	A4 :	<b>\$</b>
Color:	White	<b>\$</b>
Weight:	81-105 gsm :	\$
Coat:	Uncoated :	
Type:	Paper :	<b>\$</b>
Paper set #13		
	OK Canc	el

- 3. Enter the following parameters:
  - Name: enter the new paper set name. It is recommended that the name is as descriptive as possible—for example,
     Letter90gsmuncoat.
  - □ From the Size, Color, Weight, Coat and Type lists, select the required properties for the new paper set.
- 4. Click **OK**.

#### To modify a paper set:

- 1. In the Paper Set window, select the paper set you would like to modify.
- 2. Click the **Edit** icon.

The Paper Set Properties window appears.

- 3. Modify the required properties of the paper set.
- 4. Click **OK**.

#### To delete a paper set:

1. In the Resource Center window, with the **Paper Sets** option selected, select the paper set you would like to delete.



 $\mathcal{P}$ 

2. Click the **Remove** icon.

The Paper Set is deleted.



**Note:** The system predefined paper sets can't be deleted.

# Paper Size

Parameters     Values     Paper size options       Paper size     Letter     Size:       Type     Paper       Veight     81-105 gsm       Coating     Uncoated       Tray     Auto						
Paper size         Letter           Type         Paper           Weight         81-105 gsm           Coating         Uncoated		Values		Paper size optio	ons	
Type     Paper       Weight     81-105 gsm       Coating     Uncoated			- 1	Size:	Letter	\$
Weight 81-105 gsm Costing Uncosted			-			
Coating Uncoated						
		-				
Tray Auto						
	Iray	Auto				

1. Select the required stock size from the Size list.

Job Parameters × Job name: Golfer\_Letter3 Virtual printer name: V4\_SPIRECOLORSE... Submitted: Mar 10 , 13:57:19 F Exception ₽ 9 Print Set Parameters Values Paper size options Paper set name Undefined Custom \$ Size: Paper : Custo Height: 11.0001 in Paper Туре 81-105 gsm Weight Width: 8.5001 in Coating Uncoated Feed Direction: Tray Auto LEF - long edge feed SEF - short edge feed Submit Save Cancel

For a custom paper size setting, select **Custom** from the list.

The **Paper size options** are displayed as follows:

2. Type the required **Height** and **Width**.



**Note:** Units of measurement (mm or inches) reflect system configuration. They are chosen in the Settings window (see *Localization* on page 415).

- 3. Select the required Feed Direction:
  - LEF (Long Edge Feed)
  - **SEF** (Short Edge Feed)



- Select Paper to print on paper. Or: Select Transparency if the stock type is Transparency.
- 2. Select the **Add Interleave** check box if you want to insert a blank page between transparencies.
- 3. To customize the interleave, select the required paper set from the list. Or:

Use the default **Same as job**.

Or:



Click the **browse** button and add a new paper set.

For more information about adding a paper set, see *Managing Paper Sets* on page 168.



#### Notes:

- Slip-sheets and/or blank pages (interleave) in a transparency job are counted by the number of sheets, not by the number of pages, (rastered pages) reported on the Admin page.
- If the job is imposed, then the interleave is the size of the imposition sheet and is inserted between each sheet (not each slide).

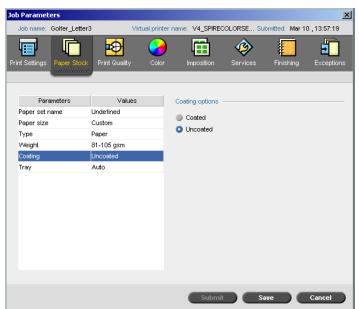
- 4. In the **Tray** list, select the required tray:
  - **Tray 1**: Load the specific stock in this tray
  - Tray 2: Load the specific stock in this tray
  - Tray 3: Load the specific stock in this tray
  - Auto: Any tray with the specific paper stock will be used

# Weight

b Parameters						
Job name: Golfer_Lette	r3 Virtu	al printer	name: V4_SPIRE	ECOLORSE Su	bmitted: Mar 1	0,13:57:19
int Settings		Color	Imposition	Services	Finishing	Exception:
Parameters	Values		Weight options			
Paper set name	Undefined					
Paper size	Custom		Weight:	81-105 gsm		\$
Туре	Paper					
Weight	81-105 gsm					
Coating	Uncoated					
Tray	Auto					
			Subm	it <b>t S</b> a	ive	Cancel

> From the **Weight** list, select the required stock weight.





> Select **Coated** to print on coated paper.



- > In the **Tray** list, select the required tray:
  - **Tray 1**: Load the specific stock in this tray
  - Tray 2: Load the specific stock in this tray
  - Tray 3: Load the specific stock in this tray
  - **Auto**: Any tray with the specific paper stock will be used.

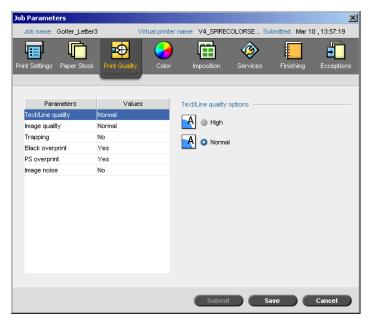
# Notes:

• The **Auto** tray option uses the paper in the selected tray only if it complies with all the other paper stock parameters. If the paper stock in the assigned tray mismatches with any Job Stock parameter, the job becomes 'Frozen'.

# The Print Quality Tab

The **Print Quality** tab enables you to set print quality related job parameters and to improve the quality of printed jobs. These parameters include the possibility to enhance text/ line quality and image quality. In addition it enables you to apply the Creo FAF algorithm by setting trapping, to define the black overprint, to use or ignore the overprint information by setting the PS overprint, and set the image noise level.

# Text / Line Quality



**Text/Line Quality** refers to the Creo anti-aliasing algorithm for superior text quality. Text/Line Quality and text and line-art elements are processed separately to produce optimal rendering of all the elements on a page. This option improves the text quality of diagonal lines, borders and blends, causes blends to appear smooth with no banding and displays crisp diagonal lines without (or with minimal) jaggies (rough edges) that are the result of the limited resolution of the print engine.

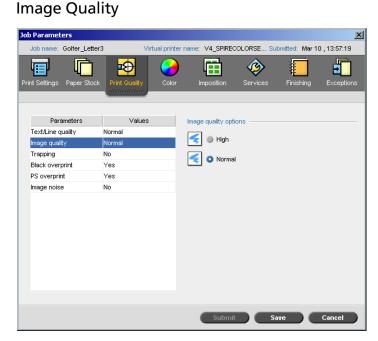


Normal (with jaggies) High

- > To set the text/line quality, select one of the following options:
  - **High** to provide superior text quality

#### Notes:

- Anti-aliasing is used to avoid or minimize jaggies rough edges which are the result of the limited resolution of the original file.
- If you select the **High** option, the processing speed is decreased.
- **Normal** (default) to provide regular text quality



**Image quality** refers to the ability to maintain the same detail and smoothness with different degrees of enlargement. This feature is especially useful when your PostScript file includes several images at different qualities (for example, images that were scanned at different resolutions, were rotated, or downloaded from the internet).

- > To select the image quality, select one of the following options:
  - **High** to improve the quality of images in a job



Note: If you select the High option, the processing speed is decreased.

Normal (default) to provide normal image quality (for jobs that do not require improved picture quality)



**Trapping** is a solution that solves misregistration between color separations in both offset and digital printing. This occurs no matter the accuracy of the printing device, and results in white lines around objects on top of a background (in a knock-out procedure) and also between adjacent colors. The solution is to extract the element and/or the background in order to create an overlap between them.

See the following illustration for the trapping's effect:



Printed without Trapping



Printed with Trapping

This function uses the following terminology:

- **Frame Thickness** refers to the thickness of trapping. The thicker the frame, the less chance that white areas appear between images.
- **Protect Small Text** is an option you may apply for small or complex images, since thicker frames can decrease quality by hiding parts of an image. Selecting this option will protect any text smaller or equal to 12 pt by not framing it while applying the FAF algorithm.
- > To set trapping, select **Yes**.



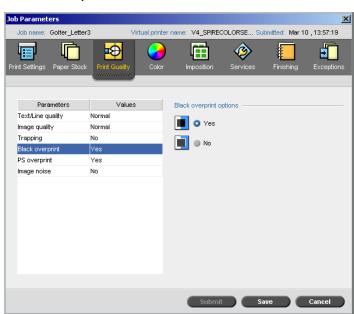
**Note:** When **Yes** is selected, the **Frame Thickness** and **Protect Small Text** options are activated. These options cannot be selected through the PPD.

- □ In the **Frame Thickness** box, select the default (0.08) for the thickness of the trapping frame, or type the required value.
- Select the Protect Small Text check box so that any text that is smaller or equal to 12 pt. is not framed during FAF. Or:

Clear this option to frame all text elements during FAF.



**Note:** Selecting **No** does not affect trapping incorporated by DTP applications (for example, Photoshop). FAF should not be used with application based trapping. In a PostScript file that already contains trapping from the originating application, it is not necessary to use Spire CXP5000 color server trapping.



#### **Black Overprint**

Occasionally, white lines may appear around black text. The text may appear less dense than required as a result of misregistration between color separations. **Black Overprint** is used to ensure that black text prints cleanly within a tint or picture area. The text appears in a richer, deeper black, with the underlying CMY values equal to those of the printed background.

A knock-out occurs when you print only the topmost color. This results in lesser color density and can cause misregistration if separations are not perfectly aligned. When **Black overprint** is active, there are no knock-outs under the black text. **Black overprint** prints text over colored backgrounds rather than knocking out the background first. As a result, misregistrations are not visible. It is therefore recommended to use **Black overprint** in order to ensure best results when printing black text and graphics.

To enable black overprint, from the Black overprint options, select Yes (Black Overprint applies only to 100% black).



Note: Selecting No increases the processing speed.

o Parameters						
Job name: Golfer_Letter:	з \	/irtual printer	name: V4_SPIRE	COLORSE Su	bmitted: Mar 1	0,13:57:19
nt Settings Paper Stock	Print Quality	Color	Imposition	Services	Finishing	Exceptions
Parameters	Value	5	Black overprint o	options		
Text/Line quality Image quality	Normal Normal		📕 o Yes			
Trapping	No					
Black overprint	Yes					
PS overprint Image noise	Yes No					
inage noise	140					

**PS** Overprint

In the client authoring tools (for example QuarkXPress<sup>®</sup>), you can select overprint options. **PS Overprint** offers the option to use the overprint, which exists in the PostScript file. It also determines whether the DTP application PS Overprint settings are honored in the RIP.

The Spire CXP5000 color server settings override PS Overprint commands from DTP applications. For example, if you set the PS Overprint option to **Yes** in a DTP application, and in the Spire CXP5000 color server set the PS Overprint option to **No**, the result is no overprinting. The Spire CXP5000 color server can't create PS Overprint that is not pre-defined in the file. If you select the **Yes** option (default) for a file that has not had overprinting defined in a DTP application, the result is no overprinting.

If you choose to keep the PS overprint that was applied in a DTP application, the Spire CXP5000 color server implements the overprinting and background colors are not knocked out. For example, in the case of a yellow triangle overlapping a cyan circle, selecting **Yes** results in the overlapping area turning green. This is not seen on the screen, only in print.



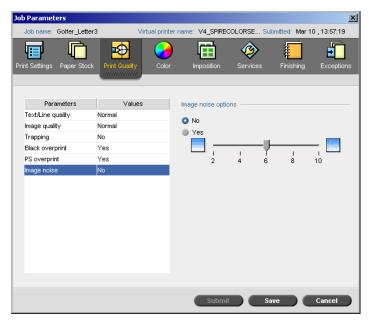
**Note:** The above is true for files with PS Overprint **Yes** already selected in the DTP application.

If you choose to ignore the PS overprint information that exists in the input PostScript file, background colors are knocked out and only the top most color parts are seen on the screen in your DTP application. For example, in the case of a yellow triangle overlapping a cyan circle, selecting **No** results in the cyan background being knocked out, so only the yellow is printed.

#### To set the PS overprint, select one of the following options:

- Select **Yes** to use the overprint information that exists in the input file.
- Select **No** to ignore the overprint information that exists in the input file.

# Image Noise



The **Image Noise** parameter, enables you to smooth and blend vignettes of continuous tone (CT) images.

By default the Image Noise parameter is disabled.

# To set the image noise level:

- 1. In the **Image noise options**, select **Yes**.
- 2. Change the image noise level (if required) by moving the slider; the higher the level, the smoother the vignettes appear.

# 5

# Managing Jobs

Managing the Job Queues	
Managing the Storage Window	
Job Editor	
Job Accounting	215
Managing Virtual Printers	
Job Flow	224

# Overview

This chapter explains the various operations that can be performed from the Spire CXP5000 color server queues, and in the Storage window. It also provides information on managing jobs and disk space.

The Job Editor tool is also explained in this chapter. This tool is provided to enable you to view the previews of your jobs and edit RTP jobs if required.

This chapter also explains Job Accounting, managing virtual printers and the **Job Flow** parameter in the Settings window Job Parameters Services tab.

# Managing the Job Queues

# Setting Queue Preferences

After entering the Spire CXP5000 color server, jobs reside in the Queues window (which includes both the **Process Queue** and **Print Queue**) or in the Storage window (depending on the selected job flow).

The **Process Queue** lists all the jobs that are waiting to be processed and the job currently being processed.

The **Print Queue** lists all the jobs that were processed successfully and are waiting to be printed, and the currently printing job. The **Print Queue** also lists **Frozen** jobs (jobs for which the appropriate paper stock is not available—for example, the correct paper type, paper size or paper weight is missing.

Each queue holds jobs in the order they entered it (unless a **Rush** job "interrupts" the submission order).



For more information about rush jobs, see *Running a Job Immediately* on page 197.

At any time, you may view information regarding the number and status of the jobs in the queues, reorder the jobs or suspend/resume the queue.

After startup, the Queues window is displayed. The Queues window consists of the Process Queue and the Print Queue.



Each queue holds jobs in the order they entered it. The top job in the queue is the Running job, while all others are Waiting jobs.



Note: In the Print Queue, in cases of very short jobs, several jobs may be Running. The jobs in the Running state are listed first and printed in the order they are listed.

If required, you can change the order of Waiting jobs in the queues or view/ edit the parameters of a job.

### To close the Queues window:



 $\square$  > Click the **Close** button on the window's title.

#### To display the Queue window:

> From the **View** menu, select **Queues**.

# The Queues Window

After submitting PDL files (or re-submitting PDL jobs), the **Process Queue** lists the files to be processed.



Once a file has been processed successfully, it moves to the **Print Queue** and waits to be printed or to the Storage window (depending on the current job flow or virtual printer).

Status	Туре	Title	Sender	Submitted	Pages	Sets	
<u> </u>	RTP	IQ_Test_Letter	operator	Jan 4 08:48	1	1	
<u>.</u>	RTP	IQ_Test_A41	operator	Jan 1 10:04	1	1	



For more information about operations on the jobs residing in the **Queue Manager**, see *Handling Jobs in the Queues* on page 193.

The Queues window lists informations about the jobs that are being processed. Status indicators indicate the status of each job. Table 5 describes the status indicators used in both the **Process Queue** and **Print Queue**.

Table 5: Process Queue and Print Queue status indicators

Status indicator	Indicates the
	Job is running
	Job is frozen and held in the <b>Print Queue</b> . If a job is frozen, it indicates that the appropriate paper stock is not available— for example, the correct paper type, paper size, or paper weight.
<b>-</b>	Job is waiting

Status indicator	Indicates the
	Rush job
	Rush job is frozen
<b>6</b>	Rush job is waiting

Table 5: Process Queue and Print Queue status indicators



For more information about rush jobs, see *Running a Job Immediately* on page 197.

Right-click the column headings row to select which columns you want to view.

Column name	Indicates the
Туре	File format of the PDL job—for example, PS, PDF, VPS
Title	Name of the file to be printed. If you submit a file whose name already exists in the Spire CXP5000 color server, a sequential number is automatically added to the file name—for example, submitting a file called LOBSTER while such a file already exists renames it to LOBSTER1.
Sender	User name of the system from which this file originated
Submitted	Date and time this job was first submitted to the Spire CXP5000 color server
Pages	Number of pages to be processed in a PDF job. If the DTP application supported it, the number of pages is indicated for other PDL jobs.
Sets	Number of copies to be printed

Table 6: Process Queue and Print Queue column descriptions

Column name	Indicates the			
Paper set/Stock name	Paper set name or stock name.			
Media Size	Paper size			
Media Weight	Paper weight			
Media Type	Paper type			
Media Coat	Paper coating			
File Size	File size of the job			
Account	Account name taken from the <b>Job info</b> parameter			
Job Info	Job info type			
Imposition	Type of imposition used			
Page Exception	Whether or not the job has page exceptions			
Server	Name of the server being used			
Virtual Printer Names	Name of virtual printer being used			

Table 6: Process Queue and Print Queue column descriptions

# **Queues Status Panel Information**

### Print Queue

Total 2

The **Processing** and **Printing** status areas indicate the following:

- The current number of jobs in the respective queue—for example, 1.
- If a job is currently processed/printed, the name of the job and a process indicator are displayed.

27%
0:02



**Note:** In the **Processing** status area, the total number of pages is indicated for PDF jobs. If the DTP application supported it, the number of pages is indicated for other PDL jobs.

# Job Batching Workflow

The job batching workflow streams several jobs into a single batch to prevent the printer from cycling down between jobs. Every job that enters the **Print Queue** is checked whether it can be streamed to the previous job.

- If a job can be streamed to the previous job, the job's icon is changed to a running state and it prints without a cycle down.
- A job that cannot be streamed to the previous job prints after the print engine cycles down. Jobs that follow this type of job can be streamed to it. The job batching operation can be enabled or disabled in the Print Queue Manager utility in the Preferences parameter, in the Settings window. This feature saves printing time, especially for a large number of short/small jobs.

The following job types cannot be combined to one batch:

- Collated and uncollated jobs
- Jobs with different output trays
- Jobs with different staple positions

#### How job batching is set in the Spire CXP5000 Color Server

- 1. The files arrive to the **Print Queue**.
- 2. The job is validated by the Spire CXP5000 color server. If it is fit for streaming to the current batch, the job is added to the batched list and runs as a batched job (without cycle down). If it is not fit for the current batch, it remains on the waiting list and is not run as a batched job (its icon remains the waiting icon).
- 3. Merged files are automatically batched with the upper jobs on the queue.

4. If the waiting list order changed and the previous job was not merged, then the job at the top of the waiting list is checked.



**Note:** You set job batching in the Settings window under **Preferences>Print Queue Manager**.



For more information about job batching, see *Print Queue Manager* on page 417.

# Reordering Jobs in the Queues

Rearranging a queue enables you to set a new processing or printing order. You can do the following:

- Promote a job
- Promote a job to top of the queue
- Demote a job
- Demote a job to the bottom of the queue



Note: All actions are valid for a single job only.

#### To reorder a job in the Queues window:

- Right-click a job and select one of the following options:
  - **Promote:** To move the selected job one step up in the queue.
  - **Promote to top:** To move the selected job to the top of the queue.



- **Note:** The job is placed below the **Running** job.
- **Demote:** To move the selected job one step down in the queue.
- **Demote to bottom:** To move the selected job to the bottom of the queue.

# Suspending and Resuming Queues

If required, you can stop a queue (that is, rendering it temporarily inactive) and then later continue its operation. To do so, use the **Suspend/Resume** button.





Suspend mode

Resume mode

The Suspend/Resume button

### To suspend a queue:

Click the suspend button.

The button switches to suspend mode. Processing/printing stops after the current job has finished running.

### To resume a queue:

Click the resume button.

The button switches to resume mode. The top job in the queue starts processing/printing.

# Handling Jobs in the Queues

You can perform the following tasks from the **Process Queue** and the **Print Queue**:

- Abort a running job
- Move waiting jobs to the Storage window
- Delete jobs
- View and modify the parameters of a job
- View the job history (open the Job History window)
- Run a waiting job immediately



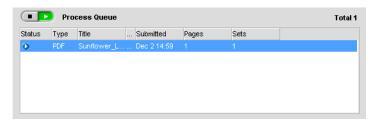
**Note:** You can perform the above mentioned activities (except for **Abort**), only if the job is waiting in the queue. If the job is active, other selections are not available.

Details about the above actions are provided in the following sections.

# Aborting a Running Job

#### To stop processing/printing a running job:

Right-click the required running job in the Process Queue or the Print Queue, and from the menu select Abort.



The job is removed from the queue to the Storage window, and the Alerts window is updated.

The **Aborted** status is assigned to the job and the next job in the queue starts running.

	Storage				(	
					Show: 🧿	0 0
Status	Job Type	Title	Sender	Submitted	Pages	File size
0	PDF	Sunflower_L	UserName	Dec 3 08:31	3	0.44 M
1	RTP	ATF_A3_new	UserName	Dec 2 10:25	1	16.04 M
IJ	PS	ATF_Woman	UserName	Dec 2 14:57	1	2.04 M
	RTP	PANTONE_C	UserName	Dec 2 10:19	26	115.58 M
•						



**Note:** To return a job to the proper queue, right-click the job(s) in the Storage window and from the **Job** menu select **Submit**.

# Moving Waiting Jobs to the Storage Window

To postpone processing/printing of one or several waiting jobs, you can use the **Move to storage** option.

#### To move waiting jobs to storage:

1. Select one or several jobs in the **Process Queue** or **Print Queue**.

Print Queue (Total 5)							
Status	Туре	Title	Sender	Submitted	Pages	Sets	
<b>7</b>	RTP	Imposition Ma	UserName	Dec 2 10:29	20	1	
A	RTP	PANTONE_C	UserName	Dec 2 10:25	26	1	
Δ	RTP	PANTONE_C	UserName	Dec 2 10:26	2	1	
Δ	RTP	Sunflower_L	UserName	Dec 214:59	1	1	
<u>.</u>	RTP	Color_Flowc	UserName	Dec 2 14:59	3	1	

2. Right-click the job, and select Move to storage.

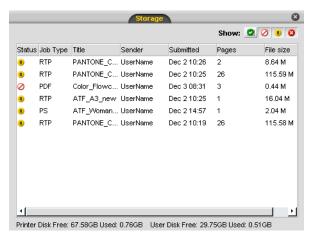
The **Held** status is assigned to the job(s).



Ш

**Note:** If you have selected several jobs, from the **Job** menu select **Move to storage**.

The job(s) are removed from the **Process** or **Print Queue** to the Storage window.



X

**Note:** To return jobs to their original queue(s), right-click the job, and from the menu select **Submit**.

# Deleting Jobs

You can delete one job, or select several jobs to be deleted and delete them at once.

#### To delete a job:

1. Right-click the required job (or select as many jobs as you want to delete) in the Queues window or Storage window, and from the **Job** menu select **Delete**.

The following message appears.



2. Click Yes.

The selected job(s) is removed from the **Print Queue** or **Process Queue**.



**Note:** Once a job is deleted, it needs to be re-submitted for processing and printing. To temporarily remove jobs from a queue, use **Move to Storage** (see *Moving Waiting Jobs to the Storage Window* on page 195).

# Viewing and Editing the Job Parameters

#### To view/edit the job parameters:

Right-click the required job in the Queues or Storage window, and from the menu, select Job Parameters. Or:

Double-click the required job in the Queues or Storage window.

The Job Parameters window appears.



#### Notes:

- In the Queues window, you can only edit waiting jobs (not running). You may also suspend the queue for editing by clicking the **suspend** button.
- If the changes were applied in the **Print Queue**, and applying them requires re-RIPing of the job, the job will be automatically placed in the **Process Queue**.

# Running a Job Immediately

You can select a job in the Storage window, or in the **Print Queue** or **Process Queue** and process/print it with top priority.

If the **Rush** job requires processing while another job is being processed, the currently processed job will preserve its **Running** job status, but its processing will be paused, while the rush job takes priority and is processed. After the rush job has finished processing and is moved to the **Print Queue**, the paused job continues its processing.

If the rush job enters the **Print Queue** while another job is being printed, the currently printing job will preserve its **Running** job status, but its printing will be paused, while the rush job takes priority and is printed.



**Note:** The currently running job will finish printing the current page (both sides), or current set (depending on stapling options).

After the rush job has finished printing, the paused job will automatically continue printing.



**Note:** You can only assign one job at a time as rush jobs. If you select several jobs (one after the other) as rush jobs, they will be processed/printed in the order of their selection.

To submit a job with top priority (as a rush job):

- Right-click the job in the Queues or Storage window, and from the menu select Run Immediately.

The job will be assigned to the top of the appropriate queue with a **Rush** icon, to be handled immediately.

# Managing the Storage Window

The Storage window can contain jobs that:

- Completed printing
- Were moved to the Storage window (or Aborted) during processing (or printing)
- Failed to complete processing or printing ٠
- Retrieved jobs
- Were imported or downloaded directly from the client to the Storage ٠ window (that is, using the **Spool & Store** workflow)

#### To close the Storage window:



> Click the **Close** button on the window's title.

#### To open the Storage window:

> From the **View** menu, select **Storage**.

The Storage window appears. Initially, it contains no jobs.

At any time, you can view information regarding the number and status of the jobs in the Storage window, and sort or filter the list of jobs. After startup, the Storage window is displayed by default.

Status	Job Type	Title	Sender	Submitted	Pages	File size
<u>II</u> )	RTP	PANTONE_C		Dec 2 10:26	2	8.64 M
	RTP	PANTONE_C		Dec 2 10:25	26	115.59 N
0	PDF	Color_Flowc	UserName	Dec 3 08:31	3	0.44 M
	RTP	ATF_A3_new	UserName	Dec 2 10:25	1	16.04 M
1	PS	ATF_Woman	UserName	Dec 214:57	1	2.04 M
1	RTP	PANTONE_C	UserName	Dec 210:19	26	115.58 N

# **Discarding RTP Data**

The RTP data can be discarded if required. This is typically done in one of the following cases:

- You need to re-RIP a file
- You want to archive a job without the RTP data
- You want to edit tabs

### To discard RTP data:

In the Storage window, right-click the relevant job and select Revert to source.

The RTP data is discarded and the file returns to its original format—for example, PostScript.

# Filtering the List

Each job in the Storage window is assigned one of the following statuses:

lcon	Status	Indicates that
	Completed	The job completed printing.
Ш	Held	The job was moved from the Queues window to the Storage window by the operator, or automatically by the current Job Flow or Virtual Printer.
×	Failed	The job failed to complete processing or printing.
	Aborted	The job was aborted by the operator when it was Running in the Queues window.

Show: 📀 📿 🕛 😫

By default, the Storage window lists jobs of all statuses (all status indicators are selected).

By selecting one or more status types you can filter the list in order to view only jobs of the selected status indicator(s).

#### To filter the list:

Show: 🕑 🖄 🕕 😵

Click any status indicator(s)—for example, the Completed and Held to remove jobs of that status from the list.

The list updates accordingly.

	Storage				(	
					Show: 🤇	2 🖄 🔳 😫
Status	Job Type	Title	Sender	Submitted	Pages	File size
	RTP	PANTONE_C	UserName	Dec 2 10:26	2	8.64 M
•	RTP	PANTONE_C	UserName	Dec 2 10:25	26	115.59 M
•	RTP	ATF_A3_new	UserName	Dec 2 10:25	1	16.04 M
J	PS	ATF_Woman	UserName	Dec 2 14:57	1	2.04 M
IJ	RTP	PANTONE_C	UserName	Dec 210:19	26	115.58 M
•1						•
Printer	Disk Free:	67.58GB Used:	0.76GB Us	er Disk Free: 29.3	75GB Used: I	0.51GB

Note: If you click all the status indicators, no jobs are listed.

# Handling Jobs in the Storage Window

In the **Storage** window you can perform the following actions:

- Submit a job. See *Submitting Jobs* on page 201.
- Run a job immediately (rush job). See *Running a Job Immediately* on page 197.
- Preview and edit a job, using the **Job Preview &Editor**. See *Job Editor* on page 205.
- View and modify the parameters of a job. See *Viewing and Editing the Job Parameters* on page 196.
- Archive a job. See Archiving and Retrieving Jobs on page 202.
- Duplicate a job. See *Duplicating Jobs* on page 201.
- Delete a job. See *Deleting Jobs* on page 196.
- View the job's history (in the Job History window). See *Viewing the Job History* on page 205.
- Export as PDF2Go. See *Export as PDF2Go* on page 264.
- View the Job Ticket Report. See *Job Ticket Report* on page 226.

- View the Preflight report. See *Preflight Report* on page 375.
- Export a job as InSite. See *Export as Creo Synapse InSite Job* on page 379.

# Submitting Jobs

Right-click the required job, and from the menu select Submit. Or:

Drag the job(s) from the Storage window into the appropriate queue. Or:

In the Job Parameters window, click Submit.

RTP Jobs are submitted to the **Print Queue**; all other jobs are submitted to the **Process Queue**.

# **Duplicating Jobs**

1. Right-click a job and from the menu select **Duplicate**.

The following message appears.



2. Click **Yes** to continue.

The selected file is duplicated, and is given the name of the original job followed by "\_dup".



#### Notes:

- Duplicating an RTP job creates an original PDL version of the job.
- You can't duplicate an RTP job that was modified in the Job Editor since it contains RTP data only.

# Archiving and Retrieving Jobs

In order to maintain free disk space, it is recommended that you backup jobs and their related files to an external server, and then delete them from the Storage window.

This backup process is called archive. The archived jobs and their related files can later on be retrieved for further usage.

# Archiving and Retrieving VI Jobs

If a job includes VI elements, these should also be archived and retrieved with the job.

- To archive and retrieve VI elements, select Resource Center>Cached VI Elements.
- > To archive/retrieve a VI job, first archive/retrieve the VI elements.

You can also set a default archiving path. Once the path is set, and **Archive** is selected from the **Job** menu, the Archive window browser will be directed to the predefined path. This path is set in the Settings window under **Preferences**>General Defaults.



For more information about archiving VI elements, see *Managing VI Elements* on page 391 for details.

### To archive a job to an external server:

1. In the Storage window, right-click the job you would like to archive, and from the menu select **Archive**.

Copen	) My Documents	÷ t		
	Name	Date	Size	Туре
📄 Adobe		11/5/03 8:34 PM		File Folder
📙 My eBoo	oks	5/12/03 3:49 PM		File Folder
📄 My Pictu	res	11/19/03 7:52 PM		File Folder
📄 🔂 Security		2/26/03 10:54 PM		File Folder
Files of type:	Cabinet file	\$		
Name:	PANTONE_C_A31_2			
		•	Archive	Cancel

The Open window appears.

- 2. Locate the required folder, and then click **Archive**.
- 3. A cabinet file (compressed ZIP) that contains all files related to the archived job is created at the selected location.



#### Notes:

- The archived job retains its current status (that is, Completed, Failed, Held, or Aborted) and is archived with its Job Parameters and Job History windows.
- When retrieved, the archived job retains the original job name, not the name assigned when archived.

In the **Alerts** window verify that a completed processing of archive message appears.

4. You can now delete the job from the Storage window.

#### To retrieve an archived job:

1. From the Job menu, select Retrieve from Archive.

🚰 Open				×
Look in:	My Documents	\$ t		
	Name	Date	Size	Туре
📋 Adobe		11/5/03 8:34 PM		File Folder
My eBook:	5	5/12/03 3:49 PM	I	File Folder
📄 My Picture	s	11/19/03 7:52 PM	I	File Folder
🔁 Security		2/26/03 10:54 PM	1	File Folder
Files of type:	Cabinet files	\$		Open
0 ttems				
o tono				
		•	Retrieve	Cancel

#### The Open window appears.

2. Locate the archived job, select the related cabinet file, and click **Open**.



**Note:** Find the job using the archived job name.

The selected job appears at the top of the list in the Storage window. It is assigned the status (that is, **Completed**, **Failed**, **Held**, or **Aborted**) it had when it was stored.



#### Notes:

- If required, you can select more than one job to retrieve from archive.
- The files related to the job (for example, PDL) are also retrieved.
- The Job Parameters and Job History windows related to the job prevail.
- The cabinet file is not deleted from its location.
- 3. In the Alerts window, verify that a completed processing of restore message appears.

# Viewing the Job History

Right-click the required job in the Queues window or Storage window, and from the menu select Job History.

The Job History window appears.



For more information about the Job History window, see *Job History* on page 427.

# Job Editor

The **Job Editor** tool enables you to preview an RTP job for inspection before printing. If required, you can delete, move or add pages to a job using this tool. While you navigate to the various pages of a job, you can view the job thumbnails, or, in the case of an imposed job, you can view the actual imposed sheets, including the number of pages on each sheet, their orientation, crop marks and fold marks.

#### To open the job editor:

Right-click any RTP job in the Storage window, and from the menu select Job Preview&Editor.

The Job Editor window appears, displaying the first page of the selected job.

# Navigation buttons



The **Navigation** buttons enable you to display other pages of the current job:



The First Page button - click this button to preview the first page of the job.



٠

\*

- The **Previous Page** button click this button to preview the previously viewed page.
- The **Next Page** button click this button to preview the following page.
- The Last Page button click this button to preview the last page of the job.

**Note:** If the first page of a booklet is accessed, navigation continues to the previous booklet. If the last page of a booklet is accessed, navigation continues to the next booklet.

#### **Preview Buttons**



By default, when you open the Job Editor, the first page of the job is displayed (in **Fit to page** mode). The **Preview** buttons enable you to switch the display mode of the page:



The **Max details** button - click this button to magnify the required area in the preview to maximum details. After magnifying, click the preview to return to its previous view. You can then magnify a different area in the preview. If you navigate to another page, the view returns to **Actual Size**.



The **Actual size** button - click this button to view a preview of the job in its actual size. If you navigate to another page, the view retains the **Actual Size** mode.



**Note:** If the page is larger than the display, use the horizontal and vertical scroll bars.



The **Fit to page** button - click this button to preview full pages. If you navigate to another page, the view retains the **Fit to page** mode.

# Viewing Pages in the Job Editor

The Job Editor window has three tabs; **Booklets**, **Thumbnails** and **Imposed Sheets**, which enable you to switch between views in the Job Editor.

#### The Booklets tab

The **Booklets** tab (default for non-imposed RTP jobs) displays the booklet(s) included in this job and the names/numbers of the pages within each booklet.

#### To display a page in booklets view:

> Double-click the name of a page on the **Booklets** tab to display it.

The page is displayed (and its number in the booklet list is highlighted).



# The Thumbnails tab

The **Thumbnails** tab displays the thumbnails of the selected booklet.

#### To display a job in thumbnails view:

1. Select the **Thumbnails** tab.

A small and approximate version of the job appears.

2. Use the scroll bar, as required, to view all of the pages.



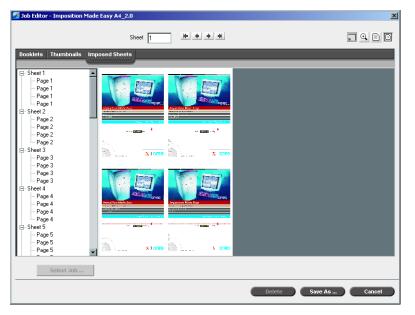
- 3. Use the vertical scroll bar to view additional thumbnails.
- 4. If required, resize the thumbnail area to view thumbnails side by side (use the horizontal scroll bar to view additional thumbnails). Then double-click the thumbnail of the page you wish to display.

The page is displayed.

# The Imposed Sheets Tab

The **Imposed sheets** tab is available only for imposed RTP jobs. This tab displays the imposed sheets along with the number of pages on each sheet and was designed to enable you to view and check your imposition parameters. Therefore, you cannot edit the imposed job using the **Imposed sheets** tab. To edit imposed jobs, use the **Thumbnails** or **Booklets** tabs, and then return to the **Imposed sheets** tab to view the updated imposed layout.

The following example shows the **Imposed Sheet** tab displaying an imposed job. You can view the number of imposed sheets in the job and the number of pages on each sheet.





#### Notes:

- In VI jobs, the booklet number appears in addition to the page number. For example, Booklet 1 Page 15.
- In duplex jobs, each sheet is displayed twice, once for Side A, and once for Side B. For example, Sheet 1 Side A.

#### To display a job in the Imposed sheet view:

- 1. Select the **Thumbnails** or **Booklets** tab.
- 2. Select the required page/thumbnail.
- 3. Select the **Imposed sheets** tab.

The imposed job appears.

4. If you would like to view the job imposition details, click the **Show Info** button. A pop-up window appears displaying the imposition parameters such as the sheet size, trim size, imposition template/ method, margins, gutters and spine trim size.

The related imposition information appears.

	Sheet 1	- + + +		
oklets Thumbnails Imp	oosed Sheets	Sheet Size: A3		
Sheet 1		Trim Size: A4		
- Page 1 Page 1		Step & Repeat 1×2 SIM		
Sheet 2 Page 2		Margins:		
Page 2	Angenetina Mare Kray	Gutters:	0.0 mm	
Sheet 3 Page 3	15 <sup>4</sup> 1979)			
Page 3		Spine Trim Size:	0.0 mm	
Sheet 4	x	0760		
Page 4 Sheet 5	· · · · · · X	creo -		
- Page 5	the second			
Page 5 Sheet 6				
- Page 6	Angeneration Sour Party	INRE		
Page 6 Sheet 7	Angestation was and			
- Page 7 - Page 7				
Sheet 8	1			
Page 8 Page 8	×	crea		
Select Job				

- 5. To close the imposition information, click the **Show Info** button again.
- 6. If you want to edit the job, select the **Booklets** or **Thumbnails** tab.



For more information about editing RTP jobs, see *Editing RTP Jobs* on page 211.



**Note:** If you edit an imposed RTP job and then return to the Imposed sheet view, the view will be updated according to the applied changes.

# **Editing RTP Jobs**

You can edit RTP jobs in the following ways:

- Move pages within the job
- Delete pages from the job
- Insert pages from another job
- Merge entire jobs

# Moving Pages Within a Job

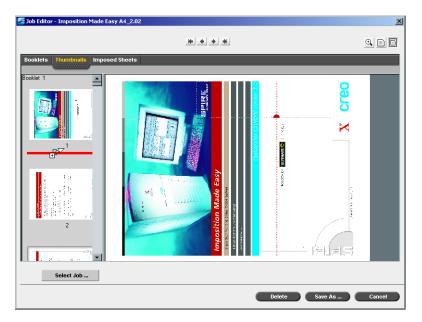
If required, you can change page positions within the job (for example, switch pages 2 and 3).

#### To move pages within a job:

- 1. Click on the page you would like to move.
- 2. Drag the page to the target location.

Note: The red marker indicates where the page will be inserted.





The moved page is inserted in the required location, and the page numbers update accordingly.

3. Click **Save As** to save your changes in the job.

#### **Deleting Pages From the Job**

- 1. Click on the page you would like to delete.
- 2. Click Delete.

The page is deleted and the page numbers update accordingly.

#### **Merging Jobs**

You can copy a page from a job into the job to be edited or copy all the pages from a job and append them to the job to be edited.

#### To merge jobs:

- 1. In the Job Editor window, open the job that appears first in the merged job.
- 2. Click Select Job.

The RTP Jobs window appears.

🚰 RTP Jobs		×
Name	Pages	Size
PANTONE_CVU_A4	2	8.64M
Imposition Made Easy A4_2.02	20	42.39M
	ОК	Cancel



**Note:** Only RTP jobs of which the page size and orientation are identical to that of the job to be edited are displayed.

- 3. Select the job that you want to merge.
- 4. Click **OK**.

The Thumbnails display area splits in two, and the thumbnails of the second job are displayed below those of the job you are editing.



# Copying a Page From a Second Job

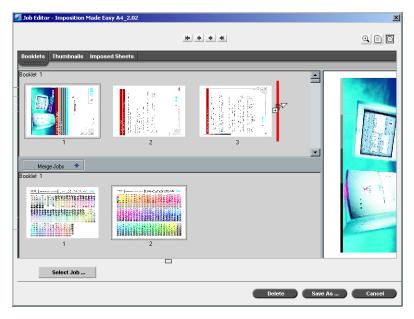
Once the thumbnails of the second job are displayed, you can copy a page insert it into the first job.

# To copy a page from the second job:

- 1. From the second job, select the page you wish to copy.
- 2. Drag the page to the required location in the first job to be edited.

**Note:** The red marker indicates where the page will be inserted.





The copied page is inserted in the required location, and the page numbers update accordingly.

# Copying All the Pages of the Second Job

If required, you may copy all pages of the second job and insert them at the end of the first job.

#### To copy all the pages of the other job:

Once the thumbnails of the second job are displayed, click the Merge Jobs button.

All the pages of the second job are inserted at the end of the first job.

#### Saving the Edited Job

1. In the Job Editor window, click **Save As**.

The following window appears.

Save job As :	
Imposition Made Easy A4_2.0	)2
OK	Cancel

2. Type a new name for the job. Or:

Leave the indicated name to overwrite the job.

3. Click **OK**.

The file is saved in the Storage window, and the Job Editor window closes.



**Note:** Jobs edited using Job Editor can not be re-RIPed. Once a job has been saved in the Job Editor, it is a new RTP file without an associated PDL file. For such jobs, parameters requiring re-RIPing can not be applied.

# Job Accounting

To enable billing, the Accounting feature offers information related to all the jobs that printed successfully via the Spire CXP5000 color server as a tab delimited file. If required, you may filter, sort or print the list, or export the report into a spreadsheet application—for example, Microsoft Excel where you can manipulate the data as required.

# Viewing the Accounting Information

> At any stage of work, from the **Tools** menu select **Accounting**.

The Accounting Viewer window appears, listing information related to all the jobs that printed successfully via the Spire CXP5000 color server.

	Sender	Submitted	Started Printing	Process	Printing		Paper Size	Paper W.
Color_Flowchart_A3	operator		1/5/04, 10:26:57 AM	00:06	00:21	13.55 M		81-105
Plastics_eps_CMYK	operator		1/5/04, 10:26:38 AM	00:02	00:31		Tabloid	81-105
Plastics_eps_CMYK1	operator		1/5/04, 10:26:35 AM	00:01	00:22		Tabloid	81-105
Plastics_eps_CMYK2	operator	1/5/04, 10:18:49 AM	1/5/04, 10:26:31 AM	00:02	00:24		Tabloid	81-105
Tiger_A4	operator	1/5/04, 10:25:08 AM	1/5/04, 10:25:33 AM	00:02	00:16	4.93 M		81-105
Sunflower_A4	operator	1/5/04, 10:25:07 AM	1/5/04, 10:25:32 AM	00:05	00:15	4.29 M		81-105
Q_Test_A4	operator	1/5/04, 10:25:07 AM	1/5/04, 10:25:26 AM	00:07	00:14	10.81 M		81-105
Golfer_A4	operator	1/5/04, 10:25:06 AM	1/5/04, 10:25:13 AM	00:04	00:22	2.26 M	A4	81-105
ATF_A3	operator	1/4/04, 2:56:09 PM	1/4/04, 3:04:29 PM	00:08	02:39	27.93 M	Tabloid	81-105
ATF_A3	operator	1/4/04, 2:39:13 PM	1/4/04, 3:04:29 PM	00:07	02:37	27.9 M	Tabloid	81-105

Each row in the Accounting report contains information related to a specific job.



#### Notes:

- To see additional columns, use the horizontal scroll bar.
- By default, all the jobs that were handled during the past 3 months are listed. In the Settings window, under **Preferences**>**Messages**, you can specify how long information remains before being overwritten. In addition, you can remove all the information from the window whenever required.

The columns indicate the following information.

Table 8: Description	n of columns	in the A	Accounting	Viewer
----------------------	--------------	----------	------------	--------

Column name	Indicates the
Job Title	Original name of the file related to this job (that is, without the extension)
Sender	User name of the system from which this job originated
Submitted	Date and time the job was first submitted into the Spire CXP5000 color server

Column name	Indicates the
Started Printing	Date and time on which the job first started printing
Processing Time	Total time during which the job was processed
Printing Time	Total time during which the job was printed
Job Size	Job size in MB
Paper Size	Size of the media set for the job— for example, Letter, A3, A4
Paper Weight	Paper weight in gs/m
Coating	Paper stock coating status (Coated or Uncoated)
Sets	Actual number of printed copies
Job B/W Pages	Number of black-and-white pages in the original PDL file
Inserts	Number of pages inserts
Job Color Pages	Number of color pages in the original PDL file
Total Pages Printed	Number of pages that were printed
Purged B/W	Number of B/W pages that were already in the paper path, and were cleared due to job abort, or paper jam
Purged Color	Number of color pages that were already in the paper path, and were cleared due to job abort, or paper jam

Table 8: Description of columns in the Accounting Viewer

Column name	Indicates the
Page Exceptions	Existence of exceptions in the job (Yes/ No)
Account	[Optional] string of text, if such was entered in Job Parameters
Recipient	[Optional] string of text, if such was entered in Job Parameters
Job Comments	[Optional] string of text, if such was entered in Job Parameters

Table 8: Description of columns in the Accounting Viewer

# Setting the Accounting/Message Viewer

By default, all the jobs that were handled during the past 90 days are listed in the Spire CXP5000 color server Accounting window. Also, all jobs that were handled during the past 56 days are listed in the Spire CXP5000 color server Message Viewer. You can specify how long information remains before being overwritten.



To change the Accounting/Message Viewer log setup, see *Messages* on page 422.

# Printing and Exporting the Accounting Log

You can save the Accounting information to an ASCII Tab delimited file.

#### To export the accounting information:

- 1. Filter the information as required.
- 2. Click Export.

- 3. Locate the folder in which to save the report.
- 4. Click Save.

The log is saved as a Tab delimited text file in the specified location.

#### Notes:

- The log includes all the columns (even those that were hidden), listed in the original order and sorting.
- To export specific rows, select them before clicking **Export.** The exported log will include only these rows.
- The exported data is not deleted from the Accounting report on the Spire CXP5000 color server (that is, it will still be displayed in the Job Accounting window).
- 5. If required, open the \*.txt file in a text editor or in a spreadsheet application—for example, Microsoft Excel—and manipulate the data.

You can print the Accounting information (filtered and sorted) to any connected printer.

#### To print the accounting log:

1. Filter and sort the report as required.



**Note:** To print specific rows, select the required rows now. The printed report will include only these rows.

2. Click Print List.

The Export Accounting window appears.

🍯 Print					? ×
General Layout	Paper/Quality	1			
Select Printer-					
	3	1	1		
Add Printer	Acrobat Distiller	POSQA_SF_7_ adios		POSQA S	
Status: Re	ady		Stal	tus: tus:	
Location: Comment:	auy			Find	Printer
- Page Range - ⊙ All C Selection	C Current Pa		Number of	copies: 1	÷
C Pages:			Collate	112	2 3 3
				Print	Cancel

The Print window appears.

3. Set the printing options as required and click **OK**.

The data is printed according to the current filtering and sorting.



#### Notes:

- To fit the maximum amount of columns on the page, print using Landscape orientation (if your printer supports it).
- The report includes all the columns (including those that were hidden), listed in the original order.

# Managing Virtual Printers

A **virtual printer** is a printer published on the network with specific parameters set for processing and printing on the Spire CXP5000 color server. The Spire CXP5000 color server contains a mechanism that automatically installs the published virtual printers on your client workstation with the PPD and suitable printer driver.

The Spire CXP5000 color server is predefined with three virtual printers:

#### ProcessPrint

Files sent to this printer are automatically processed and printed to the printer through the Spire CXP5000 color server.

#### ProcessStore

Files sent to this printer are automatically processed and stored in the Storage window of the Spire CXP5000 color server. You can later submit the jobs to be printed, or change the parameters of a job and resubmit it for processing.

#### SpoolStore

Files sent to this printer are automatically stored in the Spire CXP5000 color server's Storage window until the print operator submits them for processing and printing.

If a job that is sent from the client, or downloaded to a particular virtual printer, contains preset parameters from the PPD, these options overwrite the parameters set in the virtual printer for that job. The **Printer Default** options defined in the PPD use the default parameters set for that particular virtual printer.

#### Adding a new printer

When adding a new virtual printer you can specify if it is published on the network and if the virtual printer parameters will override the PPD parameters.

In addition, based on predefined paper sets, you can specify that a virtual printer supports dynamic page exceptions and select the required paper sets (up to 4 paper sets for each virtual printer). A job that has embedded dynamic page exceptions commands, and is submitted for print using a dynamic page exceptions virtual printer, is printed using the defined paper sets.

#### To add a new printer:

1. From the Tools menu, select Resource Center.

The Resource Center window opens.

itle	Published	Override PPD	Dynamic page	Comments
REO-C739F9881E_TimesEmulate	Yes	No	No	
REO-C739F9881E_VI Cut&Stack	Yes	No	No	
REO-C739F9881E_Z-Folds	Yes	No	No	
REO-C739F9881E_4Up Imposed	Yes	No	No	
REO-C739F9881E_2Up Imposed	Yes	No	No	
REO-C739F9881E_Dynaminc VI	Yes	No	Yes	
REO-C739F9881E_B&W Only	Yes	Yes	No	
REO-C739F9881E_SpoolStore	Yes	No	No	
REO-C739F9881E_ProcessStore	Yes	No	No	
REO-C739F9881E_ProcessPrint	Yes	No	No	
1				

2. From the **Resource** list, select **Virtual Printers**.

+

#### 3. Click the **Add** button.

The Add New Virtual Printer dialog box appears.

Add Virtual Printer	×			
Name: Based on:	NewPrinter			
Publish on the network  Override PPD parameters  Support dynamic page exceptions Comments:				
Edit				
	OK Cancel			

4. In the **Name** box, type a name for the new printer you want to add. Or:

From the **Based on** list, may select an existing printer with similar settings.

5. In the **Comments** box, type any comment regarding the virtual printer parameters (optional).

- 6. The **Publish the printer on the network** check box is selected by default. Clear the check box if you do not want to publish the printer on the network.
- 7. Select the **Override PPD parameters** check box if you would like the Virtual Printer settings to override the PPD parameter selection.
- 8. If you would like this printer to support dynamic page exceptions, select the **Support dynamic page exceptions** check box.



For more information about dynamic page exceptions, see *Dynamic Page Exceptions* on page 279.

9. Edit the Job Parameters of your new virtual printer.



For more information about editing printer settings, see *Editing an Existing Printer* on page 223.



Ø

**Note:** If you don't edit the Job Parameters, the settings of the new virtual printer are taken from the printer on which it was based.

10. Click **OK** in the Add New Virtual Printer dialog box.

The new printer appears in the **Printer** list.

#### **Editing an Existing Printer**

#### To edit an existing printer:

1. In the Virtual Printers area, select a printer from the list and click Edit.

Edit ¥irtual Printer		×	1
blauer	ProcessPrint		
Name:	Processmini		
Based on:		\$	
Publish on the netw     Override PPD param     Support dynamic pa	ieters		
Comments:			
Edit			
	ок	Cancel	

#### 2. Click Edit.

The Job Parameters window appears.

- 3. Select the required parameters and change their settings according to your requirements.
- 4. Click **OK** to return to the Edit Virtual Printer dialog box.
- 5. Click **Save** to save the new settings.

#### **Deleting an Existing Printer**

 In the Virtual Printers window, select a printer from the list and click the **Delete** button.

Or:

I

Right-click the printer and select **Remove**.



2. In the message that appears, click Yes to delete the designated printer.

# Job Flow

The **Job Flow** parameter in the Job Parameters window **Services** tab enables the Spire CXP5000 color server operator to specify a job flow for a job that is imported to the Spire CXP5000 color server from the network or from the Spire CXP5000 color server folders.

b Parameters						
					laurithe standard days	
Job name: Golfer_Lette	r3 Virti	uai printe	r name: V4_SPIRECO	LORSE Su	bmitted: Mar 1	0,13:57:19
	₽	9		٨		Ð
int Settings Paper Stoc	k Print Quality	Color	Imposition		Finishing	Exceptions
Parameters	Values		Job flow options			
Job deletion	Save					
Substitute fonts	Yes		Process & Print			
APR	High		Process & Stor	e		
Job flow	Process & Print		Spool & Store			
Compression	Normal					
Preflight	Skip					
Job info						
Split to booklets	No					
PDF optimization	No					
			Submit	) Si	ave	Cancel

- 1. In the Job Parameters window **Services** tab, select the **Job flow** parameter.
- 2. Select the desired job flow option:
  - □ **Process & Print**: to set the Spire CXP5000 color server to RIP the PDL files, print them, and store them in the **Storage** window (unless the **Job Deletion** parameter is set to **Delete after Complete**)
  - □ **Process & Store**: to RIP the PDL files and move them to the **Storage** window as RTP jobs



**Note:** The **Spool & Store** option (the Spire CXP5000 color server places the PDL files directly into the **Storage** window without processing them) is disabled and can be defined only through the PPD parameters of the virtual printer.

3. Click Save.

# Job Ticket Report

The Job Ticket report contains all information from the Job Parameters window (including Job Parameters window title bar data). The Job Ticket report presents the complete job parameters on a single sheet and may be exported or printed as a hard copy.

This feature is useful for:

- Updating the Hot-Line service on Job Ticket Report data when a question arises.
- Retaining job parameters when the same job is planned to be reprinted in the future.
- Providing the client / customer a follow-up tool regarding printed Job Parameter information.

#### To display the job ticket report:

1. Right-click a job in the Storage window, and from the menu select **Job Ticket Report**.

The Job Ticket Report window appears.



 You can export or print the report by clicking Print or Export. The Job Ticket Report is exported as a text file. This page is intentionally left blank.

# 6

# **Production Printing**

Imposition Workflow	230
High-Resolution Workflow	252
PDF Workflow	261
Page Exceptions	267
Dynamic Page Exceptions	279
The Finishing Tab	289
Fonts	297

# Imposition Workflow

Imposition is the process of positioning page images on sheets of paper in the printer or in a digital printing press. It is part of the process of producing finished documents.

In addition to page images, you can add various marks to the sheets to aid the production process. These marks show where the paper should be folded or trimmed.

Imposition does not affect the content of the individual page but rather the placement of the pages on a press sheet. Imposition is a combination of content and layout. The content is the pages that should be printed and the layout is the location of the page on the sheet and the printing marks, crop marks and fold marks.

Whenever possible, you should define imposition settings before RIPing a job. Changing key imposition settings—for example, template settings—post RIP may result in inefficient re-RIPing of your job.

In the Spire CXP5000 color server, imposition parameters are set in the **Imposition** tab, and page exceptions are set in the **Exceptions** tab.



For more information about the **Imposition** tab and the **Exception** tab, see *The Imposition Tab* on page 231, and *Setting Exceptions for Imposed Jobs* on page 271.

You can use a Spire CXP5000 color server virtual printer to predefine your imposition settings. When you create a new virtual printer or edit an existing one, define the imposition settings for that particular printer. These settings become the printer's default options and are applied to all jobs that use the printer.



For more information about virtual printers, see *Spire CXP5000 Color Server Network Printers* on page 13, and *Managing Virtual Printers* on page 220.

# The Imposition Tab

The **Imposition** tab enables you to set job options related to the positioning, folding, trimming and binding of pages.

**Note:** If you use a dynamic page exceptions virtual printer to print a job, the **Imposition** tab is unavailable, see *Dynamic Page Exceptions* on page 279.

#### Imposition Method

ob Parameters		×
Job name: Fern_A4	Virtual print	er name: V4_CXP5000_Proc Submitted: Feb 23 ,13:29:43
rint Settings Paper Stock	Print Quality Color	Imposition         Imposit
Parameters	Values	Imposition method options
Imposition method	None	O None
Sizes	A4_Un_81-105,A4	
Template	< Select >	Step & Repeat
Margins	0.0, 0.0, 0.0	Cut & Stack
Marks & bleed		Saddle Stitch
Creep	0.0, 0.0	Perfect Bound
		Submit Save Cancel

The **Imposition Method** parameter specifies how printed sheets are finished. You to choose a method according to the finished format that you need.

- In the Imposition method options area, select one of the following options:
  - □ None: This is the default option. If you select None, the imposition parameters are unavailable and the thumbnail viewer does not display an image.

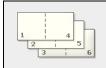
□ **Step & Repeat:** Use this option for printing multiple copies of the same image so it fills up a larger sheet. This method is used mainly for printing business cards.





#### Notes:

- When you use the Step & Repeat template for VI jobs, the system prints the job in Z-Sorting mode. This mode enables imposed VI jobs to be sorted for Cut & Stack finishing.
- It is possible to use specific **Step & Repeat** templates to print several different images on one sheet.
- □ **Cut & Stack:** Use this option to enable **Step & Repeat** jobs to be printed, cut, stacked and bound in the most efficient manner, while preserving the original sorting. A job's pages, booklets, or books are sorted in a Z-shape. In other words, each stack of pages is sorted in consecutive order. When stacks are piled one on top of another, the entire job is already sorted up or down.





Note: When you use the Step & Repeat template with the Cut & Stack sub-option, the Exceptions tab is unavailable.

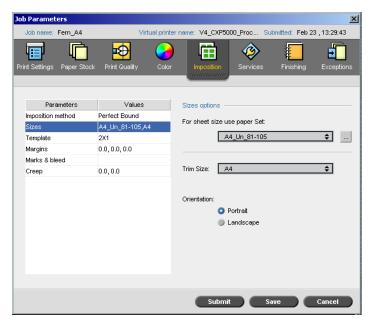
□ **Saddle Stitch**: Use this option for a book-finishing technique where the pages of a book are attached through stitching or stapling in the spine fold —for example, brochures.



Perfect Bound: Use this option for a book-finishing technique where the pages of a book are attached through trimming of the spine fold, roughening the edges of the gathered pages and gluing them together —for example, hardcover books.

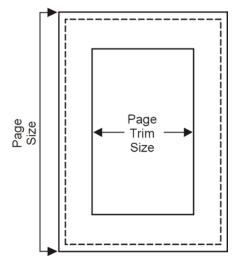


# Sizes



The **Sizes** parameter uses the following terminology:

- **Paper set** defines the paper stock attributes (paper size, type, weight and coating) on which the imposed job will be printed. The Spire CXP5000 color server enables you to define all the paper stock settings of an imposed job on the **Imposition** tab with no need to switch to the **Paper Stock** tab and define the paper stock settings there.
- Trim size is the size of the finished, trimmed document.



You can adjust your page size by adjusting the trim size.



**Note:** If you set the trim size to be smaller than the page size set in the DTP application, some of the data is cropped. Setting a larger trim size results in a larger border on the printed page.

• Orientation specifies the orientation, Portrait or Landscape, for the trim size. If the wrong orientation is specified, an unsuitable template might be selected and the job might be cropped as a result.

#### To set the size options:

1. In the **For sheet size use paper set** list, select the required paper set. If you need to add a new paper set, click the **browse** button.



For more information about adding paper sets, see *Managing Paper Sets* on page 168.

2. In the **Trim Size** list, select the required trim size. If you select **Custom**, define a custom trim size and type the required Height in the **H** box, and the required Width in the **W** box.

Trim Size:	Cu	stom		\$	
	H:	10.0	W.	8.0	in

3. Select the required **Orientation** for the trim size.

#### Template

lob Parameters		X
Job name: Fern_A4	Virtual printe	er name: V4_CXP5000_Proc Submitted: Feb 23 , 13:29:43
Print Settings Paper Stock	Print Quality Color	Imposition Services Finishing Exceptions
Parameters	Values	Template options
Imposition method	Step & Repeat	Category: 🧿 System 🕘 User-defined
Sizes	A4_Un_81-105,A4	
Template	1X1	Template: 1X1 🜩
Margins	0.0, 0.0, 0.0	Layout: Duplex HTH Rotated 🗢
Marks & bleed		
Creep	0.0, 0.0	Fit to sheet size
		1 + 2 +
		Submit Save Cancel

The **Template** parameter includes a list of available templates and their layout options. Each imposition method has its own specific template choices. For example, if you change your imposition method from **Perfect bound** to **Step & Repeat**, the template you initially selected no longer fits the new method. When required, the Spire CXP5000 color server automatically substitutes a suitable template for your new method and notifies you that the change has been made.

#### To select a template:

 From the Category options, select System to choose a predefined Spire CXP5000 color server imposition template. Or:

Select **User-defined** to choose a user defined Spire CXP5000 color server imposition template.



For more information about user defined templates, see *Imposition Templates* on page 242.

- 2. In the **Template** list, select an available template.
- 3. In the Layout list, select the required layout.

Note: If you select the User Defined option, Layout is unavailable.

4. Select the **Fit to sheet** check box to proportionally increase or decrease the layout.

#### **Previewing the Template Layout**

When you choose a template, you need to account for other job parameters—for example, **Trim Size**, **Bleed**, **Margin**, **Gutters**, and **Paper Size**. In the **Template Options** area, you can preview the template layout of your job and check your imposition settings. For example, green arrows indicate that the template layout is rotated, and blue and black arrows indicate the direction of the pages on the sheet. The sequence of pages is indicated by the page numbers.

Template op	tions	
Category:	🗿 System	User-defined
Template:	2X2	¢
Layout:	Duplex	\$
📃 Fit to sh	eet size	
	▲ ▲ 4 5	3 6 • •

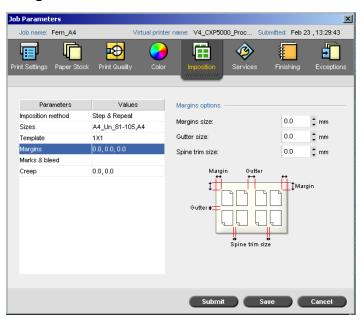
If the parameters conflict, you will see where the conflicts exist when you preview the template layout:

- Red corners indicate that the trim size is bigger than the sheet size.
- Yellow corners indicate unsuitable margin settings—for example, if the margin size is unsuitable.
- Dotted lines indicate conflicting trim size settings —for example, A3 trim for Step & Repeat 2x2 Duplex template— and template settings.



**Note:** You can preview the imposed job in the Job Editor window, **Imposed sheets** tab, see *Viewing Pages in the Job Editor* on page 206.

#### Margins



The **Margins** parameter enables you to adjust the spaces between the outside edges of pages and the edges of the sheet on which they are printed. Margin settings should suit finishing equipment and requirements. Confirm binding parameters with your binder when planning your sheet.

The Margins parameter uses the following terminology:

- The **Margins size** is the distance between the outside edges of the sheet and the edges of the pages printed on the sheet. The value that you set is not the exact distance. The Spire CXP5000 color server calculates the exact distance in accordance with other imposition parameters.
- The **Gutter size** is the inside space between pairs of pages on a sheet. When folded into a signature / booklet, the gutter allows space for trimming.



**Note:** For specific sheet templates, there may be no gutter at all or only one gutter—for example, in two up, there is no gutter. In these cases, the gutter size setting is ignored.

• The **Spine trim size** is the space between adjacent pages on a printed sheet. When the sheet is folded into a signature / booklet, this space allows you to roughen the edges for perfect binding.



**Note:** You use spine trim size with the perfect bound method only. If the saddle stitch method is used, this value is set to zero and the pages are printed side by side without any space between them.

#### To set the margins:

> In the Margins options area, type the required margin sizes.



**Note:** Units of measurement (mm or inches) reflect system configuration and are selected in the Settings window, see *Localization* on page 415.

Job Parameters		×
Job name: Fern_A4	Virtual pri	nter name: V4_CXP5000_Proc Submitted: Feb 23 , 13:29:43
Print Settings Paper Stock	Print Quality Col	or Imposition Services Finishing Exceptions
Parameters	Values	Marks & bleed options
Imposition method	Saddle Stitch	
Sizes	A4_Un_81-105,A4	Marks:
Template	2X1	Crop marks
Margins	0.0, 0.0, 0.0	Both sides of sheet
Marks & bleed		Fold marks
Creep	0.0, 0.0	Bleed:
		<ul> <li>Maximum bleed</li> </ul>
		Custom Bleed Size: 0.0 <sup>+</sup> mm
		Bleed Size Trim Size ← Crop Marks
		Submit Save Cancel

The **Marks & bleed** parameter enables you to mark where trimming and folding should occur.

When you set bleed options, you extend part or all of the printed image beyond the trimming boundary. The bleed options ensure that an inaccurate trim setting will not leave an undesired white space at the edge of the page. The bleed options produce sharp page boundaries with color that extends all the way to the edge of the page.

#### To select marks and bleed options:

Marks & bleed

- 1. In the Marks area, select one of the following options:
  - a. To print the lines that indicate where the sheet should be cropped, select the Crop Marks check box.To print the crop marks on both sides of the page, select the Both sides of sheet check box.

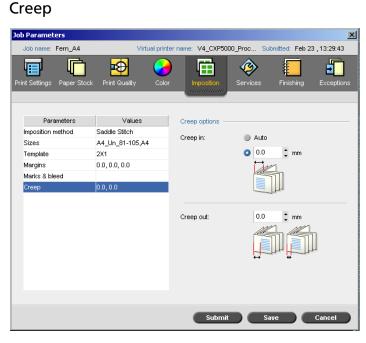
b. To print the lines that indicate where the sheet should be folded, select the **Fold Marks** check box.

#### Note:

- Crop marks are placed according to the **Trim Size** option. A minimum of 6 mm is required for crop marks, and 10 mm for fold marks.
- If your job already includes crop marks incorporated in the DTP application, you do not need to add crop marks here. If you do add crop marks, both sets of crop marks can be printed.
- If you want to use crop marks incorporated in the DTP application, make sure that enough space is left around your page in the PostScript file so that the page prints with crop marks.
- 2. In the **Bleed** area, select one of the following options:
  - a. **Maximum bleed:** Use this option to extend the bleed to the sheet fold lines.
  - b. **Custom bleed size:** Type the required bleed size in millimeters.

#### Note:

- You cannot extend the bleed size beyond the sheet fold lines. Bleed does not affect the position of crop.
- Bleeding must be defined in your DTP application in order for the Spire CXP5000 color server to be able to apply the bleed options.



Creep is a common problem in saddle-stitch jobs When signatures are inserted inside one another, the signatures inserted last are the farthest from the center of the booklet. As a result, the outer edges of the inner pages creep past the outer pages.



**Note:** It is recommended that you use a border around all documents when you use creep.

The **Creep** parameter uses the following terminology:

• **Creep in** specifies the amount of movement towards the spine applied to the center two pages and their backs (in other words the pages that require the most amount of compensation).

An ever-decreasing amount of movement is automatically applied from the center quartet of pages back towards the outside four pages of the job (in other words every quartet of pages is moved by an amount less than the previous quartet).



**Note:** The outside two pages and their backs are not moved (the value 0.0 is used).

• **Creep out** is used when you find that the page images are too close to the spine. This problem can be resolved by selecting a value for **Creep out**. This will move all the pages of the job further out towards the outside margin (away from the spine) by the specified amount. This movement takes place before the **Creep in** value is applied.

#### To set the creep options:

- 1. In the **Creep in** area, select **Auto** to automatically set the **Creep in** based on paper stock weight
  - Or:

Type the required amount for **Creep in**.

2. In the **Creep out** area, type the required amount.



**Note:** Units of measurement (mm or inches) are set in the Settings window, see *Localization* on page 415.

# **Imposition Templates**

There are three types of templates you can use in the Spire CXP5000 color server:

- Collating templates, see *Collating Templates* on page 243
- Predefined imposition templates, see *Spire CXP5000 Color Server Predefined Imposition Templates* on page 243
- User defined imposition templates, see User Defined Imposition Templates on page 249

#### **Collating Templates**

The step & repeat method contains a subset of templates called collating templates. Collating templates are used when jobs with different page images are used to fill up a larger sheet. Unlike regular step & repeat, where the same images are printed several times on a sheet, with collating templates, several images are printed on the same sheet. Collated templates are used for one-time job print runs and are of the form P1-P2-P3, indicating the job pages to be printed on a sheet.

# Spire CXP5000 Color Server Predefined Imposition Templates

The Spire CXP5000 color server uses the following predefined imposition templates.



**Note:** DUP refers to Duplex and SIM refers to Simplex.

Step & Repeat	Cut & Stack	Saddle Stitch	Perfect Bound
1×1 DUP HTH	1×1 DUP HTH	1×2 HTT	1×2 HTT
1×1 DUP HTH Rotated	1×1 DUP HTH Rotated	1×2 HTT Rotated	1×2 HTT Rotated
1×1 DUP HTT	1×1 DUP HTT	2×1	2×1
1×1 DUP HTT Rotated	1×1 DUP HTT Rotated	2×1 Rotated	2×1 Rotated
1×1 SIM	1×1 SIM	2×2	2×2
1×1 SIM Rotated	1×1 SIM Rotated	2×2 HTT	2×2 HTT
1×2 DUP HTH	1×2 DUP HTH	2×2 Rotated	2×2 Rotated
1×2 DUP HTH Rotated	1×2 DUP HTH Rotated	2×2 HTT Rotated	2×2 HTT Rotated
1×2 DUP HTT	1×2 DUP HTT	4×2	4×2
1×2 DUP HTT Rotated	1×2 DUP HTT Rotated	4×2 Rotated	4×2 Rotated
1×2 SIM	1×2 SIM		
1×2 SIM Rotated	1×2 SIM Rotated		

Step & Repeat	Cut & Stack	Saddle Stitch	Perfect Bound
1×2 North South	1×2 North South		
1×3 DUP HTH	1×3 DUP HTH		
1×3 DUP HTH Rotated	1×3 DUP HTH Rotated		
1×3 DUP HTT	1×3 DUP HTT		
1×3 DUP HTT Rotated	1×3 DUP HTT Rotated		
1×3 SIM	1×3 SIM		
1×3 SIM Rotated	1×3 SIM Rotated		
2×1 DUP HTH	2×1 DUP HTH		
2×1 DUP HTH Rotated	2×1 DUP HTH Rotated		
2×1 DUP HTT	2×1 DUP HTT		
2×1 DUP HTT Rotated	2×1 DUP HTT Rotated		
2×1 SIM	2×1 SIM		
2×1 SIM Rotated	2×1 SIM Rotated		
2×1 North South	2×1 North South		
2×2 DUP HTH	2×2 DUP HTH		
2×2 DUP HTH Rotated	2×2 DUP HTH Rotated		
2×2 DUP HTT	2×2 DUP HTT		
2×2 DUP HTT Rotated	2×2 DUP HTT Rotated		
2×2 SIM	2×2 SIM		
2×2 SIM Rotated	2×2 SIM Rotated		
2×4 SIM	2×4 SIM		
2×4 SIM Rotated	2×4 SIM Rotated		

Step & Repeat	Cut & Stack	Saddle Stitch	Perfect Bound
2×4 DUP	2×4 DUP		
2×4 DUP Rotated	2×4 DUP Rotated		
2×5 DUP HTH	2×5 DUP HTH		
2×5 DUP HTH Rotated	2×5 DUP HTH Rotated		
2×5 DUP HTT	2×5 DUP HTT		
2×5 DUP HTT Rotated	2×5 DUP HTT Rotated		
2×5 SIM	2×5 SIM		
2×5 SIM Rotated	2×5 SIM Rotated		
3×1 DUP HTH	3×1 DUP HTH		
3×1 DUP HTH Rotated	3×1 DUP HTH Rotated		
3×1 DUP HTT	3×1 DUP HTT		
3×1 DUP HTT Rotated	3×1 DUP HTT Rotated		
3×1 SIM	3×1 SIM		
3×1 SIM Rotated	3×1 SIM Rotated		
3v2 DUP HTH	3×2 DUP HTH		
3×2 DUP HTH Rotated	3×2 DUP HTH Rotated		
3×2 DUP HTT	3×2 DUP HTT		
3×2 DUP HTT Rotated	3×2 DUP HTT Rotated		
3×2 SIM	3×2 SIM		
3×2 SIM Rotated	3×2 SIM Rotated		
3×3 SIM	3×3 SIM		
3×3 SIM Rotated	3×3 SIM Rotated		

Step & Repeat	Cut & Stack	Saddle Stitch	Perfect Bound
3×3 DUP	3×3 DUP		
3×3 DUP Rotated	3×3 DUP Rotated		
3×4 DUP HTH	3×4 DUP HTH		
3×4 DUP HTH Rotated	3×4 DUP HTH Rotated		
3×4 DUP HTT	3×4 DUP HTT		
3×4 DUP HTT Rotated	3×4 DUP HTT Rotated		
3×4 SIM	3×4 SIM		
3×4 SIM Rotated	3×4 SIM Rotated		
3×8 DUP HTH	3×8 DUP HTH		
3×8 DUP HTH Rotated	3×8 DUP HTH Rotated		
3×8 DUP HTT	3×8 DUP HTT		
3×8 DUP HTT Rotated	3×8 DUP HTT Rotated		
3×8 SIM	3×8 SIM		
3×8 SIM Rotated	3×8 SIM Rotated		
3×9 SIM	3×9 SIM		
3×9 SIM Rotated	3×9 SIM Rotated		
3×9 DUP	3×9 DUP		
3×9 DUP Rotated	3×9 DUP Rotated		
4×2 DUP HTH	4×2 DUP HTH		
4×2 DUP HTH Rotated	4×2 DUP HTH Rotated		
4×2 DUP HTT	4×2 DUP HTT		
4×2 DUP HTT Rotated	4×2 DUP HTT Rotated		

Table 9:	Predefined	imposition	templates

Step & Repeat	Cut & Stack	Saddle Stitch	Perfect Bound
4×2 SIM	4×2 SIM		
4×2 SIM Rotated	4×2 SIM Rotated		
4×3 DUP HTH	4×3 DUP HTH		
4×3 DUP HTH Rotated	4×3 DUP HTH Rotated		
4×3 DUP HTT	4×3 DUP HTT		
4×3 DUP HTT Rotated	4×3 DUP HTT Rotated		
4×3 SIM	4×3 SIM		
4×3 SIM Rotated	4×3 SIM Rotated		
4×4 HTH DUP	4v4 HTH DUP		
4×4 DUP HTH Rotated	4×4 DUP HTH Rotated		
4×4 HTT DUP	4×4 HTT DUP		
4×4 DUP HTT Rotated	4×4 DUP HTT Rotated		
4×4 SIM	4×4 SIM		
4×4 SIM Rotated	4x4 SIM Rotated		
4×5 SIM	4×5 SIM		
4×5 SIM Rotated	4×5 SIM Rotated		
4×5 DUP	4×5 DUP		
4×5 DUP Rotated	4×5 DUP Rotated		
5×2 DUP HTH	5×2 DUP HTH		
5×2 DUP HTH Rotated	5×2 DUP HTH Rotated		
5×2 DUP HTT	5×2 DUP HTT		
5x2 DUP HTT Rotated	5×2 DUP HTT Rotated		

Step & Repeat	Cut & Stack	Saddle Stitch	Perfect Bound
5×2 SIM	5×2 SIM		
5×2 SIM Rotated	5×2 SIM Rotated		
5×4 SIM	5×4 SIM		
5×4 SIM Rotated	5×4 SIM Rotated		
5×4 DUP	5×4 DUP		
5×4 DUP Rotated	5×4 DUP Rotated		
5×5 DUP HTH	5×5 DUP HTH		
5×5 DUP HTH Rotated	5×5 DUP HTH Rotated		
5×5 DUP HTT	5×5 DUP HTT		
5×5 DUP HTT Rotated	5×5 DUP HTT Rotated		
5×5 SIM	5×5 SIM		
5×5 SIM Rotated	5×5 SIM Rotated		
5×6 SIM	5×6 SIM		
5×6 SIM Rotated	5×6 SIM Rotated		
5×6 DUP	5×6 DUP		
5×6 DUP Rotated	5×6 DUP Rotated		
6×5 SIM	6×5 SIM		
6×5 SIM Rotated	6×5 SIM Rotated		
6×5 DUP	6×5 DUP		
6×5 DUP Rotated	6×5 DUP Rotated		
8×3 DUP HTH	8×3 DUP HTH		
8×3 DUP HTH Rotated	8×3 DUP HTH Rotated		

Step & Repeat	Cut & Stack	Saddle Stitch	Perfect Bound
8×3 DUP HTT	8×3 DUP HTT		
8×3 DUP HTT Rotated	8×3 DUP HTT Rotated		
8×3 SIM	8×3 SIM		
8×3 SIM Rotated	8×3 SIM Rotated		
9×3 SIM	9×3 SIM		
9×3 SIM Rotated	9×3 SIM Rotated		
9×3 DUP	9×3 DUP		
9×3 DUP Rotated	9×3 DUP Rotated		

# **User Defined Imposition Templates**

The **Imposition Template** area enables you to import and manage user defined imposition templates that were created in a stand-alone application—for example, Ultimate *in*Spire.

#### To import a user defined imposition template:

1. On the toolbar, click the **Resource Center** button.



- Resource Center
   X

   Resource:
   Imposition Templates \$

   P1-P2 SIM
   Imposition Template: Rows: Columns:

   P1-P3 SIM Rotated
   Imposition Layout:

   P1-P3 DUP
   Locked Templates:

   Date:
   Date:
- 2. In the Resource list, select Imposition Templates.

3. Click Import.

		~	
Name	Date	Size	Туре
P1-P2 SIM Rotated.sig	12/28/03 9:24 PM	5 KB S	
P1-P2 SIM.sig	12/28/03 9:24 PM	4 KB S	
P1-P2-P3 SIM Rotated.sig	12/28/03 9:24 PM	6 KB S	IG File
P1-P2-P3 SIM.sig	12/28/03 9:24 PM	6 KB S	ilG File
P1-P3 DUP Rotated.sig	12/28/03 9:24 PM	5 KB S	IG File
P1-P3 DUP.sig	12/28/03 9:24 PM	4 KB S	IG File
P1-P3-P5 DUP Rotated.sig	12/28/03 9:24 PM	6 KB S	ilG File
P1-P3-P5 DUP.sig	12/28/03 9:24 PM	6 KB S	ilG File
iles of type: Template Files	\$		

4. In the Open dialog box, locate the user defined template you want to import.

	5.	If you want to lock the template, select the <b>lock job ticket</b> check box.
K		<b>Note:</b> If the template is locked, you cannot set imposition parameters in the Job Parameters window.
	6.	Click Import.
	То	rename a user defined imposition template:
Ð	1.	On the toolbar, click the <b>Resource Center</b> button.
	2.	In the Resource list, select Imposition Templates.
X	3.	Select a user defined imposition template from the list, and click <b>Rename</b> .
		Rename       Rename Imposition Template       P1-P3-P5 DUP       Cancel
	4.	Type a new name for the user defined imposition template.
	5.	Click <b>OK</b> .
		The renamed user defined imposition template appears in the imposition template list.
	То	delete a user defined imposition template:
A state of the	1.	On the toolbar, click the <b>Resource Center</b> button.
	2.	In the Resource list, select Imposition Templates.
-	3.	Select a user defined imposition template from the list, and click <b>Remove</b> .

# **Editing Imposition Jobs**

The Job Editor enables you to inspect the layout of your imposed RTP job. You can move pages within a job, delete pages in a job, insert pages of another job, or merge two entire jobs.



**Note:** You can use Adobe Acrobat to edit pre-Rip jobs. For post-Rip jobs, you can only edit RTP files. If you make changes to a job in the Job Editor and the job requires re-RIPing, the job will fail because there is no original PDL file to re-RIP.

When you insert or replace pages, the new page should have the same size and orientation attributes as the old page.

To replace a page that is rotated 180°, rotate the page in the DTP application and resubmit it to the Spire CXP5000 color server. You can use Adobe Acrobat to rotate PDL files.



For more information about the Job Editor, see Editing RTP Jobs on page 211.

# **High-Resolution Workflow**

Working with high-resolution files during the design and page layout process can often times be long and inefficient. Processing and manipulating large files and graphics can be very time consuming. To speed up production, it is common to work with low-resolution files until the RIPing stage.

The Spire CXP5000 color server provides Creo APR (Automatic Picture Replacement) and supports Open Prepress Interface (OPI) image replacement workflows for replacing low-resolution files with high-resolution files during the RIP.



High-Resolution Image File, 5.23 MB



Low-Resolution Image File, 306 KB

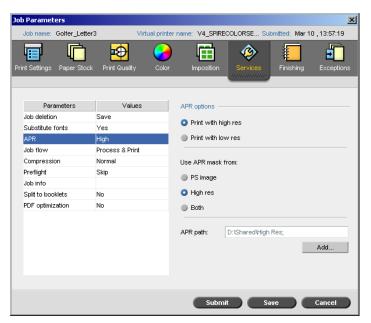
### Creo APR

Creo APR is an image replacement method for PostScript files. Creo APR is a standardized set of file instructions that specify how an external high-resolution image is placed in a PostScript file as it goes to RIP. The instructions specify the type, size, position, rotation, cropping and location of the high-resolution images themselves.

When you send your PostScript file to be processed, the Spire CXP5000 color server checks it for Creo APR instructions. It then searches for the external high-resolution file, performs the specified image replacement and RIPs the PostScript file.

### Setting APR Options

1. In the Job Parameters window, click the **Services** tab, and then select the **APR** parameter.



- 2. In the **APR options** area, select one of the following options:
  - **Print with high res:** Use this option to replace low-resolution images in your job with high-resolution images that are located in a specified APR path.
  - **Print with low res:** Use this option to print the job with the existing low-resolution images—for example, for proofing purposes.
- 3. In the Use APR mask from area, select one of the following options:
  - **PostScript image:** Use this option to use the masking data contained in the low-resolution image file.
  - **High res:** Use this option to use the masking data contained in the high-resolution image file.
  - **Both:** Use this option to use the masking data that is common in both high-resolution and low-resolution image files—for example, if the images defined by the two sets of masking data overlap, the overlapping area is RIPed.



**Note:** If the masking data in the low-resolution image file defines a completely different part of an image than the masking data in the high-resolution file, no masking data is used.

#### Setting a High-Resolution Path

There are two default paths in which the Spire CXP5000 color server searches for high-resolution images:

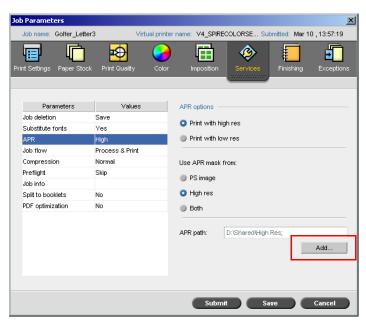
- Search in the input folder: The Spire CXP5000 color server first searches for high-resolution images in the same folder as the PDL file.
- D:\Shared\High Res: If you want to save your high-resolution files in this folder, copy the files to D:\Shared\High Res.

You can also add a new high-resolution path, and then edit, or delete the path.

Paths other than the default paths are defined on a per-job basis, or set in the virtual printer. You can specify paths on local hard drives, CD-ROM drives, and the floppy drive connected to the Spire CXP5000 color server. You can also specify paths on remote clients or file servers.

#### To add a high-resolution path:

1. Under the **APR path** box, click **Add**.



The HiResPath dialog box appears.

HiRes Path	×
Path	+Sub
Search in the input folder	
D:\Shared\High Res	
<u>+</u> − ♥	++±
•	Done



1. Click Add.

The Open dialog box appears.

- Locate your high-resolution images, and then click Select.
   The new path is displayed in the HiResPath dialog box.
- **▲ ▲ ★ ±** 3.
  - Se .
- 3. To promote or demote a selected APR path, use the arrow buttons.

**Note:** The order in which the APR paths are listed is the order in which the Spire CXP5000 color server searches for the high-resolution images.

#### To modify a high-resolution path:

- 1. In the HiResPath dialog box, select the path you want to modify.
- Click Edit.

The Open dialog box appears.

Locate your high-resolution images, and then click Select.
 The new path is displayed in the HiResPath dialog box.

#### To delete a high-resolution path:

- 1. In the HiResPath dialog box, select the path you want to delete.
- 2. Click **Remove**.

The selected path is deleted.

OPI

Like Creo APR, OPI is a standardized set of file instructions that specify how an external high-resolution image is placed in a PostScript file as it goes to RIP. The instructions specify the type, size, position, rotation, cropping and location of the high-resolution images themselves.

When you send your PostScript file to be processed, the Spire CXP5000 color server checks it for OPI instructions. It then searches for the external high-resolution file, performs the specified image replacement and RIPs the PostScript file.

Many OPI systems use remote storage of high-resolution files. The Spire CXP5000 color server supports the storage and replacement of high-resolution OPI files internally. However, PDL files from some DTP applications (such as QuarkXPress) may contain these instructions ("comments") by default, although the high-resolution files are unavailable and have been embedded in the job. In this case, the job will

not be processed and an error message will appear. Therefore, to ensure continuous printing, the Spire CXP5000 color server OPI image replacement is unavailable by default.

#### To select OPI support:

1. From the **Tools** menu, select **Settings**.

The Settings window appears.

2. Under Preferences, select General Defaults.

Zettings		×
Administration	Default Paper Size	-
Server Setup	Size: Quatro 🔶	
Network Setup		
Remote Tools Setup	OPI	
Security	Enable OPI Spire Support	
System Disks	Support Helios Server	
Configuration Backup		
Preferences	Disable OPI Spire Support	
Localization	Default Archive Path	-
Pre-RIP Preview	Archiving Path: Browse	
General Defaults	Proning run.	
Print Queue Manager		
Color		
Messages		
View Configuration		
	Save Cancel	
		×

3. In the **OPI** area, select **Enable OPI Spire Support**.



**Note:** When the **Enable OPI Spire Support** option is selected, the **Support Helios Server** check box is automatically selected by default. If you do not want Helios server support, clear this check box.

# Creo APR and OPI File Formats

Creo APR and OPI function identically on the Spire CXP5000 color server. Creo APR low-resolution files have an \*.eps extension in Windows and an \*.e extension on the Macintosh, while OPI low-resolution files have a \*.lay extension. The Creo APR and OPI workflows support Creo Continuous Tone, EPSF, Jpeg, PDF, DCS1, DCS2 and TIFF high-resolution file formats. You can use either the Creo APR or OPI workflow, depending on your high-resolution file type.

## Preparing to Print Using Creo APR or OPI

1. Create low-resolution files from high-resolution files.



**Note:** You can use the PS Image Exporter Plug-In in Adobe Photoshop to create Photoshop Image (APR low-resolution) files. You can either install the PS Image Exporter Plug-In from the *Spire CXP5000 color server Documentation and Utilities* CD-ROM, or download it from the Creo website at <a href="https://ecentral.creo.com/ecentral/self\_support/downloads.asp">https://ecentral.creo.com/ecentral/self\_support/downloads.asp</a>.

2. Export each image file as a low-resolution \*.e file—for example, a file called duck is exported as duck.e.

OPI images can be created in other applications or can be provided by a print service bureau. Make sure that you have created or obtained the required image files.



#### Notes:

- A PostScript image (\*.e) file is a low-resolution preview of the original high-resolution file. It contains preview information saved at 72dpi in black and white or color. Also, it contains pointers to the location of the high-resolution Image.
- APR low-resolution files have a. "\*.e" extension on the Macintosh and an "\*.eps" extension in Windows. OPI low-resolution files have a "\*.lay" extension.
- 3. When you design the document in a DTP application, use low-resolution files.
- 4. Perform detailed graphic work on the original high-resolution file. Only use the low-resolution file for positioning, rotating, scaling and cropping.



**Note:** Once you create the low-resolution file, do not change the name of the high-resolution file. This is the file name for which the Spire CXP5000 color server searches.

5. Place the high-resolution files in a defined path on the Spire CXP5000 color server. This Spire CXP5000 color server looks for this path when it RIPs your jobs. Define the high-resolution path through the Job Parameters window for each job.

#### Notes:

- The Spire CXP5000 color server default HiRes folder used for APR and OPI is **D:\Shared\HiRes**.
- Paths other than the default path are defined on a per-job basis. You can define the APR path to any connected server or disk.

# Printing with Creo APR or OPI

If your high-resolution files are located in the Spire CXP5000 color server default folder (**D:\Shared\HighRes**), you can print APR or OPI jobs without adjusting APR settings.



**Important:** OPI support is unavailable by default. If you would like to select the Spire OPI support, see *To select OPI support:* on page 257.

Perform the following steps:

1. Print, download, or import the job from the client workstation to the Spire CXP5000 color server Storage window.

The job is processed according to the settings of the selected virtual printer using APR or OPI high-resolution files.



**Note:** If your high-resolution files are not located in the Spire CXP5000 color server default folder, specify the APR path(s), see *To add a high-resolution path:* on page 255.

- 2. Double-click the job in the Spire CXP5000 color server workspace.
- 3. Select the **Print Quality** tab in the Job Parameters window.
- 4. Adjust the job parameters.
- 5. Set other high-resolution job parameters as required.



**Note:** If the masking data in the PS Image file defines a completely different part of an image than the masking data in the high-resolution file, no masking data is used.

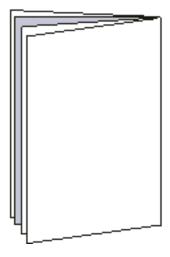
#### 6. Click Submit.

The job is processed on the Spire CXP5000 color server and sent to the Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press for printing.

# Sample Job: Printing a Brochure Using the Creo APR Workflow

In this example, you can use Creo APR to print a brochure that contains a high-resolution file.





Brochure

The picture used in the sample brochure is a high-resolution file called milkmaid. In this example, it is assumed that you already created the low-resolution file milkmaid.e and that your brochure has already been designed in a DTP application using milkmaid.e.



**Note:** On the Spire CXP5000 color server, the APR workflow is functionally identical to the OPI workflow, so while the high-resolution image used in this example has a \*.e extension, if it was an OPI image, it would have a alternative extension, such as \*.lay.

#### To print a brochure using the APR workflow:

 The Spire CXP5000 color server first searches for high-resolution images in the same folder as the PDL file. Or:

Place your high-resolution file milkmaid in the path: D:\Shared\High Res.

2. Print or import the brochure job from your client workstation to the Spire CXP5000 color server.

The job is processed on the Spire CXP5000 color server and then sent to the Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press for printing.

# **PDF Workflow**

When you print PDF jobs with repeated elements, you can decrease processing time significantly if you apply the PDF workflow.

The PDF workflow caches the repeated elements in the PDF once, and reuses them as many times as needed without repeated processing.

#### To select PDF optimization:

In the Job Parameters window, click the **Services** tab, and then select the **PDF optimization** parameter.

b Parameters		
		-
Job name: Golfer_Lette	r3 Virtua	al printer name: V4_SPIRECOLORSE Submitted: Mar 10 , 13:57:19
rint Settings Paper Stoc	k Print Quality	Color Imposition Services Finishing Exceptions
Parameters	Values	PDF optimization options
Job deletion	Save	Yes
Substitute fonts	Yes	-
APR	High	O No
Job flow	Process & Print	
Compression	Normal	
Preflight	Skip	
Job info		
Split to booklets	No	
PDF optimization	No	
		Submit Save Cancel

#### 3. In the **PDF optimization options** area, select **Yes**.

In addition, you need to use the Adobe Acrobat Distiller application to distill the PostScript file. Distilling the file ensures that the repeated elements will be marked as repeated in the PDF file.



**Important:** Verify that in your Acrobat Distiller settings, **Optimize for Fast Web View** is selected (in Acrobat 4.0 the corresponding option is **Optimize PDF**).

If you do not have the Adobe Acrobat Distiller application installed on your client workstation, you may use the Adobe Acrobat Distiller 5.0 application located on the Spire CXP5000 color server.

#### To distill a PostScript file on the Spire CXP5000 color server:

- 1. In your client workstation, copy the required PostScript file.
- 2. Locate the Spire CXP5000 color server on the network, and paste the file to **D:\Shared**.
- 3. On the Spire CXP5000 color server station, click the **Start** button and select **Programs>Acrobat Distiller**.

- 🏂 Acrobat Distiller \_ 🗆 🗵 File Settings Help Job Options: eBook -Compatibility: Acrobat 4.0 (PDF 1.3) Info Pause File: none Size: Source: Progress Status: Ready Acrobat Distiller 5.0 Started: Monday, November 17, 2003 at 16:56 Adobe PostScript software version: 3011.104 •
- 4. From the Settings menu, select Job Options.

eBook - Job Options	×
General Compression Fonts Color Advanced	
File Options Compatibility: Acrobat 4.0 (PDF 1.3) © Optimize for Fast Web View Embed Thumbnails © Auto-Rotate Pages: Collectively by File ♥ Page Range: © All © From: To: Binding: Left ♥	OK Save As Cancel
Resolution: 600 dpi	
Width:     612.0     Units:     Points       Height:     792.0	

5. In the **General** tab, verify that **Optimize for Fast Web View** is selected and click **Cancel**. If this option is not selected, select the **Optimize for Fast Web View** check box, and click **OK**. 6. From the File menu, select **Open**.

The Acrobat Distiller - Open PostScript file dialog box appears.

7. Locate the required PostScript file, and then click **Open**.

The Acrobat Distiller - Specify PDF File Name dialog box appears.

- 8. The default name is the PostScript file name. You can change it in the **File name** box.
- 9. Verify that the file is saved in D:\Shared.
- 10. Click Save.

Your file is distilled and a PDF file is created.

11. In the Spire CXP5000 color server application, from the **Job** menu, select **Import**.

You can import the PDF file for printing.



**Tip:** You can create a shortcut to the Acrobat Distiller on the Spire CXP5000 color server desktop. This shortcut can be used to drag files onto the Acrobat Distiller for quick distilling. To create a shortcut, click the **Start** button on your Windows desktop, and follow the path **Programs**>**Acrobat Distiller**. Right-click **Acrobat Distiller** and follow the path **Send To**>**Desktop (create shortcut)**.

### Export as PDF2Go

PDF2Go is a port through which you can export RTP and PDL files, and convert them to a PDF file during export.

The Spire CXP5000 color server is capable of exporting jobs that are standard PDF files, both before and after processing. For an exported RTP job, the PDF file includes the rasterized data of the job.

The operation converts the RTP information to raster files that can be encapsulated in a PDF format. This process ensures that the file can be processed and printed on any PDF printer.



**Note:** Except for RTP jobs that were originally VI jobs, you can export every type of file.

While exporting as PDF2Go, a running bullet starts to move from right to left in the top-right server-printer animation of the workspace.



#### To export as PDF2Go:

1. Right-click a file in the Storage window, and from the menu select **Export PDF2Go**.

Export as PDF2G0	×
Print Optimized	
<ul> <li>Screen Optimized</li> </ul>	
	OK Cancel

2. Select the **Print Optimized** option to generate a high-resolution PDF file in 300dpi.

The **Screen Optimized** option (default) generates a low-resolution PDF file in 72 dpi.



**Tip:** Use the **Screen Optimized** option when you want to generate a light PDF file—for example, a file that you can send as a proof by e-mail.

3. Click **OK**.

Copen X								
Look in: 📘	My Documents	<b>†</b>						
	Name	Date	Size	Туре				
📋 Adobe		11/5/03 2:34 PM		File Folder				
My eBoo	oks	1/4/04 8:37 AM		File Folder				
My Pictu		1 <i>/</i> 7/04 8:52 AM		File Folder				
📄 Security	,	2/26/03 4:54 PM		File Folder				
Files of type:	Pdf file	\$						
Name:	ATF_A3_8							
			Export	Cancel				

4. Locate the folder in which to save the file, and then click **Export**.

The file is saved as a PDF file under the job's name in the selected location.



**Note:** When you export PDL files as PDF, the file is converted to PDF using the Acrobat distiller.

# Page Exceptions

Page exceptions are used when you want to use different paper sets for special exceptions within a job or add inserts (interleaves). This feature uses the following terminology:

- Exceptions are special pages within a job for which you want to assign different paper stock. For example, you can choose to assign a different paper stock for each chapter within a book.
- Inserts are blank pages of a selected paper stock that are assigned to a job after a specified number of pages. For example, you can choose to add blank pages between sections within a brochure.



For more information about paper sets, see *The Paper Stock Tab* on page 167.

# The Exceptions Tab

Job Parameters					×
Job name: Gol	lfer_Letter3	Virtual printer n	ame: V4_SPIREC	OLORSE Submitted: Ma	r 10 , 13:57:19
Print Settings Pa	aper Stock Print	Duality Color	Imposition	Services Finishing	Exceptions
Print Settings Pa	iper Slock Print	Guality Color	imposition	Services Finishing	annanana.
Exce	eption F	'aper set	Tray	Exception Properties	
				From:	To:
				Paper set:	
+ -				Same as job	
				Tray:	
Ins	sert F	'aper set	Tray	Auto	\$
					Advanced
					Apply
+ -					whit
			0.1		
			Submit	Save	Cancel

The **Exceptions** tab enables you to add and delete page exceptions and inserts.



**Note:** You also use the **Exceptions** tab to map paper sets for dynamic page exceptions.



For more information about the dynamic page exceptions workflow, see *Dynamic Page Exceptions* on page 279.

## Managing Exceptions

You can add and delete exceptions in the **Exceptions** tab.

#### To add exceptions to a job:

+ 1. In the **Exception** area, click the **Add** button.

		Job Paramet	ers						×
		Job name:	Golfer_Letter:	3 Virl	ual printer r	name: V4_SPIRI	ECOLORSE Sub	mitted: Mar 1	0,13:57:19
		Print Settings	Paper Stock	Print Quality	Color	Imposition	Services	Finishing	Exceptions
Exception	Γ	Range	Exception : 5-5 : 10-10	Paper set A4_Un_81-105 A4_Un_81-105	Auto Auto	Tray	Exception Pro	perties —	To: 10
area		+ -					Paper set: A4_Un_81- Tray:	105	<b>•</b>
	-		Insert	Paper set		Tray	Auto		\$
		+ -							Advanced
						Subm	nit Sa	ve 🖉	Cancel

- 2. In the **From** and **To** boxes, type the required page range for the exception. For example, if you want to print a page divider on heavy paper, in the **From** box, type **15** and in the **To** box, type **15**.
- 3. In the **Paper set** list, select the required paper set. If you need to add a new paper set, click the **browse** button.



For information about adding a paper set, see *Managing Paper Sets* on page 168.



Note: The default paper stock properties are those specified for the job.

- 4. In the **Tray** list, select the required tray:
  - **Tray 1:** Load the specific stock in this tray.
  - **Tray 2:** Load the specific stock in this tray.
  - **Tray 3:** Load the specific stock in this tray.
  - Auto: Any tray with the specific paper stock will be used.
- 5. To set image position options:
  - a. Click Advanced.

		IN IN
Advanced Exceptions Image position options Same as job Printer Rear Printer Front	Rear: 0.0 mm Lead: 0.0 mm Center Image	<u>×</u>
	Save	Cancel

- b. Clear the **Same as job** check box.
- c. To shift an image, follow one of these steps:
  - Click the arrows to shift the image on both sides.
  - Type a value in the **Rear** and **Lead** boxes.
- d. To set the values back to 0.0, click **Center Image**.
- e. Click Save.
- 6. Click Apply.

The exception is added to the **Exception** area.

#### To delete an exception:

- 1. In the **Exception** area, select the required exception.
- **2**. Click the **Remove** button.
  - 3. In the message that appears, click **Yes**.

# **Managing Inserts**

#### To add an insert:

**•** 1. In the **Insert** area, click the **Add** button.

	Job Param	eters						X
	Job name	Golfer_Letter3	Virt	ual printer n	name: V4_SPIRE	COLORSE Subr	nitted: Mar 10	, 13:57:19
		Ċ	P	<b>&gt;</b>	Ē	٨		•
	Print Setting	s PaperStock	Print Quality	Color	Imposition	Services	Finishing	Exceptions
		Exception	Paper set		Tray	Insert Propertie	s	
						After page:	55 Quant	ity: 1
						Paper set:		
						MaxSize		<b>.</b>
	+ -					Tray:		
-		Insert	Paper set		Tray	Auto		\$
	1 aff	er page 25	MaxSize	Auto				
		er page 35	MaxSize	Auto				
a	⇒				_			
								Apply
	+ -						_	
-					Cuba	24 C		C
					Subm	it Sav		Cancel

- 2. In the After page box, type the number that will precede the insert.
- 3. In the **Quantity** box, type the number of inserts that you want.
- 4. In the **Paper set** list, select the required paper set. If you need to add a new paper set, click the **browse** button.



**Note:** The default paper stock properties are those specified for the job.



For information about adding a paper set, see *Managing Paper Sets* on page 168.

- 5. In the **Tray** list, select the required tray:
  - **Tray 1**:The specific paper stock should be loaded in this tray.
  - **Tray 2**: The specific paper stock should be loaded in this tray.
  - **Tray 3:** The specific paper stock should be loaded in this tray.
  - Auto: Any tray with the specific paper stock will be used.

6. Click Apply.

The insert is added to the **Insert** area.

#### To remove an insert:

- 1. In the **Insert** area, select the required insert.
- **2**. Click the **Remove** button.
  - 3. In the message that appears, click **Yes**.

# Using Page Exception Workflows

#### Setting Exceptions for Imposed Jobs

You can set different paper sets for special exceptions within a job and also add inserts (interleaves) in imposed jobs. You set these exceptions and inserts in the **Exceptions** tab.

If the selected imposition method is **Saddle Stitch** or **Perfect Bound**, the exceptions are handled in the imposed sheet level (and not on a page level).



#### Notes:

- For the **Step & Repeat** imposition method, exceptions are handled on a page level (same as for non-imposed jobs).
- An imposed sheet contains the multiple images that are all printed on the same physical sheet.

You cannot set exceptions or inserts if the selected imposition method is **Step & Repeat** and it's sub-option **Cut & Stack**.

#### Printing on Tabs

The Spire CXP5000 color server supports the option to print tabs for both regular page exceptions and dynamic page exceptions workflows. This section contains a description of the setup steps you need to perform to print on tabbed stock using the regular page exceptions workflow.



For information about dynamic page exceptions, see *Dynamic Page Exceptions* on page 279.



**Note:** The Xerox DocuColor 2045 Digital Color Press also supports the option to print tabs for both regular page exceptions and dynamic page exceptions workflows.

#### **File Preparation**

This example describes how to print a document using Xerox 5 TAB (multipurpose) stock. The tabs are printed on both sides (duplex). The text pages were designed in QuarkXPress and the tabs were designed in Microsoft Word.



Note: You can modify this procedure to fit your specific tab requirements.

#### Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press Setup

In this example, you can print the PDF file on the following types of stock:

- Text pages on US Letter  $(8.5 \times 11 \text{ inches})$
- Tabs on tab stock (9 × 11 inches)

#### **Color Calibration**

Use the US Letter paper stock to perform calibration, and then you can use this paper stock for the entire job.

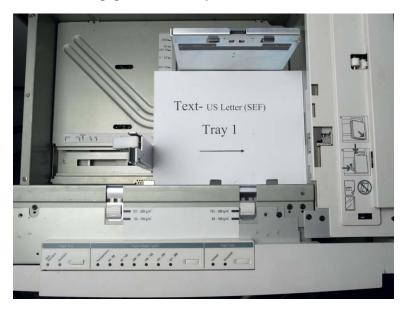
#### Loading the Paper Stock

Follow these steps when you load the paper stock:

• Load the paper as **Short Edge Feed** for all stocks because the tabbed stock is printed on both sides (duplex), and requires straight edges on both right and left sides. Load the stock with the tabs pointing to the rear end of the tray.

#### To load the paper stock:

1. Load the letter paper stock in Tray 1.



- 2. Load the tabbed stock:
  - a. Place the tabs in Tray 3 in forward collated order—for example, Tab 1 is the top tab when the tab sheets are loaded into the printer.
  - b. Make sure that the stock is loaded as SEF.
  - c. Select **Non-Standard** on the left hand side of the tray controls.

This example uses **9** × **11 custom size tabs (SEF)**. Use the tab stock **Xerox P/N #3R4405** - in forward order for the tab pages. The job prints face up.



#### Notes:

- It is essential that you load the tab stock in Tray 3. This allows for a straight path from this tray onto the imaging belt. You can load other types of stock in any other tray without affecting print production.
- Tabs are duplex printed, which requires that the tab stock be positioned so that both the left and right sides of the media are straight sides going into the engine.



The tab on The left hand side is the top tab.

# button

Custom

#### Access Panel

You program the custom size for any job through the Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press Access Panel.

- 1. On the Access Panel, press the **Access** button and enter the password **11111.**
- 2. Navigate to Tools Pathway>Non-Standard Paper Size.
- 3. Select Tray #3, X=11, Y=9.
- 4. Exit all the windows and return to the main menu.

#### **Creating Paper Sets**

In the Printer Monitor window, you can view the paper sets that are loaded in the paper tray.



For more information about the Printer Monitor window, see *The Printer Monitor* on page 23.

#### To create paper sets:

- 1. On the toolbar, click the **Resource Center** button.
- 2. In the **Resource** list, select **Paper Sets**.

3. Click Add.

The Paper Set Properties dialog box appears.

4. Set the parameters for the Text stock.

Paper Set Properti	es	×
Name:	Text	
Size:	SEF Letter	\$
Color:	White	\$
Weight:	106-135 gsm	\$
Coat:	Uncoated	\$
Туре:	Paper	\$
Paper set #12		
	OK Can	icel

- 5. Click **OK**.
- 6. Click **Add** and set the parameters for the Tab stock.

Paper Set Properti	es	×
Name:	Tab	
Size:	Custom 🗢	
	H: 11.0 in	
	VV: 9.0 in	
	🔵 LEF 🛛 🗿 SEF	
Color:	White 🔷	
Weight:	106-135 gsm 🔶	
Coat:	Uncoated 🔶	
Туре:	Paper 🔶	
Paper set #11		
	OK Cancel	

7. Click **OK**.

#	3	Paper Set Name	Size	Туре	Weight	Coating	Color	
1		A4_Un_81-105	A4	Paper	81-105 gsm	Uncoated	White	
2		A4_Co_81-105	A4	Paper	81-105 gsm	Coated	White	
3		A4 Transparency	A4	Transparen	81-105 gsm	Uncoated	Clear	
4		A3_Un_81-105	A3	Paper	81-105 gsm	Uncoated	White	
5		A3_Co_81-105	A3	Paper	81-105 gsm	Coated	White	
6		A5_Un_81-105	Custom	Paper	81-105 gsm	Uncoated	White	
7		A5_Co_81-105	Custom	Paper	81-105 gsm	Coated	White	
8		SRA3_Un_81-105	SRA3	Paper	81-105 gsm	Uncoated	White	
9		SRA3_Co_81-105	SRA3	Paper	81-105 gsm	Coated	White	
10		MaxSize	Custom	Paper	81-105 gsm	Uncoated	White	
11	•	Tab	Custom	Paper	106-135 gsm	Uncoated	White	
12	-	Text	SEF Letter	Paper	106-135 gsm	Uncoated	White	

Icons in the **Paper Sets** area provide information about the defined media that is available and the print direction of the media.



**Note:** If the icon for the Tab and Text media does not reflect the print direction you set, you need to review your paper set definitions.

#### **Printing the Job**

The regular (manual) page exception workflow is good for single jobs.



**Important:** Before you start this workflow, open the PDF file and note which pages are the tab pages.

#### To set the job parameters for a job with two media trays:

- 1. In the Job Parameters window, click the **Print Settings** tab and set the following parameters:
  - Print Method: Duplex head to head
  - Delivery: Face Up
  - Rotate 180: Yes

2. On the Paper Stock tab, set the Paper set name to Text. Or:

Set the following parameters:

- Paper set name: Undefined
- Paper size: SEF Letter
- Weight: 106-135 gsm
- **+** 3. On the **Exceptions** tab, click **Add** and use Table 10 to add page exceptions:

Table 10: Sample Page Exceptions

Pages	Use Paper Set	Tray
5 -6	Tab	3
19-20	Tab	3
31-32	Tab	3
59-60	Tab	3
103-104	Tab	3



**Note:** The tabs are printed on both sides.

Job Parameters				×
Job name: PANTONE_M	_A3 Virtual p	orinter name: V4_CXP5	000_Proc Submitted: J	an 06 , 10:08:19
Print Settings Paper Stock	Print Quality C	Solor Imposition	Services Finishir	ng Exceptions
Exception Range 5-6 Range 19-20 Range 31-32 Range 59-50 Range 103-104 + -	Tab T Tab T Tab T	Tray ray 3 ray 3 ray 3 ray 3 ray 3 ray 3	Exception Properties - From: 103 Paper set: Tab Tray: Tray 3	To: 104
+ -	r opor ou	Subm		Advanced Apply Cancel

4. Set any other job parameters as required, and then click **Submit**.

#### **Further Information**

The following list provides useful Web sites about printing tabs and templates:

• Templates: Download the Xerox templates from the following Web site:

http://www.xerox.com/go/xrx/template/ Promotions.jsp?view=MP6&active=active&promoID=Laser\_Printer\_ Template\_tabs&Xcntry=USA&Xlang=en\_US

- Design Hints: Some good design hints for printing tabs are available on the following Web site: <u>http://www.xerox.com/go/xrx/template/</u> <u>Promotions.jsp?view=MP6&active=Active&promoID=Printer\_Templ</u> <u>ate\_Using\_Graphics&Xcntry=USA&Xlang=en\_US</u>
- The Speciality Media Gudie can be downloaded from the following Web site: http://www.xerox.com/downloads/usa/en/s/ supp\_lib\_spec\_DocuColor2045\_2060.pdf.tydty

# **Dynamic Page Exceptions**

Dynamic page exceptions are page exceptions or inserts that you want to include within a file, mainly VI jobs or a very large PostScript file.

Standard PostScript setpagedevice commands that specify different paper types are embedded into the incoming files and enable you to print complex jobs of varying paper size, stocks, and paperweight. These commands indicate that the printer must switch media during the printing of a job. When a job is RIPed, the Spire CXP5000 color server identifies the dynamic page exception commands and maps them to the selected paper sets. The printer then uses the required paper sets for the job.

The Spire CXP5000 color server supports dynamic page exceptions for the following file formats:

- PostScript
- Variable Print Specification
- VIPP
- PDF

# Setting the Spire CXP5000 Color Server for Dynamic Page Exceptions

To set up the job flow for dynamic page exceptions you need to:

1. Create a file with embedded setpagedevice commands on your client workstation.



For more information about adding dynamic page exception commands, see page 280 - page 288.

- 2. Select Resource Center>**Paper Sets** and create the paper sets that you need to print your file.
- 3. Create a dedicated virtual printer that supports dynamic page exception commands, and then map specific paper sets in the **Exceptions** tab.



For more information about adding a new virtual printer and mapping specific paper sets, see *Creating a Dedicated Virtual Printer* on page 286.

4. Import the file into the Spire CXP5000 color server via the dedicated virtual printer, and submit the job for printing.

When the job is RIPed, the dynamic page exception commands are identified and mapped to the selected paper sets. The required paper sets are used when the job is printed.

#### Notes:

- If a job is printed using a dynamic page exceptions virtual printer, the **Imposition** tab in the Job Parameters window is unavailable.
- Once you import your file via the dedicated virtual printer, you can perform a preflight check before the job is sent to print, see *Preflight Check* on page 374.

# Adding Dynamic Page Exceptions in PostScript and Variable Print Specification Formats

The Spire CXP5000 color server accepts Adobe "red book" command keys to dynamically change the media at a page level. Dynamic page exceptions are set through the standard PostScript setpagedevice command and embedded in the PostScript file. In the setpagedevice command, the media selection category honors four keys:

- /MediaType paper set name (string)
- /MediaColor paper set color (string)
- /MediaWeight paper set weight range (number)
- /MediaPosition tray number (integer)

```
The following example shows the MediaColor key:
```

```
%%
<< /MediaColor (red) >> setpagedevice
612 0 translate
90 rotate
/Times-Roman ISOfindfont 12 scalefont
90 203 moveto
gsave
0 0 0 SetRGB
(ASSET ALLOCATION SUMMARY) show
grestore
showpage
%%
<< /MediaColor (white) >> setpagedevice
%%
%%
```

# Adding Dynamic Page Exceptions in PDF

There are three XRX comments that are defined in the *Xerox Manual for Job Ticket Programming Guide* and that are involved in defining dynamic page exceptions. The Spire CXP5000 color server reads these three comments.

The comments are **XRXbegin** and **XRXend**, which encapsulate the XRX block, and **XRXpageExceptions**, which defines the page exceptions attributes.

%XRXbegin: <ureal>

This comment indicates the beginning of the XRX comment block. You can write any number as a value. The Spire CXP5000 color server checks the comment's existence and not the value.

Example: %XRXbegin: 100.0300

#### %XRXend

This comment indicates the end of the XRX comments block.

%XRXpageExceptions: <cardinal> <cardinal> <cardinal> <cardinal> <cardinal> <cardinal> <<word>/<multiword>} <cardinal> <cardinal>

This comment indicates that specified pages will be printed on a media identified by the accompanying record values. You may include multiple page exception records in one job ticket and the values may be the same as the main stock.

• **Range:** The first <cardinal> and the second <cardinal> denote the beginning and the ending page number of the exception range. The first <cardinal> must be less than or equal to the second <cardinal>.



**Note:** Exception ranges can't overlap if the PDF contains multiple %XRXpageExceptions: comments.

• Size (not supported): The third <cardinal> and the fourth <cardinal> specify the x dimension value and the y dimension value, respectively, of the page exception media. The values must be in millimeters.



Note: The Spire CXP5000 color server doesn't read these numbers.

- **Color:** The first {<word>/<multiword>} specifies the color of the page exception media. The value can be one of the standard defined colors or a custom "user–defined" color. The entered value matches the paper stock color for the Spire CXP5000 color server.
- **Opaque (not supported):** The second <word> specifies the opaqueness of the page exception media. Valid values are: transparency and opaque.
- Finish (not supported): The third {<word>/<multiword>} specifies the preprocessed finish of the page exception media. The value can be one of the standard defined finishes or a custom "user–defined" finish.
- Holes (not supported): The fifth <cardinal> specifies the inline hole count. This is the number of holes in a predrilled page with positioning and alignment typical of a punch binding pattern. Since allowable

values are either 0, to indicate no holes, or 3, this is not intended to identify a media with an arbitrary number of holes in arbitrary locations, such as a printed novelty application.

• Ordered count (not supported): The sixth <cardinal> specifies the ordered count. This is the number of possible media instances, in an identifiable and sequenced collection of media, that will be repeated within the insert. For example, this value is the number of tab positions when tabs are to be inserted. Ordered count can be any integer in the range of 0 (zero), to indicate no ordered count, to 100.

#### Example

```
%XRXbegin: 002.00.00
%XRXdocumentPaperColors: white
%XRXpageExceptions: 7 8 216 279 red opaque acmep_ing 0 12 75
%XRXpageExceptions: 35 36 216 279 red opaque acmep_ing 0 12 75
%XRXpageExceptions: 41 42 216 279 blue opaque acmep_ing 0 12 75
%XRXpageExceptions: 49 50 216 279 red opaque acmep_ing 012 75
%XRXpageExceptions: 59 60 216 279 red opaque acmep_ing 012 75
%XRXpageExceptions: 59 60 216 279 red opaque acmep_ing 012 75
%XRXpageExceptions: 59 60 216 279 red opaque acmep_ing 012 75
%XRXpageExceptions: 59 60 216 279 red opaque acmep_ing 012 75
%XRXend
%PDF-1.3
:
```

# Adding Dynamic Page Exceptions in VIPP Format

Dynamic page exceptions are supported through SETMEDIA and are defined in the *Xerox VIPP Reference Manual*.

• The SETMEDIA command sets the media requirement. In the syntax example, SETMEDIA sets MediaType, MediaColor, and MediaWeight as the current media type requirements for subsequent pages.

The Spire CXP5000 color server mapping is similar to the mapping of PostScript and Variable Print Specification file formats.

- □ The MediaType value is mapped to the paper stock name.
- □ The MediaColor is mapped to the paper stock color.
- □ The MediaWeight is mapped to the paper stock weight.



For more information about PostScript and Variable Print Specification formats, see *Adding Dynamic Page Exceptions in PostScript and Variable Print Specification Formats* on page 280

• When any of the media attributes are specified as null, those attributes are ignored in the following media selections. This example ignores MediaColor.

(Drilled:null:100) SETMEDIA

• When any of the media attributes such as type, color, or weight are omitted, the last specification or the default value for that attribute remains in effect. The trailing ":" may be omitted as shown in this example.

```
(Plain::) SETMEDIA
(Plain:) SETMEDIA
(Plain) SETMEDI
```

#### Example

:

```
!PS-Adobe-2.0
•
%Page1
:
%SPD Type Drilled, Color blue, Weight 98)
(Drilled:blue:98) SETMEDIA
:
% Page 3
%SPD Type Cover, Color yellow, Weight 105)
:
(Cover:yellow:105) SETMEDIA
:
% Page 5
%SPD Type Transparency, Color Clear, Weight 125)
:
(Transparency:Clear:125) SETMEDIA
```

#### The following is the SETMEDIA definition:

```
%!PS-Adobe-3.0
%%Title: newVItest_US.dbm
XGFdict /STARTBOOKLET known { STARTBOOKLET } { } ifelse
%Page1 Front Side
%SPD Type Drilled, Color blue, Weight 98)
(Drilled:blue:98) SETMEDIA
(1_newVItest_US.ps) CACHE SETFORM 0 NL
```

%% Run the PostScript master form

% (Text) Box # 4 (Front Page: 1) Xpos: 223.972 Ypos: 368.679 Width: 370.028 Height: 45.366

% Page 3 Front Side

%SPD Type Cover, Color yellow, Weight 105)

#### (Cover:yellow:105) SETMEDIA

(1\_newVItest\_US.ps) CACHE SETFORM 0 NL %% Run the PostScript master form

% (Picture) Box #1 (Page: 3) Xpos: 226.355 Ypos: 634.648 Width: 358.263 Height: 254.99 % Page 5 Front Side

% Page 5 Front Side

%SPD Type Standard, Color goldenrod, Weight 108)

#### (Standard:goldenrod:108) SETMEDIA

(1\_newVItest\_US.ps) CACHE SETFORM 0 NL %% Run the PostScript master form % (Picture) Box #1 (Page: 3) Xpos: 226.355 Ypos: 634.648 Width:

358.263 Height: 254.99

## Printing Tabs Using the Dynamic Page Exceptions Workflow

The Spire CXP5000 color server supports the option to print tabs using the dynamic page exceptions workflow. This workflow enables you to handle many jobs with different settings without having to manually set page exceptions in the Job Parameters window for each job—for example, if you want to print 100 separate booklets that all use the same stock types, but each booklet has a different number of pages and the tabs are inserted in different places in each booklet.

Perform the following steps to set up the workflow:

- 1. Load the stock types in the trays, see *Loading the Paper Stock* on page 272.
- 2. Program the job through the Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press Access Panel, see *Access Panel* on page 274.
- 3. Create paper sets, see *Creating Paper Sets* on page 274.
- 4. Create a dedicated printer and map the paper sets in the **Exceptions** tab, see *Creating a Dedicated Virtual Printer* on page 286.
- Import all the PDF files via the dedicated virtual printer, and then submit the job for printing. The files are processed and printed using the page exceptions that were coded in the files.

#### **Creating a Dedicated Virtual Printer**

- 1. On the toolbar, click the **Resource Center** button.
  - 2. In the **Resource** list, select **Virtual Printers**.
- + 3. Click **Add**.

The Add Virtual Printer dialog box appears.

Add Virtual Printer	×				
Name:	NewPrinter				
Based on:	V4_SPIRECOLORSE_Dy \$				
Uverride PPD pa	Publish on the network     Override PPD parameters     Support dynamic page exceptions				
Comments:					
Edit					
	OK Cancel				

- 4. In the **Name** box, enter a printer name.
- 5. Select the **Support dynamic page exceptions** check box.
- 6. Click Edit.

The Job Parameters window appears with the **Print Settings** tab selected.

- 7. On the **Print Settings** tab, set the following parameters:
  - Print Method: Duplex head to head
  - Delivery: Face Up
  - Rotate 180: Yes
- 8. On the **Paper Stock** tab, set the **Paper set name** to **Text**. Or:

Set the following parameters:

- Paper set name: Undefined
- Paper size: SEF Letter
- Weight: 106-135gsm

- 9. On the **Finishing** tab, set the following parameters:
  - Admin page: Select the Print Admin. page check box, and in the Paper set list, select Admin sheet
  - Tray: Tray 2
- 10. On the **Exceptions** tab, perform the following steps to map the paper set names to the individual trays:
  - In the **Paper Set** column, select the paper set names that you created—for example, **Text** and **Tab**.
  - In the **Exception Type** column, select **Exception**.



**Note:** If you are adding a blank page, select **Insert** in the **Exception Type** column.

• Click Save.

ob Paramet	ers						
Job name:	Sunflower_Let	ter3 Vin	tual printer r	name: V4_CXP5	5000_Dyna <mark>Su</mark>	ibmitted: Mar 0	2,17:09:23
Ē					٨		5
Print Settings	Paper Stock	Print Quality	Color	Imposition	Services	Finishing	Exceptions
	Paper Set		Tra	y Position		Exception Typ	e
Text		🕶 Tray	1		Exception		•
Admin shee	et 🛛	🖛 Tray	2		Exception		•
Tab		🕶 Tray	3		Exception		•
Ø							
				Subn	nit Sa	ave	Cancel

- 11. In the Edit Virtual Printer dialog box, click **OK**.
- 12. In the Resource Center, click **Close**.

# **Tips and Limitations**

The following list describes the current limitations for the dynamic page exceptions workflow:

- Define all pages in the original file using the dynamic page exceptions commands.
- To add inserts, use a dynamic page exceptions command in the file that requires a paper stock but will not print anything on it. If a job is duplex, make sure that you use the command twice.
- Virtual printers that support dynamic page exceptions should not be used for other jobs.
- Virtual printers that support dynamic page exceptions do not support page exceptions and imposition. In addition, the paper stock selection is limited to the assigned stocks and not the entire database.
- When you create the dedicated virtual printer, you should define the paper feed direction for the paper sets in the job. All paper sets that are used in a dynamic page exceptions job must be in the same paper feed direction. Make sure you do not select the **Best Fit** option.

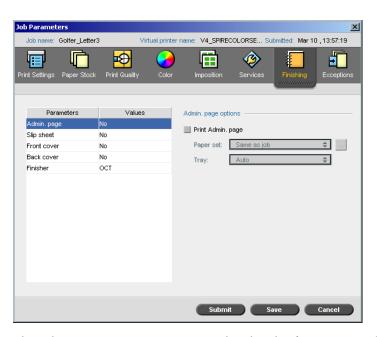


For information about defining the paper feed direction, see *The Paper Stock Tab* on page 167.

# The Finishing Tab

The **Finishing** tab enables to select various options to finalize your printed documents.

# Admin. Page



The Administration page contains job-related information such as the job title, page size, number of pages or sets, and the sender name.

The Administration page is printed in the same order as the job, for facedown printing the page is printed before each set and for face-up printing the page is printed after each set.



**Note:** If you change the options in the **Admin page** parameter, the job needs to be re-RIPed.

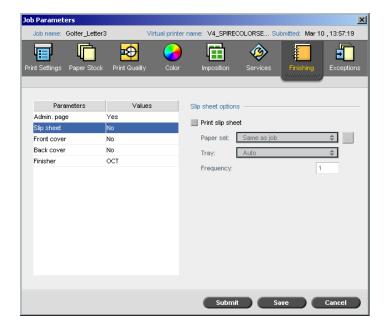
#### To print an admin. page:

- 1. Select the **Print Admin page** check box.
- 2. In the **Paper set** list, select the required paper set. If you need to add a new paper set, click the **browse** button.



For more information about adding paper sets, see *Managing Paper Sets* on page 168.

- 3. In the **Tray** list, select the required tray:
  - **Tray 1**: The specific paper stock should be loaded in this tray.
  - Tray 2: The specific paper stock should be loaded in this tray.
  - Tray 3: The specific paper stock should be loaded in this tray.
  - Auto: Any tray with the specific paper stock will be used.



# You can print slip sheets with your job and select a different paper set in which to print the slip sheet. If the job is collated, the slip sheets will be printed between sets. If the job is uncollated, the slip sheets will be printed between groups.

# Slip Sheet

#### To set slip sheet options:

- 1. Select the **Print slip sheet** check box.
- 2. In the **Paper set** list, select the required paper set. If you need to add a new paper set, click the **browse** button.



For more information about adding paper sets, see *Managing Paper Sets* on page 168.

- 3. In the **Tray** list, select the required tray:
  - **Tray 1**: The specific paper stock should be loaded in this tray.
  - **Tray 2**: The specific paper stock should be loaded in this tray.
  - **Tray 3**: The specific paper stock should be loaded in this tray.
  - Auto: Any tray with the specific paper stock will be used.
- 4. In the **Frequency** list, type the number of slip sheets you want to print. The default is 1; a slip sheet is printed between each set.

## Front Cover

b Parameters		
	-	
Job name: Golfer_Lett	er3 Virtual prir	ter name: V4_SPIRECOLORSE Submitted: Mar 10 , 13:57:19
rint Settings Paper Sto	ck Print Quality Cold	or Imposition Services
Parameters	Values	Front cover options
Admin. page	Yes	Print front cover
Slip sheet	No	_
Front cover	No	Paper set: Same as job 🗢 💭
Back cover	No	Tray: Auto
Finisher	OCT	Cover printing: None Print on front side Print on both sides
		Submit Save Cancel

By default, your job is printed without a front cover. However, you can choose to print a front cover, and you can also select a different paper set.

#### To print a front cover:

- 1. Select the **Print front cover** check box.
- 2. In the **Paper set** list, select the required paper set. If you need to add a new paper set, click the **browse** button.



For more information about adding paper sets, see *Managing Paper Sets* on page 168.

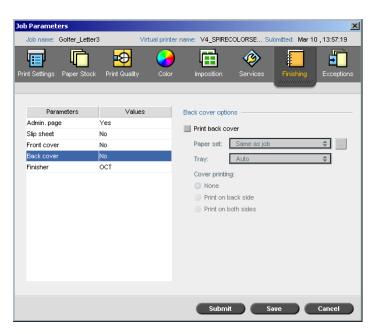
- 3. In the **Tray** list, select the required tray:
  - **Tray 1**: The specific paper stock should be loaded in this tray.
  - **Tray 2**: The specific paper stock should be loaded in this tray.
  - **Tray 3**: The specific paper stock should be loaded in this tray.
  - Auto: Any tray with the specific paper stock will be used.
- 4. In the **Cover printing** area, select one of the following options:
  - a. None: Use this option to print a blank front cover.



**Note:** A blank page will automatically be inserted between the cover page and the first page of the job so that both sides of the cover page are defined and the job starts on the next odd page.

- b. **Print on front side:** Use this option to print the first page of the job as the cover page.
- c. **Print on both sides:** Use this option to print the first two pages of the job as the cover page.

# **Back Cover**



By default, your job is printed without a back cover. However, you can choose to print a back cover, and you can also select a different paper set.

#### To print a back cover:

- 1. Select the **Print back cover** check box.
- 2. In the **Paper set** list, select the required paper set. If you need to add a new paper set, click the **browse** button.



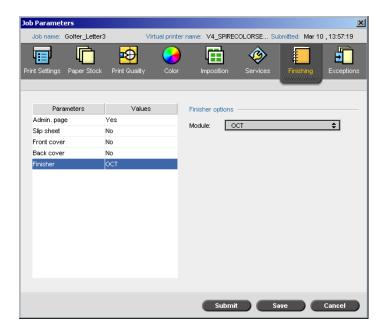
For more information about adding paper sets, see *Managing Paper Sets* on page 168.

- 3. In the **Tray** list, select the required tray:
  - **Tray 1**: The specific paper stock should be loaded in this tray.
  - **Tray 2**: The specific paper stock should be loaded in this tray.
  - **Tray 3**: The specific paper stock should be loaded in this tray.
  - Auto: Any tray with the specific paper stock will be used.

- 4. In the **Cover printing** area, select one of the following options:
  - a. None: Use this option to print a blank back cover.

**Note:** A blank page will automatically be inserted between the back cover and the last page of the job so that both sides of the back cover are defined.

- b. **Print on back side:** Use this option to print the last page of the job as the back cover.
- c. **Print on both sides:** Use this option to print the last two pages of the job as the back cover.



The **Finisher** parameter enables you to select the destination of the printed output.



**Note:** The available stapling methods for PostScript files depend on the page orientation and size. The stapling methods for PDF files depend on the page size.

# Finisher

- > In the **Module** list, select one of the finisher options:
  - **OCT** (Offset Catch Tray): This is the default option.
  - □ **HCS**(High Capacity Stacker )

Finisher options					
Module:	HCS \$				
	The Tree				
_	<ul> <li>Top Tray</li> <li>Stack Tray</li> </ul>				
Offset					
🔘 E	Bypass Tray				
<u> </u>	, jpace (14)				

- a. Choose a tray option.
- b. If you select the **Stack Tray** option, select the **Offset** check box for the following types of jobs:
  - Collated: Each copy is offset from the next copy.
  - Uncollated: If you need more than one copy of each page, offset shifts the sheets when a new page number is delivered. For example, if you request three copies of each page, the printing output sequence is as follows: Page1, Page1, Page1, Offset, Page2, Page2, Page2, Offset, and so on.

□ **HCSS** (High Capacity Stacker Stapler)

Finisher op	Finisher options				
Module:	HCSS \$				
	pp Tray				
	ack Tray				
	Staple				

- a. Choose a tray option.
- b. If you select **Stack Tray**, select one of the following check boxes:
  - Offset: Use this option for both collated and uncollated jobs. For uncollated jobs, offset shifts the sheets when a new page number is delivered. For example, if you request 3 copies of each page, the printing output sequence is as follows: Page1, Page1, Page1, offset, Page2, Page2, Page2, offset, and so on.
  - **Staple**: Use this option to select the required stapling method.
- **DFA** (Document Finishing Architecture)

Finisher o	ptions	
Module:	DFA	\$
Profile:	1	\$
	Function 1	
	Function 2	

- a. Select the required **Profile** from the list (according to the profile set in the printer you are using).
- b. Select the required **Function** (according to the profile set in the printer you are using).

**Note:** If you are using the Xerox DocuColor 5252or 2045 Digital Color Presses, select the **Bypass Tray** option to print to the DFA.

# Fonts

This section lists all the fonts available on the Spire CXP5000 color server, and explains how to work in the **Fonts** area of the Resource Center.

A step-by-step procedure explains how to use the FontDownLoader driver to download fonts from a Macintosh client workstation.

In addition, you can download Windows fonts from a client workstation to the Spire CXP5000 color server. This is done by dragging the fonts to the **HF\_Fontdownloader** hot folder.

# Font List

Table 11 lists the standard fonts that are available on the Spire CXP5000 color server.

AdobeSansMM	AdobeSerifMM	AlbertusMT
AlbertusMT-Italic	AlbertusMT-Light	AntiqueOlive-Bold
AntiqueOlive-Compact	AntiqueOlive-Italic	AntiqueOlive-Roman
Apple-Chancery	Apple-ChanceryCE	Arial-BoldItalicMT
Arial-BoldMT	Arial-ItalicMT	ArialCE
ArialCE-Bold	ArialCE-BoldItalic	ArialCE-Italic
ArialMT	AvantGarde-Book	AvantGarde-BookOblique
AvantGarde-Demi	AvantGarde-DemiOblique	AvantGardeCE-Book
AvantGardeCE-BookOblique	AvantGardeCE-Demi	AvantGardeCE-DemiOblique
Bodoni	Bodoni-Bold	Bodoni-BoldItalic
Bodoni-Italic	Bodoni-Poster	Bodoni-PosterCompressed
Bookman-Demi	Bookman-DemiItalic	Bookman-Light
Bookman-LightItalic	BookmanCE-Demi	BookmanCE-DemiItalic
BookmanCE-Light	BookmanCE-LightItalic	Carta
Chicago	ChicagoCE	Clarendon
Clarendon-Bold	Clarendon-Light	CooperBlack
CooperBlack-Italic	Copperplate-ThirtyThreeBC	Copperplate-ThirtyTwoBC
Coronet-Regular	CoronetCE-Regular	Courier

Table 11: Standard fonts

Table 11	Standard	d fonts
----------	----------	---------

lable 11: Standard fonts		
Courier-Bold	Courier-BoldOblique	Courier-Oblique
CourierCE	CourierCE-Bold	CourierCE-BoldOblique
CourierCE-Oblique	EuroMono-Bold	EuroMono-BoldItalic
EuroMono-Italic	EuroMono-Regular	EuroSans-Bold
EuroSans-BoldItalic	EuroSans-Italic	EuroSans-Regular
EuroSerif-Bold	EuroSerif-BoldItalic	EuroSerif-Italic
EuroSerif-Regular	Eurostile	Eurostile-Bold
Eurostile-BoldExtendedTwo	Eurostile-ExtendedTwo	Geneva
GenevaCE	GillSans	GillSans-Bold
GillSans-BoldCondensed	GillSans-BoldItalic	GillSans-Condensed
GillSans-ExtraBold	GillSans-Italic	GillSans-Light
GillSans-LightItalic	Goudy	Goudy-Bold
Goudy-BoldItalic	Goudy-ExtraBold	Goudy-Italic
Helvetica	Helvetica-Bold	Helvetica-BoldOblique
Helvetica-Condensed	Helvetica-Condensed-Bold	Helvetica-Condensed-BoldObl
Helvetica-Condensed-Oblique	Helvetica-Narrow	Helvetica-Narrow-Bold
Helvetica-Narrow-BoldOblique	Helvetica-Narrow-Oblique	Helvetica-Oblique
HelveticaCE	HelveticaCE-Bold	HelveticaCE-BoldOblique
HelveticaCE-Cond	HelveticaCE-CondBold	HelveticaCE-CondBoldObl
HelveticaCE-CondObl	HelveticaCE-Narrow	HelveticaCE-NarrowBold
HelveticaCE- NarrowBoldOblique	HelveticaCE-NarrowOblique	HelveticaCE-Oblique
HoeflerText-Black	HoeflerText-BlackItalic	HoeflerText-Italic
HoeflerText-Ornaments	HoeflerText-Regular	HoeflerTextCE-Black
HoeflerTextCE-BlackItalic	HoeflerTextCE-Italic	HoeflerTextCE-Regular
JoannaMT	JoannaMT-Bold	JoannaMT-BoldItalic
JoannaMT-Italic	LetterGothic	LetterGothic-Bold
LetterGothic-BoldSlanted	LetterGothic-Slanted	LubalinGraph-Book
LubalinGraph-BookOblique	LubalinGraph-Demi	LubalinGraph-DemiOblique

Fonts

Table	11:	Standard	fonts
Ianic		Stanuaru	IUIILS

Marigold	Monaco	MonacoCE
MonaLisa-Recut	NewCenturySchlbk-Bold	NewCenturySchlbk-BoldItalic
NewCenturySchlbk-Italic	NewCenturySchlbk-Roman	NewCenturySchlbkCE-Bold
NewCenturySchlbkCE- BoldItalic	NewCenturySchlbkCE-Italic	NewCenturySchlbkCE-Roman
NewYork	NewYorkCE	Optima
Optima-Bold	Optima-BoldItalic	Optima-Italic
Oxford	Palatino-Bold	Palatino-BoldItalic
Palatino-Italic	Palatino-Roman	PalatinoCE-Bold
PalatinoCE-BoldItalic	PalatinoCE-Italic	PalatinoCE-Roman
StempelGaramond-Bold	StempelGaramond- BoldItalic	StempelGaramond-Italic
StempelGaramond-Roman	Symbol	Tekton
Times-Bold	Times-BoldItalic	Times-Italic
Times-Roman	TimesCE-Bold	TimesCE-BoldItalic
TimesCE-Italic	TimesCE-Roman	TimesNewRomanCE
TimesNewRomanCE-Bold	TimesNewRomanCE- BoldItalic	TimesNewRomanCE-Italic
TimesNewRomanPS- BoldItalicMT	TimesNewRomanPS- BoldMT	TimesNewRomanPS-ItalicMT
TimesNewRomanPSMT	Univers	Univers-Bold
Univers-BoldExt	Univers-BoldExtObl	Univers-BoldOblique
Univers-Condensed	Univers-CondensedBold	Univers-CondensedBoldOblique
Univers-CondensedOblique	Univers-Extended	Univers-ExtendedObl
Univers-Light	Univers-LightOblique	Univers-Oblique
Wingdings-Regular	ZapfChancery-MediumItalic	ZapfChanceryCE-MediumItalic
ZapfDingbats		

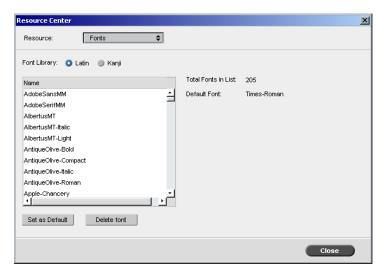
Table 12 lists the standard Kanji fonts that are available on the Spire CXP5000 color server Japanese version:

Table 12: Kanji fonts

FotoMinA101-Bold	FutoGoB101-Bold	GothicBBB - Medium
Jun101-Ligh	MidashiMin-MA31	MidashiGo-MB31
Ryumin-Light	ShinGo - Bold	ShinGo - Light
ShinGo - Medium	ShinGo - Ultra	ShinseiKai - CBSK1

# Managing Fonts on the Spire CXP5000 Color Server

- 1. On the toolbar, click the **Resource Center** button.
  - 2. In the **Resource** list, select **Fonts**.



- 3. Choose a Font Library option. The default option is Latin.
- 4. To set the default font, select a font from the list, and click **Set as Default.**
- 5. To delete a font, select the font, and click **Delete font**.



**Note:** To add new fonts to the Spire CXP5000 color server, copy the new fonts to the **C:\CXP5000\General\RIP\Font** folder.

# **Downloading Fonts**

### Using the Fontdownloader for Macintosh Networks

The Fontdownloader is a driver provided for Macintosh networks and enables you to download fonts from a Macintosh client workstation. The Fontdownloader functions as a communications port and sends messages between the Fontdownloader program and the Spire CXP5000 color server. You cannot send files through the Fontdownloader, only fonts.

#### To download fonts using the Fontdownloader driver (Mac OS 9.X):



**Note:** Mac OS 10.X users that want to download fonts need to use a previous Mac OS version—for example, Mac OS 9.X. It is recommended that you embed the fonts in the file.

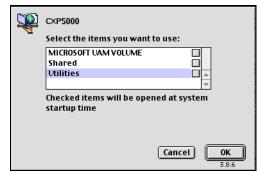
- 1. From the **Apple** menu, select **Chooser**.
- 2. Select **AppleShare** and browse the network to where the Spire CXP5000 color server is configured.
- 3. Select the Spire CXP5000 color server—for example, **CXP5000**—and then click **OK**.

	Chooser 🛛					
		<u> </u>		Select a file	e server:	
			≡	Color G3		
	AppleShare	Color SW 1500		C×P5000		
	d III h	~		CONST_11		
		54		CRE0-CDR		
	Color SW 2500	Color SW Pro	-	CXP425		
				CXP426		
	pleTalk Zones:			CXP7		
1	OVELL			CW1233		
	SD_ALPHA			CW1427		-
	REO			DAFFY		•
-	TA BED ARAP					
_	TA BED ATS			Server IF	Address	OK
-	TA BED EtherTa					
	TA BED Respon TA BED Sales &			AppleTalk	Active	
5	TA BED Sales o	Marketing		, apple faile	🔘 Inactive	7.6.2

The Login dialog box appears.

4. Log in as **Guest** and click the **Connect** button.

The corresponding Spire CXP5000 color server window appears.

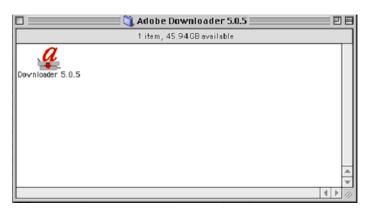


5. Select the **Utilities** folder, and then click **OK**.



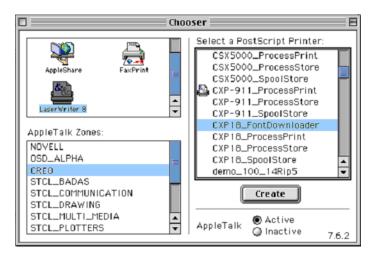
**Note:** Do not select the check box, otherwise it will mount with every reboot.

6. Double-click the Adobe Downloader 5.0.5 folder.

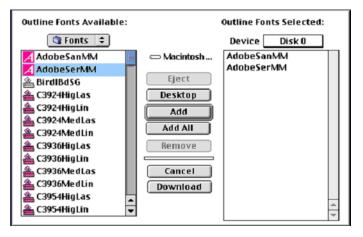


- 7. Copy the **Adobe Downloader 5.0.5** to your desktop.
- 8. From the **Apple** menu, select Chooser.

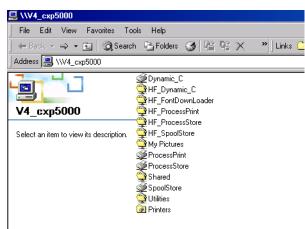
The Chooser window appears.



- 9. Select LaserWriter (8.x) and select the required fontdownloader.
- 10. Click Create.
- 11. Double-click the **Downloader 5.05** on your desktop.
- 12. On the File menu, select Download Fonts.



- 13. In the font area, select the required font directory.
- 14. Verify that **Disk 0** is the selected device.
- 15. Add all the required PostScript fonts and click the **Download** button.



Using the Fontdownloader Hot Folder for Windows

You can use the **HF\_Fontdownloader** hot folder to install new or missing fonts to the Spire CXP5000 color server fonts dictionary. The hot folder is located with the other hot folders on your client workstation and can be used with the following operating systems:

- Windows 2000
- Windows NT
- Windows XP

For more information about hot folders, see Using Hot Folders on page 85.



#### × Golfer\_Letter3 V4\_SPIRECOLORSE... Submitted: Mar 10 , 13:57:19 Virtual printer name: r ₽ ٨ 圄 2 Ð Print Qua Color Finishing Parameters Values Substitute fonts options Job deletion Save O Yes Substitute for 🔵 No APR High Process & Print Job flow Compression Normal Preflight Skip Job info Split to booklets No PDF optimization No Save Cancel Submit

# The Substitute Fonts parameter enables you to set font substitution preferences.

- Select a Substitute fonts option:
  - □ **Yes:** Use this option to substitute a missing font with the default font that is set in the Settings window.



- Note: If a font is substituted, a message appears in the Job History window.
- □ No: Use this option if the required font is missing and you want to stop processing the job.



For more information about managing fonts, see *Managing Fonts on the Spire CXP5000 Color Server* on page 300.

305

# **Substituting Fonts**

This page is intentionally left blank.



# **Color Workflow**

Calibration	308
Default Color Flow	334
Color Tools	352

# Calibration

One of the most important issues in obtaining satisfactory print quality is steady toner density. Toner density is affected by many factors such as heat, humidity and service settings. You can perform a daily calibration to compensate for these factors.

The calibration process corrects the printer colors by measuring their density and creating calibration look-up tables. The Spire CXP5000 color server uses the data in these tables to compensate for the differences between the actual, measured density level and the target level, the target density.

You should perform calibration in the following instances:

- When you use a new paper stock
- When you use a different screening method
- At least once every eight hour shift for every combination of paper stock and screening method used
- When prints show "color casts"
- After machine maintenance or hardware changes—for example, replacing a "Charge Coroton"
- On drastic ambient changes (temperature and humidity)



**Important:** Perform a different calibration for every combination of media and screen type you are going to use for printing. When calibrating, always use the same media that you intend to use for printing.



**Tip:** You can set a reminder to remind you to calibrate the Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press. For more information, see *Calibration Reminder* on page 421.

# Guidelines for Successful Calibration

To ensure your calibration is as accurate as possible, check the following guidelines before you calibrate:

- Ensure that your X-RiteColor® DTP34 QuickCal Densitometer is connected properly
- Ensure that your X-RiteColor DTP34 QuickCal Densitometer is calibrated. You should calibrate the device at least once a week, or whenever the power to the device is interrupted. Use the manufacturer calibration chart supplied with the device. After you finish calibrating the device, make sure you store the chart in the designated envelope.



For more information about the DTP34 Densitometer, see *Calibrating the DTP34 Densitometer* on page 310.

- To warm up the printer, use any media to print at least 25 duplex sheets of any four color test job.
- Print a reference job and use the same media and screen type on which you will print the final job.
- Prepare the calibration pad to measure the calibration charts. If a calibration pad is not available, set a white media, at least 200 gsm, or two sheets of lighter paper, on the surface. Read the calibration chart on this surface.
- Set the Spire CXP5000 color server emulation method to the method you will use to print the customer job (CSA or Device Link).

# The Calibration Process

The calibration process consists of the following steps:

- 1. Calibrate the densitometer, see *Calibrating the DTP34 Densitometer* on page 310.
- 2. Load the paper set you are going to use for printing in the Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press.
- 3. In the Spire CXP5000 color server application, from the **Tools** menu, select **Calibration**, see *Calibrating the Spire CXP5000 Color Server* on page 316.
- 4. Click **Calibrate** to run the Color Calibration Wizard, and to create a calibration table.

X

5. Follow the Color Calibration Wizard steps.

**Note:** Make sure you set the screen type to the one you are going to use to print the job—for example, 200 dot.

- 6. When you measure the two calibration charts, place them on the surface you prepared—for example, on top of the white paper.
- 7. When the calibration is complete, print the job using the calibration table, see *Printing the Job with the Calibration Table* on page 333.



**Tip:** It is strongly recommended that you include the specific paper name and screen method in the calibration table file name. This helps you select the correct calibration table in the job setup.

# Calibrating the DTP34 Densitometer

The calibration process involves printing a CMYK chart, measuring the density of the CMYK strips, and calibrating them to a required target. This process is achieved using the DTP34 Quickcal Densitometer.

The X-Rite DTP34 QuickCal Densitometer is a color measurement instrument that reports densitometer and dot data.

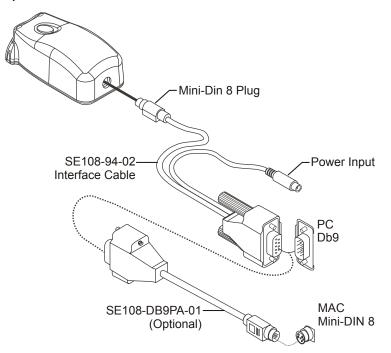
Perform the following steps before first time use of the X-Rite DTP34 QuickCal Densitometer:

• Familiarize yourself with the *X*-*Rite DTP34 QuickCal Densitometer Operations Manual*.



You can also use the DTP34 Tutorial to learn how to use the DTP34 QuickCal Densitometer correctly. Access the tutorial from **Tools>Calibration**, and then click **Calibrate**. In Step 1 of the Color Calibration wizard, click **DTP34 Tutorial - Click & Learn**.

- Connect the X-Rite DTP34 QuickCal Densitometer.
- Calibrate the X-Rite DTP34 QuickCal Densitometer.



Connecting the X-Rite DTP34 QuickCal Densitometer to the Spire CXP5000 color server



**Note:** Verify that the Mini-Din 8 Plug is firmly seated, and that you hear a click sound. The connector is spring loaded and must be properly seated.

Before calibrating the DTP34 QuickCal Densitometer, make sure that:

- The X-Rite DTP34 QuickCal Densitometer must be interfaced directly with one of the computer's serial ports.
- The power supply is plugged into an AC wall outlet and connected to the DTP34 QuickCal Densitometer communication cable.

# Configuring the X-Rite DTP34 QuickCal Densitometer

The LED indicates a variety of instrument operation conditions, such as calibration mode and operation.



For a complete list of all conditions reported by the LED, see the X-Rite DTP34 QuickCal Densitometer Operations Manual.

#### Calibrating the X-Rite DTP34 QuickCal Densitometer

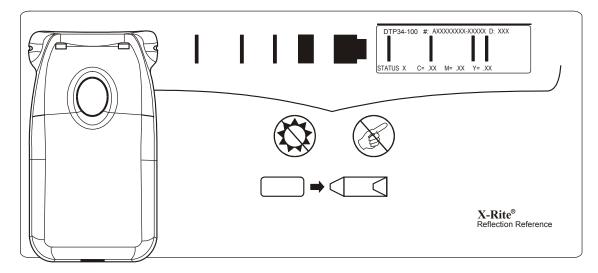
#### **Frequency of Calibration**

Your X-Rite DTP34 QuickCal Densitometer should have a quick calibration at least once a day. A full calibration should be performed annually, during heavy usage to provide accurate measurements, or if the quick calibration consistently fails. Typically, the host computer prompts for an instrument calibration (amber LED) when required, but the process can be invoked manually at any time. See the following procedure for information about the calibration process.

#### Positioning the Instrument on the Calibration Reference

Handle the reflection reference by the edges. Make sure that the reflection reference is free of dust, dirt, and smudge marks. To obtain the most accurate calibration, hold the instrument with consistent and nominal pressure during the calibration process.

Position the instrument on the designated location of the reflection reference (indicated by a dotted outline of the instrument). Do not move the instrument more than 0.25" (6.35mm) before reading the strip.



#### **Quick Calibration**

You can perform a quick calibration at any time. The only required action is to scan the reflection reference as you would with any other strip. You should only perform a quick calibration after a full calibration has been done. New densitometers are fully calibrated before leaving the factory.

- 1. Position the X-Rite DTP34 QuickCal Densitometer on the reference as previously mentioned.
- 2. Press and click the button and scan the reference to the opposite end. Release the button. The LED should indicate green if the calibration was successful. If calibration fails (fast flashing amber LED), verify that the strip is clean and re-read.
- 3. Place the reflection reference in its protective envelope, and store the envelope away from light and heat.

#### **Full Calibration**

Note: If the host computer initiated calibration (amber LED), skip to step 2.



1. To manually invoke the calibration mode, click and hold the **Instrument** button for a minimum of three seconds. The LED slowly flashes amber when calibration is initiated.

- 2. Press and hold the button (if not previously held) and scan the reference to the opposite end. Release the button. The LED should indicate green if the calibration was successful. If calibration fails, (fast flashing amber LED), verify the strip is clean and re-read.
- 3. Place the reflection reference in its protective envelope, and store the envelope away from light and heat.

# **Color Calibration Methods**

The Spire CXP5000 color server provides you with two color calibration methods:

#### • Target Calibration

This calibration method enables you to calibrate the Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press according to the following fixed, predefined density values:

Table 19. Thed density values for		
Toner	Density value	
Cyan	1.7	
Magenta	1.27	
Yellow	0.82	
Black	1.8	

Table 13: Fixed density values for uncoated paper

Table 14: Fixed density values for coated paper

Toner	Density value
Cyan	1.9
Magenta	1.44
Yellow	0.87
Black	1.9

The target calibration method ensures that the density values of the printed output do not exceed the predefined density values. The purpose of this color calibration method is to ensure consistency over time.

#### Auto Adjusted Calibration

This calibration method enables you to calibrate the Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press according to the printer's performance capabilities.

With this method, you can set the maximum density of the printed output by selecting the desired percentage level. The higher the percentage, the greater the density of the printed color. The purpose of this method is to achieve optimal color intensity for a specific printer at a certain point in time.

The default setting for the color calibration method of the Spire CXP5000 color server is target calibration. You can change the setting, if necessary, before calibrating the Spire CXP5000 color server.

#### To specify the calibration method:

1. In the Settings window, select **Preferences>Color**.

Administration	Calibration Method
Server Setup	
Network Setup	O Target
Remote Tools Setup	Auto Adjusted Advanced
Security	
System Disks	Emulations
Configuration Backup	Device Link 🗢
Preferences	
Localization	Automatic Screening
Pre-RIP Preview	
General Defaults	LW: Line 200 🜩
Print Queue Manager	CT: Dot 200 🗢
Color	
Messages	Color conversion tables
View Configuration	Current version color tables
	Calibration Reminder
	Set calibration reminder every (Hours) 24

- 2. In the **Calibration Method** area, select the required calibration method, **Target** or **Auto Adjusted**.
- 3. If you selected **Auto Adjusted** and you would like to change the default settings, click **Advanced**.

Auto Adjusted						×
Automatically Adjusted calibration to printer current state.						
Percent of Prin	ter Max	Setup:		85 🔅	%	
I I 70 75	I 80	- <b>]</b> 85	і 90	і 95	I 100	
		Save		Can	cel	

The Auto Adjusted window appears.

4. Change the **Percent of Printer Max Setup** density if required, by moving the slider, or by typing a percentage value in the corresponding box.



**Note:** The default percentage value is 85%.

5. Click Save.

**Important:** Changes to the calibration method during RIP will not take effect.



# Calibrating the Spire CXP5000 Color Server

The Calibration window enables you to create and edit calibration tables. You can use the Color Calibration Wizard to create a calibration table, or edit an existing calibration table.

The Color Calibration Wizard analyzes the measurements and creates calibration tables. Using these tables, the Spire CXP5000 color server compensates for the difference between the printer's performance and the desired values.

The following calibration look up tables are provided:

- **None:** Applies no calibration table to the job.
- **SpireNormal:** Applies the factory default calibration table. Since this is a default look up table it cannot be overwritten.

- **SpireSaturated:** Applies the factory default saturated calibration table. This look up table applies a darker calibration table in comparison to the **SpireNormal** look up table. Since this look up table is a default table it cannot be overwritten.
- Normal: Initially the Normal look up table is identical to the SpireNormal look up table. This resemblance changes as soon as you calibrate your Spire CXP5000 color server, and at the end of the calibration process choose to save your calibration table as default. As a result, your calibration table is saved as the Normal look up table.
- Saturated: Initially the Normal look up table is identical to the SpireSaturated look up table. This resemblance changes as soon as you calibrate your Spire CXP5000 color server, and at the end of the calibration process choose to save your calibration table as default. As a result, your calibration table is saved as the Saturated look up table.

Se .

**Note:** Each time you save a calibration table as default, it is saved twice, once as Normal look up table, and once as the Saturated look up table.

#### To open the Calibration window:

1. From the **Tools** menu, select **Calibration**.

The Calibration window appears.

Zalibration		2
Printer Calibratio	n:	Calibrate
Edit Calibration:		
Calibration Name:	None Normal Saturated SpireNormal SpireSaturated	Edit Delete Info
		Close

The following options are available:

- Click **Calibrate** to run the Color Calibration Wizard. This wizard guides you in the use of the X-Rite DTP34 to create calibration tables, see *Creating a Calibration Table* on page 318.
- Select a calibration table from the **Calibration Name** list and select one of the following options:
  - □ Click **Edit** to edit the calibration table, see *Editing Calibration Tables* on page 326.
  - □ Click **Delete** to delete the calibration table.
  - □ Click Info for the Density Graph, see *Reading Color Density Data* on page 331.
  - □ Click **Close** to end a test job and close the Calibration window.

### Creating a Calibration Table

1. In the Calibration window, click **Calibrate**.

The first step in the wizard is **Printing Start Point Chart**. This step enables you to detect the point where you start to see toner on the paper. Before printing the start point chart, you need to set the following parameters according to the values of your job:

- Tray
- Screening method
- Media type

Zolor Calibration Wizard		×			
Step 1. Printing Start Point Chart					
	Choose input tray and media type, then press "Print" button.				
	Select tray: Select screening method:	Auto 💠			
	Select screening method: Paper Weight :	Dot 200 🔶 81-105 gsm 🜩			
	Paper coating :	Uncoated 🗢			
Wizard Steps 1. Printing Start Point Chart 2. Measuring Start Points 2. Division Office Start Points	DTP34 Tutorial - Click & Learn It is recommended to calibrate the DT device at least once a week.	P34 -			
3. Printing Calibration Chart 4. Measuring Colors	Number of copies:	1 (1-25)			
5. Save Calibration		Print			
Sack Next >>		Cancel			

2. Select the required input tray from the **Select tray** list.



**Note:** Click the **DTP34 Tutorial - Click & Learn** icon to display an animation of the measurement process and to learn how to use the DTP 34 QuickCal Densitometer correctly.

The default tray setting is **Auto**. When this option is selected, the wizard looks for a tray that contains **Letter LEF** or **A4 LEF** paper. If the wizard does not find a tray with either of these sizes, an alert appears.

You can print calibration charts on any size paper. Just ensure that the required paper is in one of the trays, and then select that tray in the wizard.

- 3. Select the required screening method from the **Select screening method** list.
- 4. Select the required Paper Weight from the list.
- 5. From the **Paper coating** options, select **Coated** or **Uncoated** paper stock.
- 6. Set the number of copies you need by typing the number or using the arrows next to the box to select the number.
- 7. Click Print.

The Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press prints a Start Point Density calibration chart.

8. Collect the chart from the printer.

Step 2 of the Color Calibration Wizard appears. In this step you scan the start point chart so that the wizard can measure each separation and find the point at which the toner appears on the paper.

Color Calibration Wizard	×
Step 2. Measuring Start	Points
	Position the QuickCal on the illustration, at the beginning of the cyan color patches; press the button and roll the X-Rite smoothly along the patches.
	<b>C</b>
Wizard Steps 1. Printing Start Point Chart	M
2. Measuring Start Points	Y
3. Printing Calibration Chart	ĸ
4. Measuring Colors	
5. Save Calibration	Reset
Kext Next >>	Cancel

- 9. While pressing down the button on the X-Rite DTP34, align the X-Rite DTP34's head with the cyan arrow's tip. The arrow is to the left of the cyan column on the Image Density Calibration Curve. Its tip intersects the semi-dotted line.
- 10. Press the button on the X-Rite DTP34.
- 11. Sweep the X-Rite DTP34 over the cyan column.

A beep sounds and a green light blinks when the scan is complete. A check mark appears over the cyan icon and instructions appear for the next sweep, this time for the magenta column.



12. After each color sweep, wait for the check mark to appear over the appropriate icon and follow the instructions as listed.



**Note:** Ensure that the separation columns on the **Continuous Tone Chart** are scanned in the order they appear in the icons: **Cyan>Magenta>Yellow>Black**.

When all of the separation columns have been successfully scanned, a check mark appears next to all icons.



#### Notes:

- If at any stage the scanning has not been completed properly, click **Reset** and scan again.
- If an error occurs while you are scanning the chart, an alert message appears. Click **OK** and re-scan the charts.



Step 3 of the Color Calibration Wizard appears.

13. Click Print.



**Note:** If you selected automatic screening in Step 1 of the wizard, the Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press prints two charts, an **Image Density Calibration Chart** and a **Text/Line Art Chart**. If you selected any other screening method, only the **Image Density Calibration Chart** is printed.

14. Collect the chart(s) from the printer.

# Step 4. Measuring Colors Step 4. Measuring Colors Step 4. Measuring Colors Position the QuickCal on the illustration, at the beginning of the cyan color patches; press the button and roll the X-Rite smoothly along the patches. Wizard Steps 1. Printing Start Point Chart 2. Measuring Start Points 3. Printing Calibration Chart 4. Measuring Colors 5. Save Calibration Kext > Cancel

#### Step 4 of the Color Calibration Wizard appears.



**Note:** If at any stage the scanning has not been completed properly, click **Reset** and scan again.

15. Position the X-Rite DTP34 over the **Image Density Calibration Chart** and follow the scan sequence as prompted.

A beep sounds when the scan is complete. A check mark appears next to the cyan icon and instructions appear for scanning of the next column (magenta).

Color Calibration Wizard	×
Step 4. Measuring Col	Drs
	Position the QuickCal on the illustration, at the beginning of the black color patches; press the button and roll the X-Rite smoothly along the patches.
Wizard Steps 1. Printing Start Point Chart	M
2. Measuring Start Points	<b>∀</b>
3. Printing Calibration Chart	
4. Measuring Colors	<b>₭</b>
5. Save Calibration	Reset
<	Cancel

16. After each scan, wait for the check mark to appear next to the appropriate icon and follow the instructions as listed.



**Note:** Ensure that the separation columns on the **Image Density Chart** are scanned in the order they appear in the icons: **Cyan>Magenta>Yellow>Black**.

When all of the separation columns have been successfully measured, a check mark appears next to all icons.

17. If in Step 1 of the wizard, you selected Auto from the Select screening method list, you are now required to sweep the Text/Line Art Chart. Follow the same scan sequence. Begin each chart with the cyan column.



**Note:** After the LW Density black separation is scanned and the beep is heard, it can take several seconds until the check mark appears in the box.



When all of the Text/Line Art separation columns have been successfully measured, a check mark appears next to all icons.



**Note:** If at any stage the scanning has not been completed properly, click **Reset** and scan again.

Step 5 of the Color Calibration Wizard appears.

🚪 Color Calibration Wizard			×
Step 5. Save Calibratio	n Save Calibration results: C Save as: C As default table (Norm	Normal al)	÷
Wizard Steps 1. Printing Start Point Chart			
2. Measuring Start Points			
3. Printing Calibration Chart			
4. Measuring Colors			
5. Save Calibration			
<back next="">&gt;&gt;</back>		Finish	Cancel

 Select Save as and select the required name for the calibration table. Type your own or select one from the list. Or:

Select As default table to save the calibration table as Normal.

If you choose the **As default table** option, the Spire CXP5000 color server automatically overwrites the existing **Normal** and **Saturated** calibration tables.

#### 19. Click Finish.

Regardless of the option you choose, two calibration tables are saved:

- **Normal:** A table that maintains the gray balance throughout the range of colors in the print job file
- **Saturated:** A table that is the same as the normal table for 80% of the color range but from that point on, each color has a greater density. You can use this table when you need dark colors that are more intense than in the normal table.

For example, if you name your **Normal** calibration table Tuesday23, the **Saturated** table is automatically named Tuesday23.sat.

#### **Editing Calibration Tables**

You can review a calibration table to make sure that the curves are relatively smooth and continuous. If you are not satisfied with the results, the **Edit** option enables you to adjust the values of the image in the value table.

#### To edit a calibration table:

- 1. From the Tools menu, select Calibration.
- 2. In the **Calibration Name** box, select a calibration table, and then click **Edit**.

🗾 Edit Calibra	tion		×
			« O V C 🔷
Calibration Nar	ne:	Normal (12/21/03 11:32)	Printer Value
Screen:			100+
00,000,0		ст 🗢	90+ /
Separation:		Cyan 💠	80+
			70-
File Value	Printe	r Value	
			60+
0.0	0.0	Add Entry	50+
0.5	0.0		40+
2.0	4.0	Delete Ent	ry
4.0	7.5		20-
7.0	9.5		
11.0	11.5		10+
15.0 20.0	14.0		
120.0	11.0		0 10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90 100 File Value
	_		
Save As.		Save Clos	se 🖉

#### The Edit Calibration window appears.

#### Screen

If you selected **Automatic** as the screening method, you can view two calibration tables, **CT** or **LW**. In the **Screen** list, select the table you want to view.

#### Separation

The graph displays cyan, magenta, yellow, and black separations. You can see information about each separation by selecting it from the list.

#### Value Table

 File Value
 Printer Value

 0.0
 0.0
 •

 0.5
 0.0
 •

 1.0
 0.0
 •

 2.0
 4.0
 •

 4.0
 7.5
 •

 7.0
 9.5
 •

 11.0
 11.5
 •

 15.0
 14.0
 •

 20.0
 17.0
 •

You can change the separation values by adjusting the **File Value** and **Printer Value** settings. The table displays some of the dot percentage values shown in the graph. You can add, edit, or delete entries in the table. Your changes will be displayed immediately in the calibration graph.

# **Editing Calibration Value Tables**

#### To add an entry to the value table:

- 1. Highlight a row in the value table. The new entry row will appear below this row.
- 2. Click Add Entry.

The Add Entry dialog box appears.

Add Entry		×
File Value	1.5	\$
Printer Value	0.0	<b>÷</b>
	ОК	Cancel

- 3. Select the required values from the File and Printer lists.
- 4. Click **OK**.

The value table is updated and the calibration graph is adjusted.

#### To change an existing value table:

1. Highlight a row and double-click on the row you want to edit.

The Edit Entry dialog box appears.

Edit Entry		×
File Value	1.0	\$
Printer Value	0.0	÷
	ОК	Cancel

- 2. Adjust the **File Value** and **Printer Value** as required by clicking on the arrow buttons.
- 3. Click **OK**.

The value table is updated and the calibration graph is adjusted.

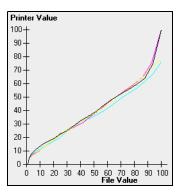
#### To delete an entry from the value table:

- 1. In the value table, highlight the entry to be deleted.
- 2. Click Delete Entry.

The entry is removed.

#### **Calibration Graph**

The graph shows the values from your calibration table.



Calibration graph showing separations

The horizontal axis represents the dot percentage values of the RTP file. The vertical axis represents the dot percentage values of the final output data (after applying the calibration table) that is sent to the printer.

During printing, the Spire CXP5000 color server automatically replaces the CMYK values in the RTP file with new values that compensate for the printer's current performance level.

 $\ll$ 

To open or hide the calibration graph, click the arrow button in the Edit Calibration dialog box.

#### **Viewing Separations**

The graph displays cyan, magenta, yellow, and black separations. You can view detailed information about each separation by clicking its button. To view the information for all the separations together, click the button that shows all four colors.



#### **Organizing Calibration Tables**

You can use the **Save** and **Save As** functions to organize your calibration tables.

#### To save an existing calibration table:

- 1. In the Edit Calibration dialog box, adjust calibration table values and parameters as required.
- 2. Click Save.

The edited calibration table is saved with its original name.



**Note:** When you click **Save**, new calibration settings override previous calibration table settings.

#### To save a new calibration table:

- 1. In the Edit Calibration dialog box, adjust calibration table values and parameters as required.
- 2. Click Save As.

The Save As dialog box appears.

🚰 Save As	×
File Name:	
ок	Cancel

3. In the File Name box, type the new calibration table name.



**Note:** You can't overwrite the default calibration tables, **Spire Normal** and **Spire Saturated**.

4. Click **OK**.

The calibration table is saved with the new name.



**Note:** To edit a calibration table, select **Tools>Calibration>Edit.** To view information about a calibration table, select **Tools>Calibration>Info**.

5. Click **Close** to exit the Edit Calibration dialog box.

# Backing Up Calibration Tables

 Locate the ColorCalibrationDB folder, following the path C:\CXP5000\General\ColorCalibration\ColorCalibrationDB.

💐 C:\CXP5000\General\ColorCalibratio	on\Co	lorCalibrationDB		1	<u>- 🗆 ×</u>	
Eile Edit View Favorites Tools Help					-	
🕁 Back 🔹 🔿 👻 🔂 🎯 Search 🛛 🔒	🕁 Back 🔹 🤿 🐐 🔯 🥘 Search 🛛 🎦 Folders 🦪 📲 🖤 🗶 🖄 🧱 🕶					
Address C:\CXP5000,General\ColorCalibration\ColorCalibrationDB						
Folders	х	Name 🛆	Size	Туре		
General	B	Measureds CSXNormal.mdb CSXSaturated.mdb Normal.mdb Saturated.md Size: 1	110 KB 110 KB 110 KB 110 KB 110 KB 10 KB			
Data	•	•			Þ	
6 object(s) (Disk free space: 1.71 GB)		550 k	(В 📃 Му С	omputer		

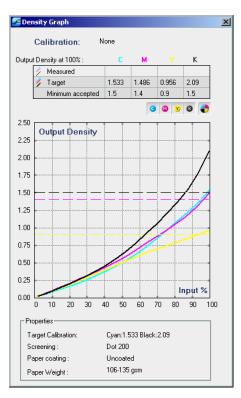
- 2. Open the **ColorCalibrationDB** folder.
- 3. Copy the required calibration table files to your backup location.

# **Reading Color Density Data**

#### To view the Density Graph:

- 1. In the Calibration window, from the **Calibration Name** list, select the table for which you want to receive detailed color information.
- 2. Click Info.

The Density Graph appears. The Density Graph gives you detailed information about the saved calibration tables.



Calibration graph showing Cyan, Magenta, Yellow and Black separations.

The Density Graph contains the following data:

- Calibration name
- Measured D-Max values for each separation
- Target D-Max values for each separation
- Minimum accepted density values for each separation (Xerox values)
- View options: filtering by color select which colors are shown/hidden
- Calibration curves (target and measured) for each separation
  - □ Target is displayed as bold lines
  - □ Measured is displayed as thin lines
- Index emphasizes the difference between target lines and measured lines

Properties: paperweight, screening, paper coating



Note: When the density of the Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press is lower than 80% of the target density, the following message appears: "Attention: Below standard D-Max value(s) measured for <cyan, magenta, yellow, black>. Standard (Minimum): <C - 1.5>, <M - 1.4>, <Y - 0.9>, <K - 1.5> Measured: <C - >, <M - >, <Y - >, <K - >".

# Printing the Job with the Calibration Table

Now that you have calibrated the paper you are going to use for printing, you can select the calibration table to print any job on the same paper stock using the same screen type. You can print the reference job you printed before with the new calibration table to evaluate the calibration results.

#### To print the reference job:

- 1. In the Spire CXP5000 color server workspace, suspend the **Process Queue**.
- 2. Import the job.
- 3. Double-click the job to open the Job Parameters window.
- 4. In the Paper Stock tab, select the desired paper stock.
- 5. On the **Color** tab, select the calibration you created for the particular stock from which you printed.



For more information about the Color tab, see *Default Color Flow* on page 334.

- 6. In the **Color** tab, select the screening method you used for the selected calibration.
- 7. Set all other desired parameters, and then click **OK** to close the Job Parameters window.
- 8. Activate the **Process Queue** and **Print Queue**, and inspect the printed job.

If you see that the print out has any color imperfection, review the job parameter settings and make changes if necessary. If there are still color imperfections, perform machine maintenance and repeat the calibration process.

# **Default Color Flow**

Color job parameters are located in the Job Parameters window>**Color** tab. The **Color** tab provides you with tone compression tools such as brightness, contrast and gradation, as well as color tools, including rendering intent, ink saving, and RGB+CMYK Workflow. In addition, you can select various screening methods for your job.

The tone compression tools and screening methods, **Gradation**, **Brightness**, **Contrast**, and **Calibration**, can be applied to your RTP jobs without requiring the Spire CXP5000 color server to re-RIP the jobs. The color tools, **Destination**, **Rendering Intent**, **Emulation**, **RGB Workflow**, and **Spot Color Editor**, should be applied prior to initial RIPing or your job will need to be re-RIPed.

The Spire CXP5000 color server accepts the following color formats:

- RGB
- CMYK
- L a\* b\*
- Spot Color
- Greyscale
- Duotone

# To submit jobs for color adjustment on the Spire CXP5000 color server:

- 1. Import the job to the Spire CXP5000 color server workspace.
- 2. Double-click on the job in the Storage window.
- 3. Select the **Color** tab in the Job Parameters window.

The **Color** tab enables you to apply last-minute color corrections, or to set the output job to match other output devices.

4. Adjust the required color parameters (see the relevant parameter in the **Color** tab).

5. Click **Submit** to send your job to print.

The job is processed on the Spire CXP5000 color server and sent to the Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press for printing.



**Note:** You can also use a virtual printer to adjust job parameters.



For more information about submitting jobs to the Spire CXP5000 color server, see *Importing and Printing Jobs* on page 154.

#### Color Workflow Terminology

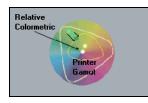
This section defines the terms used in the RGB and CMYK workflow.

- **CSA (Color Space Array)** is the spectrum of specific variants of a color model with a specific gamut or color range. For example, within the color model RGB, there are numerous color spaces, such as Apple RGB, sRGB, and Adobe RGB. While each of these define color by the same three axes (R, G, and B), they differ in gamut and other specifications. CSA is comprised of a three-dimensional geometric representation of colors that can be seen or generated using a certain color model and are quantitatively measured. Source CSA is to be used only under the assumption that the upstream color workflow was managed and monitored. Otherwise it should be replaced with a Creo profile, which is the default.
- **CSA Profiles:** There are three CSA profiles with gammas of 1.8, 2.1 and 2.4. The higher the gamma, the darker the RGB appears. This workflow should be used when you have images from different sources, such as digital cameras, Internet, and scanners and you want the images to have the common RGB color spaces. Other possible CSA profiles are sRGB and Adobe RGB.
- **Rendering Intent:** All printers, monitors and scanners have a gamut or range of colors that they can output (or view in the case of a scanner). If a color needs to be output and is outside the gamut of the output device, it must be mapped or approximated to some other color, which exists within the gamut. Rendering Intent enables you to compress out-of-gamut colors into the color capability of the press you are using. You can set any rendering intent value for **RGB** elements by selecting the required from the **Rendering intent options** list. The default value for RGB is **Perceptual (photographic)**. The default value for CMYK is **Relative Colorimetric**.

There are several methods that can be used when translating colors from one color space to another. These methods are called Rendering Intents because they are optimized for various uses. When working with ICC profiles, it is important that you select the Rendering Intent that best preserves the important aspects of the image. Each rendering method specifies a CRD for color conversions. You can modify the rendering method to control the appearance of images, such as prints from office applications or RGB photographs from Photoshop.

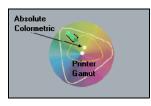
• **Relative Colorimetric:** a rendering intent method in which colors that fall within the output color space remain the same. Only colors that fall outside are changed to the closest possible color within the output color space.

When using this method, some closely related colors in the input color space can be mapped to a single color in the output color space. This reduces the number of colors in the image.



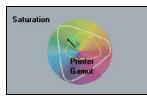
• Absolute Colorimetric: a rendering intent method similar to Relative Colorimetric except that it does not make adjustments according to the white point. In this method, colors that do not fit within the output color space are rendered at the extremes of the output color space. Colors that fall inside the output color space are matched very accurately.

This method is valuable for representing "signature colors". Colors that are highly identified with a commercial product such as the cyan in the Creo logo.



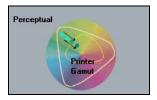
• **Saturated (presentation)** - a rendering intent method which scales all colors to the strongest saturation possible. The relative saturation is maintained from one color space to another.

This rendering style option is optimal for artwork and graphs in presentations. In many cases, this style option can be used for mixed pages that contain both presentation graphics and photographs.



• **Perceptual (Photographic)** (default for RGB) - a rendering intent method which preserves the visual relationship among the colors as they are perceived by the human eye. In other words, all colors are proportionally scaled to fit the output gamut. All or most colors in the original are changed but the relationship between them does not change.

This method is recommended when working with realistic images such as photographs, including scans and images from stock photography CDs.



# Color Mode

Job Parameters		X
Job name: Golfer_Letter	3 Virtual print	ter name: V4_SPIRECOLORSE Submitted: Mar 10 , 13:57:19
Print Settings Paper Stock	Print Guality	
Parameters	Values	Color mode options
Color mode	Color	
RGB workflow	SpireRGB_2.1	O Color
CMYK workflow	Direct	Grayscale
Spot workflow	Use Dictionary	
Destination profile	Linked	
Screening	Dot 200	
Calibration	Normal	
Ink saving (GCR)	None	
Color adjustments	No	
		Submit Save Cancel

The **Color Mode** parameter enables you to print color jobs in black and white using the black toner only. When a color job is printed using the **Grayscale** option, the Cyan (C), Magenta (M), and Yellow (Y) separations are also printed in Black (K) toner, giving a dense appearance similar to the CMYK grayscale image.



**Note:** When you print color jobs using the **Color** option, you can also select the **Print grays using black toner** check box in the **RGB Workflow** parameter, so that RGB gray text and graphics will be printed using black toner only.



For more information about the **Print grays using black toner** check box, see *RGB Workflow* on page 339.

#### To set the color mode:

- 1. Select **Grayscale** to print the job as black and white using Black (K) toner only.
  - Or:
  - Select **Color** to print the job in color using CMYK.

2. If you have selected **Color**, select the **Print grays using black toner** check box in the **RGB Workflow** parameter, to print RGB gray text and graphics using black toner only.

**Note:** Grayscale images created in RGB applications, such as PowerPoint, should be specified as Monochrome or submitted to the system with **Grayscale** selected in the PPD file. This selection ensures that grayscale images are counted as black and white instead of color in both the Spire CXP5000 color server and in the Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press billing meters.

# **RGB** Workflow

	r3 Virtual prin	ter name: V4_SPIRECOLORSE Submitted: Mar 10 , 1	3:57:19
int Settings Paper Stoc	k Print Quality		Exception
Parameters	Values	RGB workflow options	
Color mode	Color	RGB Workflow: SpireRGB 2.1	ŧ
RGB workflow	SpireRGB_2.1	Rendering intent: Perceptual	<b>†</b>
CMYK workflow	Direct	Rendering Intent. Perceptual	<b>—</b>
Spot workflow	Use Dictionary	Print grays using black toner	
Destination profile	Linked		
Screening	Dot 200		
Calibration	Normal		
Ink saving (GCR)	None		
Color adjustments	NU		
		Submit Save Cr	ncel

The **RGB Workflow** parameter enables you to select a RGB profile and apply it to RGB elements in your job. You can use predefined profiles, or to achieve better color results, import your own custom profile via the **Profile Manager**.



For more information about importing RGB profiles, see *Profile Manager* on page 352.

#### To set the RGB workflow options:

- 1. In the **RGB Workflow** list, select the required RGB source profile:
  - To use the embedded CSA or source CSA, select **Use SourceCSA**.
  - To use a Spire or Adobe CSA, select a CSA from the list. The default option is **SpireRGB\_2.1**.
  - To use a custom RGB profile, select the profile name from the list.
- 2. In the **Rendering intent** list, select the required option



For more information about choosing the correct rendering intent, see *To* set the RGB workflow options: on page 340.

3. Select the **Print grays using black toner** check box if you want RGB gray text and graphics to be printed with black toner only.



**Note:** The **Print grays using black toner** check box not only affects R=G=B values, but may also cause slightly different values (R+/-4=B+/-4=G+/-4) to produce gray.

#### **CMYK Workflow**

Deparameters Job name: Golfer_Leth Department Settings Paper Stor	x Print Quality Co	Inter name: V4_SPIRECOLORSE Submitted: Mar	10 , 13:57:19
Parameters Color mode RGB workflow CMYK workflow Destination profile Screening Calibration Ink saving (GCR) Color adjustments	Values Color SpireRGB_2.1 Direct Use Dictionary Linked Dot 200 Normal None No	CMYK workflow options    Originat:  Emulation:  Emulate source paper tint  Emulate RGB elements  Preserve pure colors  Rendering intent: Relative Colorimetric	¢
		Submit Save	Cancel

The **CMYK workflow** is used to emulate various standards used in lithographic printing. These standards represent specific combinations of paper and ink, as well as popular proofing systems. It is also used to emulate other printing devices such as offset presses, or other digital printers. An example of a CMYK workflow job would be printing a test sample for a survey before moving to an offset press to print millions of survey forms. In such a case, it is best to emulate the offset before the job actually goes to offset printing.



Note: RGB colors are not affected by the CMYK workflow.

The Spire CXP5000 color server supports two CMYK emulation methods, **Device Link** (default) and **CSA**. If you would like to use the CSA method, select **Tools>Settings>Color** and change the emulation method.



For more information about choosing an emulation method, see *Emulations* on page 419.

The **CMYK workflow** parameter is also used to specify the required rendering intent for CMYK elements. All printers, monitors, and scanners have a gamut or range of colors that they can output (or view in the case of a scanner). If a color needs to be output and is outside the gamut of the output device, it must be mapped or approximated to some other color, which exists within the gamut.

Rendering Intent enables you to compress out-of-gamut colors into the color capability of the press you are using. You can set any rendering intent value for **CMYK** elements by selecting the required from the **Rendering intent** list. The default value for CMYK is **Relative Colorimetric**.



**Note:** If you select the **Device Link** emulation profile, you cannot select a rendering intent because for each device link emulation profile a rendering intent is already defined.

In addition, you may also select to emulate the paper tint and adjust the white point value of the used paper stock. For example, if you want to simulate pink paper stock while using white paper stock, you may use the corresponding emulation profile and select the **Emulate source paper tint** check box. The result will be that in addition to the job emulation, the paper tint will be also emulated and will have a pink shade.

#### To select CMYK workflow options:

- 1. In the **Original** list, select one of the following options:
  - **Direct:** This is the default CMYK workflow. The CMYK elements are printed without any color transformation.
  - Use Source CSA: Uses the embedded CSA from the PostScript file.
- 2. In the **Emulation** list, select the required emulation.



**Note:** The system emulates the selected option during the RIP process. GCR and CMYK Emulation do not affect the processed job.

• Select the **Emulate source paper tint** check box to emulate the original paper tint.

#### Notes:

- The **Emulate source paper tint** check box is available only if you select **Device Link** as the emulation method.
- When the **Emulate source paper tint** check box is selected, **Absolute Colorimetric** will be used as the rendering method.
- If the job is simplex, only the front side will be printed using the tint emulation.
- Select **Emulate RGB elements** to convert RGB elements according to the selected CMYK emulation method. The RGB elements receive the same look as the CMYK elements, creating a consistent appearance.
- Select the **Preserve pure colors** check box to preserve pure cyan, magenta, yellow, and black during transformation.
- 3. In the **Rendering intent** list, select the required option.

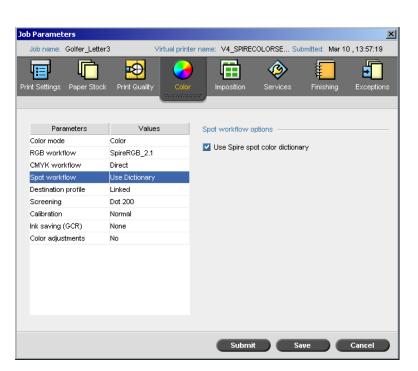


For more information about choosing the correct rendering intent, see *To* set the *RGB* workflow options: on page 340.



**Note:** If you selected **Device Link** as the emulation method, you cannot select a rendering intent because for each device link emulation a rendering intent is already defined.

# Spot Workflow



By default, the Spire CXP5000 color server looks in the spot color dictionary for the correct value each time there is a spot color with a recognized name.

#### To ignore the spot color dictionary:

In the Spot workflow options area, clear the Use Spire spot color dictionary check box.



For more information about the Spire spot color dictionary, see *Spot Color Editor and Workflow* on page 357.

ob Parameters					X
Job name: Golfer_Letter3	3 Virtual print	er name: V4_SPIRI	ECOLORSE Sul	bmitted: Mar 10	0 , 13:57:19
Print Settings Paper Stock	Print Quality		Services	Finishing	Exceptions
Parameters	Values	Destination pro	file options		
Color mode	Color				
RGB workflow	SpireRGB_2.1	Profile:	Linked		\$
CMYK workflow	Direct				
Spot workflow	Use Dictionary				
Destination profile	Linked				
Screening	Dot 200				
Calibration	Normal				
Ink saving (GCR)	None				
Color adjustments	No				
		Subn	nit Sa	ive	Cancel

# **Destination Profile**

The **Destination profile** parameter enables you to select a custom or predefined destination profile. After you import a custom destination profile via the **Profile Manager**, it is displayed in the **Profile** list. There are two predefined Spire CXP5000 color server profiles, **DC\_5252.GA and DC\_5252.COM**. If you map, or link, a profile to a specific paper color, the same profile will always be used for that paper set.



For more information about destination profiles, see *Profile Manager* on page 352.

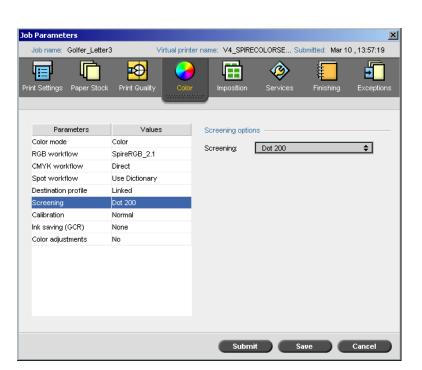


**Note:** The predefined profiles for the Xerox DocuColor 2045 Digital Color Press are DC6060\_DC2000.COM and DC6060\_DC2000.GA.

#### To set the destination profile:

> In the **Profile** list, select the required profile.

## Screening



**Screening** converts CT (Continuous Tone) and LW (Line Work) images into information (halftone dots) that can be printed. The human eye "smooths out" this information, which seems visually consistent with the original picture. Thus, the more lines per inch, the more natural the image appears.

Screening is achieved by printing dots in numerous shapes or lines in an evenly spaced pattern. The distance between the screen dots or lines is fixed and determines the quality of the image.

Printers can work with even amounts of toner and still produce a wide range of colors when you use screening. The darker the color, the larger the dot.

The Spire CXP5000 color server supports six types of screening:

 Automatic applies two types of screens: For CT, the system uses dot type screen of 200 lpi.
 For LW (text and line-art elements), the system uses line type screen of 200 lpi. Automatic screening results in the printing of text and graphic shapes at Continuous Tone. Automatic screening is the recommended screening mode.



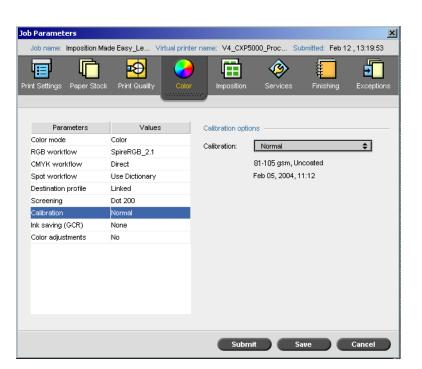
**Note:** To change the **Automatic** screening values, see *Automatic Screening* on page 420.

- **Dot 150** applies Dot type screen of 150 lpi. The screen of each separation is printed at a different angle.
- **Dot 200** applies Dot type screen of 200 lpi. The screen of each separation is printed at a different angle.
- Line 200 applies Line type screen of 200 lpi. The screen of each separation is printed at a different angle.
- Line **300** applies Line type screen of 300 lpi. All separations are printed at 90 degrees screen angle.
- Line 600 applies Line type screen of 600 lpi. All separations are printed at 90 degrees screen angle.

#### To select a screening method:

In the Screening list, select the required option. For CT images, use a dot option, and for LW images, use a line option. If you select the Automatic option, Dot 200 will be used for CT images and Line 200 will be used for LW images.

# Calibration



The purpose of color calibration is to achieve a consistent level of color quality. The calibration process corrects printer colors by measuring a chart using a densitometer, which measures color density.

The Spire CXP5000 color server Calibration tool enables you to create and edit calibration tables, either through an automatic process or by editing an existing calibration table. The available calibration options are **Normal**, **Saturated** and **None**.



For more information about calibration tables, see Calibration on page 308.

The **Calibration** parameter enables you to select the required calibration table for the job.

#### To select a calibration table for a job:

In the Calibration list, select a calibration table. The default calibration table is Normal.



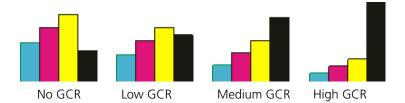
**Tip:** For optimal printing performance, use the **Normal** (default) calibration setting (with **Medium** GCR).

# Ink Saving (GCR)

Job Parameters			×
Job name: Golfer_Letter	r3 Virtual print	ter name: V4_SPIRECOLORSE Submitted: Mar 10 , 13:5	7:19
Print Settings Paper Stock	Print Quality		ptions
Parameters	Values	Ink saving options	
Color mode	Color		
RGB workflow	SpireRGB_2.1	📙 🗿 None	
CMYK workflow	Direct	a law	
Spot workflow	Use Dictionary	<u>ii</u> 🔍 Low	
Destination profile	Linked	📲 🔘 Medium	
Screening	Dot 200		
Calibration	Normal	🔵 High	
Ink saving (GCR)	None		
Color adjustments	No		
		Submit Save Cance	

The **Ink Saving GCR** (Gray Component Replacement) parameter enables you to conserve toner by replacing the gray component (CMY) of pixels with black toner.

The gray component replacement also prevents the consequences of excessive toner buildup, such as flaking and cracking, or the "curling" effect that may occur when printing transparencies.



While the gray component of each color is replaced by black, there is no change in the color quality of the printed image.

#### To set the Ink Saving GCR, select one of the following options:

- None: When this option is selected, no GCR is performed on the file and the printer applies maximum dry ink coverage
- Select the required amount of CMY dry inks to be replaced by the black dry ink:
  - □ Low
  - Medium
  - 🗆 High



**Note:** Use the **High** option to provide minimum ink coverage and thus save on toner. This site also prevents curling effects.

Job Parameters		×
Job name: Golfer_Letter:	3 Virtual print	ter name: V4_SPIRECOLORSE Submitted: Mar 10 , 13:57:19
Print Settings Paper Stock	Print Quality	
		_
Parameters	Values	Color adjustments options
Color mode	Color	Gradation:
RGB workflow	SpireRGB_2.1	None
CMYK workflow	Direct	None
Spot workflow	Use Dictionary	
Destination profile	Linked	Brightness:
Screening	Dot 200	
Calibration	Normal	Y
Ink saving (GCR)	None	15% 10% 5% 0% 5% 10% 15%
Color adjustments	No	Light Normal Dark
		Contrast:
		Less Normal More
		Submit Save Cancel

# **Color Adjustments**

#### Gradation

The **Gradation** option contains a list of gradation tables that were created by the Spire CXP5000 color server's **Gradation** tool. Each gradation table contains specific settings for brightness, contrast and color balance.

When you select your predefined gradation table, your job is adjusted according to the specific table's settings.



For more information about creating gradation tables, see *Gradation Tool* on page 360.

#### To select a gradation table:

> In the **Gradation** list, select one of the defined gradation tables.



**Note:** The default setting is **None**. No gradation table is applied to your job.

# **Brightness**

By changing the **Brightness** setting, you can control how light or dark your output will appear.



Brightness is generally used to make last-minute adjustments to the print job after proofing.



**Note:** Changing the brightness level for an RTP job, does not require re-RIPing of the job.

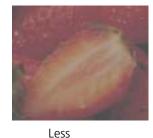
To select a brightness level for a job, move the Brightness slider to the required brightness level (the range starts from Light, which applies - 15%, to Dark, which applies +15%).



Note: When you set the brightness level to Normal, no change is applied.

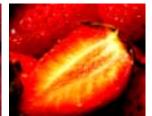
# Contrast

Adjusting the **Contrast** option enables you to control the difference between the light tones and the dark tones in your image.





Normal



More



The **Contrast** option is generally used to make last-minute adjustments to the print job after proofing.

**Note:** Changing the contrast level for an RTP job, does not require re-RIPing of the job.

To select a contrast level for the print job, move the Contrast slider to the required contrast level (the range starts from Less - which applies -10%, to More - which applies +10%).

**Note:** When you set the slider to **Normal**, no change is applied.



**Color Tools** 

# **Profile Manager**

The **Profile Manager** enables you to import and delete source and destination ICC profiles, and map destination profiles to specific paper colors.

Source profiles are used to emulate other devices, or color spaces. You can import source CMYK or RGB profiles. To use a profile in a job, in the Job Parameters window, select **Color**>**RGB workflow** or **Color**>**CMYK workflow**>**Emulation**, depending on the profile you imported.



Note: Custom source RGB profiles are not available in the CSA emulation mode.



For more information about selecting a source profile in a job, see *RGB Workflow* on page 339 and *CMYK Workflow* on page 340.

Destination profiles define the color space of your printer and are based on the combinations of paper and toner that you are using. For different paper stocks, you need different destination profiles. Each custom destination profile will be used with coated and uncoated paper. To use a different destination profile in a job, in the Job Parameters window, select **Color>Destination profile**.



For more information about selecting a destination profile in a job, see *Destination Profile* on page 344.

After you import a destination profile, you can use the Media Color Mapping dialog box to map the profile to a paper color. The profile is linked to the paper color and the Spire CXP5000 color server will automatically select the correct profile for your job. This is useful—for example, in jobs that have mixed paper types. Select Linked from **Color>Destination profile**.

#### Managing Device Link Profiles

#### To import a source ICC profile:

1. On the toolbar, click the **Resource Center** button.

The Resource Center opens.

2. In the **Resource** list, select **Profile Manager**.

Resource Center		×
Resource:	Profile Manager	
AdobeRGB198 SpireRGB_1.8 SpireRGB_2.1 SpireRGB_2.4 sRGB UseSourceCSA Direct UseSourceCSA Offset Test	Destination Profile       Profile Name:         Original:       Created:         Color Space:       Color Space:	
	Close	

The **Source Profile** tab appears, and the predefined source ICC profiles are displayed.

3. Click Import.

The Import Source ICC Profile dialog box appears.

Import Source ICC P	rofile	×
Source Profile:	Select ICC Profile	
Emulation Name:		
	Import Ca	incel

4. In the **Source profile** area, click the **browse** button. Locate and select the required source profile, and then click **Open**.

The new emulation name is displayed in the **Emulation name** box; if you would like to change the name you may do so.

5. Click Import.

The new source ICC profile is added to the **Emulation (Device Link)** list in the Job Parameters window, in the **CMYK Workflow** parameter or to the **RGB workflow** parameter.

#### To import a destination ICC profile:

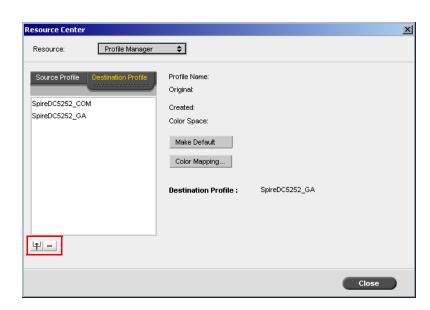
1. In the **Resource Center>Profile Manager**, click the **Destination Profile** tab.

The predefined ICC profiles are displayed.



....

**Note:** The predefined ICC profiles for the Xerox DocuColor 2045 Digital Color Press are DC6060\_DC2000.GA and DC6060\_DC2000.COM.



4

...

#### 2. Click Import.

The Import Destination ICC Profile dialog box appears.

Import Destination	ICC Profile	X
Source Profile: Emulation Name:	Select ICC Profile	
	Import C	ancel

3. In the **Destination profile** area, click the **browse** button. Locate the required source profile, and then click **Open**.

The new emulation name is displayed in the **Emulation name** box; if you would like to change the name you may do so.

- 4. Click Import.
- 5. If you would like to set the imported destination as your default, select it and click **Make Default**.
- 6. To map ICC profiles to specific paper colors:
  - a. Click Color Mapping.

Paper Color	Profile
Blue	SpireDC5252_GA
Buff	SpireDC5252_GA
Clear	SpireDC5252_GA
Goldenrod	SpireDC5252_GA
Green	SpireDC5252_GA
Pink	SpireDC5252_GA
Red	SpireDC5252_GA
White	SpireDC5252_GA
Yellow	SpireDC5252_GA
(박) -	

The Media Color Mapping window appears.

b. In the **Profile** column, select the required profile for each paper color.



c. To add a new paper color, click the **import** button.

**Note:** If you don't map a destination profile to a paper color, the Spire CXP5000 color server uses the default profile, which is for white paper.

Add Color		X
Add New Color:	Rose	]
	OK Cancel	

d. In the **Add New Color** box, type the name of the new color, and then click **OK**.



- e. To delete a paper color, select the required paper color and click the **delete** button.
- f. In the message that appears, click **OK**.
- g. In the Media Color Mapping dialog box, click Close.

#### To delete an ICC Profile:

1. In the **Resource Center>Profile Manager**, select the profile you would like to delete.

Note: You cannot delete predefined ICC profiles.



2. Click the **delete** button.

The profile is deleted from the profile list.

# Spot Color Editor and Workflow

Individual job pages can contain continuous tone (CT), line work (LW), and spot color elements. The Spire CXP5000 color server Spot Color Editor enables the editing of CMYK values of every spot color in the **Spot dictionary**. You can edit these values without affecting the CT or LW page elements. It also enables you to create custom spot colors and to define fixed CMYK values for those spot colors. The Spire CXP5000 color server supports HKS and PANTONE 2000 Spot colors.



**Note:** Spot colors—for example PANTONE—are not effected by CMYK emulation. A spot color has the same appearance with any selected CMYK emulation.

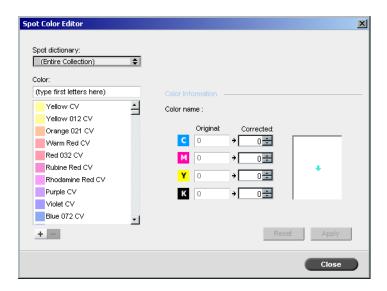


For more information about the Spot Color Editor, see *Spot Workflow* on page 343.

#### To edit an existing PANTONE color:

1. From the Tools menu, select Spot Color Editor.

The Spot Color Editor window appears with the Spire CXP5000 color server's entire collection of colors listed.



2. Search for a particular color under **Color**.

**Note:** Under **Color**, you cannot perform an exact query. This input stream only reads one character. For example, you want "Cool Grey 4" and type "Cool". As soon as you type "C", the cursor only moves to "Cool Grey 1" and does continue to a more specific selection.

3. Alternatively, from the **Spot dictionary** list, select the color dictionary that contains the color you wish to edit.

**Note:** Use the PANTONE CV dictionary if you are working in QuarkXPress.

4. Highlight the required color.

The color's CMYK values and a color preview appear in the right hand side of the Spot Color Editor window.

- 5. Change the CMYK values as required.
- 6. Click Apply.

The new color is added to the Custom color dictionary.

#### To create a new spot color:

1. In the Spot Color Editor window, click the **New Color** button.

The Spot Color Editor dialog box appears.

litor	X
me of new colo	r)
0 🛨	
0 🗧	
0 🗧	
0÷	
Can	cel
	me of new colo 0 ÷ 0 ÷

2. Type the new color name as it exists in the PostScript file.



**Note:** The Spot color names are case sensitive and should match the name as it appears in the DTP application.

- 3. Adjust the CMYK values as required.
- 4. Click **OK**.

The new color is added to the Custom dictionary.

#### To delete a spot color (from the custom dictionary only):

- 1. From the Spot dictionary list, select Custom Dictionary.
- 2. From the list of custom colors, highlight the color you wish to delete.
- 3. Click Delete.

The following message appears.

Spot Color E	ditor	×	
▲	Are you sure you want to remove color from the custom dictionary?		
	Yes No		

4. Click **Yes** to delete the color.

# **Gradation Tool**

Sometimes it is necessary to perform tone corrections when printing a job. These changes in gradation can include brightness, contrast and color balance adjustments throughout the tone range of an entire image, or in specific tone ranges.

Gradation tables you create using the Gradation tool are added to the Gradations list in the **Color** tab and may be applied to print jobs. The Spire CXP5000 color server also enables you to visually check the effect of different gradation adjustments on RTP jobs prior to printing.

With Spire CXP5000 color server Gradation, you can apply the default gradation table or another pre-configured gradation table to a job. You can also edit an existing table and save your changes. Gradation is an interactive function and changes are automatically applied to the displayed image.



**Note:** You can edit an existing gradation table, but you can not overwrite the default gradation table, **DefaultGradTable**.

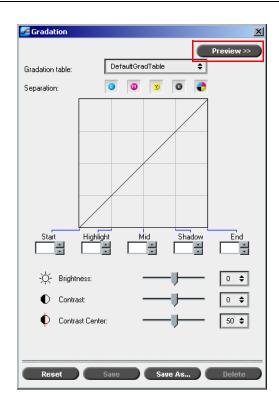
# The Gradation Dialog Box

The Gradation dialog box is used to create and edit gradation tables and to check the effect of different gradation adjustments on specific RTP jobs. These tables can then be applied to your jobs during job processing for tailored gradations.

#### To open the Gradation dialog box:

1. From the Tools menu, select Gradation.

The Gradation dialog box appears.



### Preview

Click **Preview** to view how a page from a specific RTP job changes with changing Gradation tables or Gradation adjustments.



#### Notes:

- Gradation is an interactive function. Gradation changes are automatically applied to the displayed image.
- The gradation table created is not automatically applied to the previewed job. You must use job parameters to assign a gradation table to a job.

# To view gradation adjustments:

1. Click **Preview** to expand the Gradation dialog box.

🌌 Gradation						X
		<< Preview	Job:			Browse
Gradation table:	DefaultGradTable 🗢		Booklet:	¢	Page:	¢
Separation:	o 0 v 0 🜓					
Staft	Highlight Mid Shadow	End				
-☆- Bright	ness:	0 🗢				
Contra	ast:	0 🗢				
🌔 Contra	ast Center:	50 🜩				
Reset	Save Save As	Delete		(† (Sh	ow Original	

2. Click **Browse** to select a job for display in the Preview window.

The RTP Jobs window appears.

Sector States St		×
Name	Pages	Size
Golfer_Letter	1	2.15M
ATF_A3	1	27.92M
	ок	Cancel

The displayed jobs are the RTP jobs listed in the Storage window.

- 3. Click on the RTP job you wish to modify.
- 4. Click **OK**.

🌌 Gradation					×
Gradation table:	Gradation123 \$	Job:	Blood Lust	_	Browse
		Booklet:		Page:	
Separation:	o 🛈 🗴 🕲 🌎				
Start	Highlight Mid Shedow End				2
-🔆- Bright					x view
Contra	ast: O 🗢	1	- 5 0	00	
🌓 Contra	ast Center: 50 🜩			lus	st 🛛
				olationia Wiener Birther and an outer a challening for a factories	
Reset	Save Save As Delete		ſ	Show Original	

The job appears in the Gradation dialog box.



#### Notes:

- The job name is listed at the top of the Preview viewer.
- Click Browse at any time to select a different RTP job on which to view the effects of gradation table changes.
- 5. Click **Show Original** (located at the bottom of the Gradation dialog box) to toggle back and forth between edited and unedited gradation table views.
- 6. To view the effects of your gradation table changes on a different page of the RTP job, select the **Page** or **Booklet** you wish to view from their lists at the top of the Preview window.

The selected page appears.

#### **Gradation Table Box**

Upon opening the Gradation dialog box, the default gradation table **DefaultGradTable** is selected.

This table consists of a 45° gradation curve, with Brightness and Contrast set to 0, Contrast Center set to 50 and all color separations selected.

If you have previously created or edited gradation tables, select the required gradation table from the **Gradation table** list. For viewing and editing purposes, the preconfigured settings of the selected gradation table are immediately applied to the RTP job on which you are working.



For more information about each preview button and the display modes, see *Preview Buttons* on page 206.

## Separation Field

The **Separation** field is used to select the separations to be edited for a particular gradation table. You can select one, all, or any combination of separations. Selecting a specific separation and a specific gradation control enables you to change the color balance for a specific tonal range.

The Gradations window appears with all separations selected.

o 🛛 🍸 🕄 🛟
-----------

This tools enables simultaneous editing of all separations.

#### To edit one, or several separations:

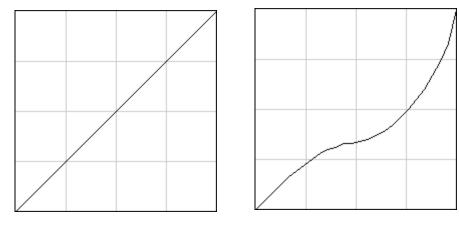


- 1. Click this button to clear all separations.
- 2. Click the individual separations you wish to edit—for example, select the cyan separation only.
- 3. Change the separation parameters using the Gradation controls.

Your changes to gradation tables are immediately presented as changes to the gradation graph.

#### **Gradation Graph**

Spire CXP5000 color server gradation tables are represented visually in the Gradation dialog box in the form of a graph:



DefaultGradTable (Input equals Output)

Modified gradation graph

The horizontal axis represents the tone values of the image before gradation changes (input). The vertical axis represents the tone values of the image after gradation changes (output). All four separations (CMYK) are shown, but if they have identical curves, the graphs appear as if there is only one curve.

# **Gradation Controls**

The gradation controls are used to adjust brightness in specific tone ranges.



Click the arrow buttons to increase or decrease the graph value of the active separation(s) for a specified section of the graph.

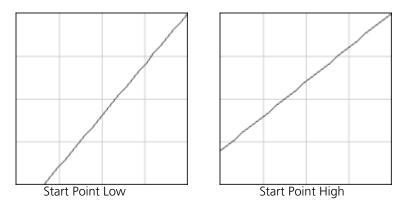
If only one separation is active, the gradation values are listed, ranging from -50 to 50. If more than one separation is active, no gradation values are listed.

Changes to gradation tables are immediately presented as changes to the gradation graph.

# The gradation controls

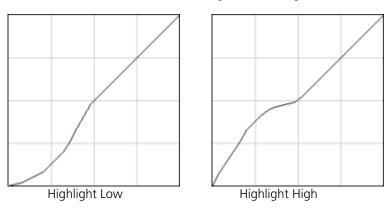
#### • Start

Moves the point of origin of the gradation graph at the highlight end along the horizontal or vertical axis. This affects the image file from 0% dot to 100% dot, where the greatest change is at 0% dot.



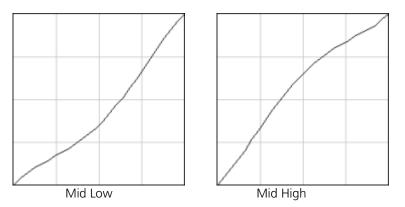
#### • Highlight

Changes brightness mainly in the highlights. This affects the image file from 0% dot to 50% dot, where the greatest change is at 25% dot.



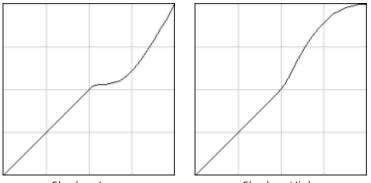
• Mid

Changes brightness mainly in the midtones. This affects the image file from 15% dot to 85% dot, where the greatest change is at 50% dot.



• Shadow

Changes brightness mainly in the shadows. This affects the image file from 50% dot to 100% dot, where the greatest change is at 75% dot.

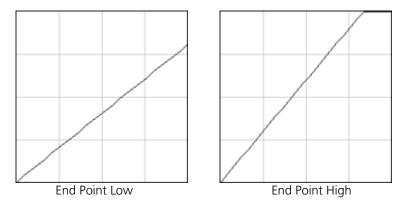


Shadow Low

Shadow High

End

Moves the endpoint of the gradation graph at the shadow end along the horizontal or vertical axis. This affects the image file from 0% dot to 100% dot, where the greatest change is at 100% dot.



# **Brightness and Contrast Slider Controls**

The **Brightness** and **Contrast** slider controls are active only when all of the separations are selected.

÷ķ-	Brightness:	J	0 💠
●	Contrast:	U	0 🗢
•	Contrast Center:	U	50 🖨

#### Brightness

Brightness increases or decreases the luminance of the image. Increasing brightness brightens the image and results in a concave curve. Decreasing brightness darkens the image and results in a convex curve.

Move the Brightness slider to the right to increase brightness or to the left to decrease brightness. Or:

Click the arrow button to select a value from the drop-down list.

#### Contrast

Contrast increases the image contrast by making the highlights lighter and the shadows darker. It can also be used to decreases the contrast.

Move the Contrast slider to the right to increase contrast (S shaped curve), or to the left to decrease contrast (inverted S shaped curve). Or:

Click the arrow button to select a value from the drop-down list.

#### **Contrast Center**

Contrast increases the image contrast mainly in the midtones. Using Contrast Center, you can adjust where the contrast is increased. To enhance contrast in highlights, the Contrast Center is shifted toward the highlights. To enhance contrast in shadows, the Contrast Center is shifted toward the shadows.

Set the image contrast, by adjusting the Contrast slider. Or:

Set the **Contrast Center** slider to the right to enhance contrast in highlights, or to the left to enhance contrast in shadows. Or:

Click the arrow button to increase or decrease the Contrast Center value. The Contrast Center value appears to right of the Contrast Center slider. Your change affects the gradation graph by moving the point where the curve changes from convex to concave.



**Note:** Contrast Center only affects the image if Contrast has also been adjusted.

#### **Organizing Gradation Tables**

The Gradation window provides a number of options for organizing gradation tables, including **Reset**, **Save**, **Delete** and **Save As**.

If you work only with the default gradation table, the Reset and Save As options are activated. This option enables you to use the default gradation table as a base on which to build and save new gradation tables. When you work on gradation tables other than the default table, **Save** and **Delete** also become active.

#### The gradation organization options

- Click Reset to reset all Gradation window settings.
   The gradation curve is reset to a 45° line.
- Click **Delete** to delete the selected gradation table.
  - Note: You can not delete the **DefaultGradTable**.
- > Click **Save** to save the specified gradation settings.
- Click Save As to create new gradation tables by saving existing gradation tables with new names.

Note: You can only save the default gradation table under a new name.

#### To create a new gradation table:

- 1. In the Gradations window, modify your gradation table as required.
- 2. Click Save As.

The Save As dialog box appears.

🌠 Save As	×
File Name:	
ок	Cancel

- 3. In the **File name** box, type the required name for the new gradation table.
- 4. Click **OK**.

The gradation table is saved and added to the **Gradation table** list and to the Job Parameters Gradations list.



For more information about gradation tables, see Gradation on page 350.

# 8

# Graphic Arts Workflow

Printing PrePress Files - GAP Files	372
Preflight Check	374
Export as Creo Synapse InSite Job	379

# **Printing PrePress Files - GAP Files**

The Graphic Art Port (GAP) is a port through which you can import various file formats used in the Graphic Arts industry. GAP files are already rasterized. The Spire CXP5000 color server only needs to prepare the files for printing, which means adjusting the file resolution and rotation.

## **Importing GAP Files**

To print a specific page, import the assigned file for the specific page. To print a specific job, import the assigned file for the specific job.



**Note:** While the assigned job file is imported, the file is converted to a PDF file that is displayed in the Spire CXP5000 color server queues. The PDF file can be programmed and printed as any other PDF file.

#### Supporting GAP Files

The Spire CXP5000 color server can import and convert the following file types:

- Brisque jobs
- TIFF
- TIFF IT
- CT / LW



**Note:** The Spire CXP5000 color server supports the following GAP file formats, pre-separated and composite.

The system converts these file types to "pre-rasterized" PDF files. GAP PDF files behave the same as any other PDF file and have the same job parameters.

# **GAP File Structure**

## TIFF IT

A TIFF IT file has 3 components:

- CT.TIF
- LW.TIF
- FP (final page) file, which combines CT.TIF and LW.TIF

To import a TIFF IT file to the Spire CXP5000 color server, first import the FP file. During import, the file is converted to a PDF, which is displayed in the Spire CXP5000 color server queues. The PDF can be programmed and printed as any other PDF file.



**Note:** Make sure that in the Spire CXP5000 color server Import window, **Gap files** is selected in the **Files of type** box.

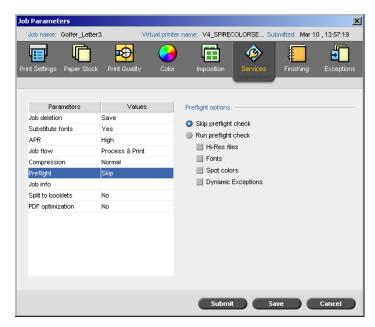
#### CT, LW, TIFF

The components of a Brisque job and TIFF IT, are, CT, LW and TIFF, and can be imported and printed separately to the Spire CXP5000 color server.

#### **Rasterized Brisque Jobs**

All rasterized Brisque jobs have a typical structure. Each job contains an assigned file with one or more pages (in case of a multiple job). Also, every page contains its own assigned file, which combines LW and CT.

- To import a Brisque job to the Spire CXP5000 color server, import the assigned file of the job.
- To print a specific page, import the assigned file of the specific page.



# **Preflight Check**

The **Preflight** parameter enables you to check the status of key job components before the job is sent for printing.



Note: You can only run a preflight check on PostScript jobs.

During the preflight check, your job is RIPed and the missing components are identified. The preflight detects the status for the following key job components:

- High-resolution images or the wrong links to the high-resolution images folder
- Missing fonts
- Spot colors that are not defined in the Spire CXP5000 color server spot color dictionary
- Dynamic exception commands for a file that was submitted via a dynamic page exceptions virtual printer



**Note:** If a job component is missing, the job will fail before it is RIPed and an alert message will appear. Information about missing components will appear in the Job History window.

The results of the preflight check are displayed in a **Preflight Report**. By default, a preflight report is not issued for each job. To issue this report, you need to run a preflight check for the job using the **Preflight** job parameter.

#### To run a preflight check:

> In the **Preflight options** area, select **Run Preflight check**.

All four check boxes of the key job components are active but you can clear any check box that you don't want to include in the preflight check.

**Note:** If one of the selected elements on the list is missing, the job status at the end of the preflight check is "Failed" and the job is transferred to the Storage window.

# Preflight Report

The preflight report is a job-related report that provides information about the status (missing or found) of key job components prior to printing and enables you to correct your files accordingly.

It is especially useful to run the preflight check before you print a complex job with a large quantity of pages or copies. The preflight check detects the missing job components and displays them all at once in the Preflight Report dialog box. You can review the report and handle the missing components and thus save inefficient printing time with constant error or failed messages.

If you run a preflight check, and all key components are found, the job is processed and printed according to the job flow you have selected. If the test fails (missing key elements are detected), the job is returned to the Storage window with the preflight report available for inspection.

The preflight report always reflects the last preflight run, if more than one preflight check is run on a job, the latest preflight report overrides the previous. When a preflight report is produced, the date and time of the preflight check are indicated in the Jobs History window.



**Note:** Since the Preflight Report dialog box lists all key job components (missing and found), you can choose to use this report to view the existing (found) key job components, for example the list of the existing fonts in a job, and their corresponding paths.



#### To view the preflight report:

1. Right-click the job in the Storage window, and from the menu select **Preflight Report**.

The Preflight Report dialog box appears. If you selected the **HiRes files** option in the **Preflight Options** area, the **HiRes Report** appears first.

Preflight Report					X
Preflight Report created:	3/	3/04 10:19 AM			
HiRes     Spot Colors     Fonts     Exceptions	HiRes Report – Found: Missing:			Show: All	¢
	#	Status	HiRes File Name	Path	
	1	Missing	Ski	Not found	
			Print report	Save As Clos	se

- If there are key components in the job not found, this will be indicated by the **missing** indicator next to the **HiRes**, **Spot Colors**, and **Fonts** report options.
- If you did not select a preflight option for the preflight check, the **not preflighted** indicator appears next to the report option.
- If all of the files are found for a preflight option, the **found** indicator appears next to the report option.
  - 2. From the **Show** list select one of the following options:
    - To display all files, select All.
    - To display only files that were found, select **Found Only**.
    - To display only the missing files, select **All Missing**.

flight Report created:		12/3/03	9:52 AM					
9 HiRes	Spot Cold	rs Report –						
Spot Colors	Found	3						
Fonts	Missing	j: 2						
Exceptions					Sh	iow: 📝	41	\$
	#	Status	Spot Color Name	Dictionary	%C	%M	%Y	%K
	1	Missing	Creo Cyan	Not Found	100	0	0	0
	2	Found	PANTONE 240 CVC	System	17	95	0	0
	3	Found	PANTONE 505 CVC	System	24	90	51	64
	4	Found	PANTONE Orange	System	0	60	100	0
	5	Missing	Process Cyan	Not Found	100	0	0	0

3. Select the **Spot Colors** report option.

The **Spot Colors Report** area displays the missing spot color names (spot colors which were not found in the spot color dictionary) and the found spot color names (spot colors which were found in the spot color dictionary). The **C**,**M**,**Y**,**K** columns display the spot color CMYK equivalences:

- □ If the status is **missing** the Spire CXP5000 color server used the original CMYK values that are embedded in the PS file to emulate the required spot color.
- □ If the status is **found** the Spire CXP5000 color server used the CMYK values that are in the spot color dictionary.

# 4. Click the **Fonts** report option.

flight Report created:		12/3/03 9:52 AM			
HiRes	Font Report				
🛿 Spot Colors	Found:	10			
🕏 Fonts	Missing:	0			
Exceptions			Sh	iow: All	\$
	#	Status	Font	Source	
	1	Found	DLICCE+Techno	Library	-
	2	Found	DLICDF+Frutiger-Bold	Library	
	3	Found	DLICDG+Frutiger-Light	Library	
	4	Found	DLIGJM+Frutiger-Lightitalic	Library	
	5	Found	DLIHAK+BankGothicBT-Me	Library	
	6	Found	N34	Embedded	
	7	Found	N6	Embedded	
	8	Found	N7	Embedded	
	9	Found	N8	Embedded	-

The **Font Report** area displays the name of the missing fonts that are not embedded in the file and do not exist in the **Font Library** and also the found fonts.

The **Source** column indicates whether the font is embedded in the file or was found in the **Font Library**.

eflight Report			
reflight Report created:	3/3/04 2:06	β PM	
<ul> <li>HiRes</li> <li>Spot Colors</li> <li>Fonts</li> </ul>	SPD Virtual Printer Mapped Paper Stock:	POSQA_SF_2_Finance_SPD Green_letter	
<ul> <li>Exceptions</li> </ul>	<b>Note:</b> Preflight was p Range	LRed_Letter erformed on the first 5 booklets.	
	Booklet 1, Page 1 Booklet 1, Page 3 Booklet 1, Page 7 Booklet 5, Page 27 Booklet 5, Page 31	Green Light Red Green Light Red Green	
		Print report Save As Close	

5. Click the **Dynamic Exceptions** report option.

The **Dynamic Exceptions** area displays the dynamic page exception commands found in the file.



For more information about dynamic page exceptions, see *Dynamic Page Exceptions* on page 279.

6. To save the preflight report, click **Save As** and browse to the required location.



**Tip:** If more than one preflight check is run on a job, the latest preflight report overrides the previous. If required you may save the report for future usage.

7. To print the report, click **Print Report**.

# Export as Creo Synapse InSite Job

Creo Synapse InSite<sup>™</sup> provides an Internet-based communication between you and your customers and enables you to proof jobs and receive approvals remotely.

If your site includes a Creo Synapse InSite server, exporting your job as InSite from the Spire CXP5000 color server allows you and your customers to proof online with geographically dispersed users simultaneously, append annotations or comments, and approve or reject pages over the World Wide Web using a standard browser. After the RTP job is created on the Spire CXP5000 color server, it can be exported as InSite from the Storage window. When the customer logs on (using their unique username and password), they see the status of their jobs, view a thumbnail of all pages in each job, and quickly identify which pages require further corrections. The customer can measure color density, make annotated comments, and approve pages. The online proofing cycle is shortened and accurate, and consequently, the need for reprints is reduced.

#### To export as InSite:

- 1. Select the required job in the Spire CXP5000 color server Storage window.
- 2. Right-click the job, and from the menu select **Export as InSite Job**.

The InSite window appears.

Look in: My Documents			
Name	Date	Size	Туре
🔁 Adobe	11/5/03 8:34 PM		File Folder
🛅 My eBooks	5/12/03 3:49 PM		File Folder
My Pictures	12/3/03 3:00 PM		File Folder
🛅 Security	2/26/03 10:54 PM		File Folder
Files of type: Job file	\$		
Name: Color_Flowchart_Tabl	oid1_9		
		Export	Cancel

3. Locate the file in which you want to export the job, and then click **Export**.

A Brisque job is created in the selected location. You can now register the files on the InSite server and start the approval cycle.

# 9

# **VI Workflow**

VI Overview	382
VI Document Formats	383
Using Creo Variable Print Specification to Print a VI Job	387
Managing VI Elements	391
Applying VI Structure to Large Files (Split to Booklets)	395

# **VI** Overview

Variable information (VI) jobs are jobs in which the printed materials are individualized for specific recipients or purposes. These materials can include bills, targeted advertising, and direct mailings.

VI jobs are composed of booklets, which are personalized copies of a document. A booklet can consist of one or several pages, but the entire document is targeted at a specific individual or address. For example, a booklet can be either a single-page gas bill or a multipage personalized document.

Each page in the booklet is constructed as a collection of individually RIPed elements that may differ from booklet to booklet, including text, graphics, pictures and page backgrounds. These elements are selfcontained graphical entities that may be line art, text, RIPed images, or a combination of these. There are two types of elements in VI jobs:

- Unique elements are used only once for a specific individual or purpose. An individual's name is an example of a unique element.
- Reusable VI elements can be used more than once in different pages, booklets, or jobs. A company logo is an example of a reusable element.

On the Spire CXP5000 color server, each element, text, graphic, picture, or page background is RIPed only once, even if the element is used once, several times, or in every page of the VI job. If it is used more than once, then it is cached, or stored, for further use. You can manage these elements in the Resource Center under the **Cached VI Elements** area. Each set of elements associated with a particular job is assigned a unique name. Inline variable elements that are used only once, usually text, are not cached.



For more information about cached VI elements, see *Managing VI Elements* on page 391.

Pages are assembled from the pre-RIPed reusable elements and the RIPed unique elements just before printing. Then the job is printed in the same way as all other jobs in an RTP format.

# VI Document Formats

VI jobs are created using VI authoring programs that support Variable Print Specification and VIPP formats. Most VI authoring programs can convert VI files to conventional PS files, which can also be processed by the Spire CXP5000 color server, although less efficiently than Variable Print Specification and VIPP files. Each authoring program creates VI code that instructs the RIP where to place the VI elements and each authoring program does so in a slightly different manner.

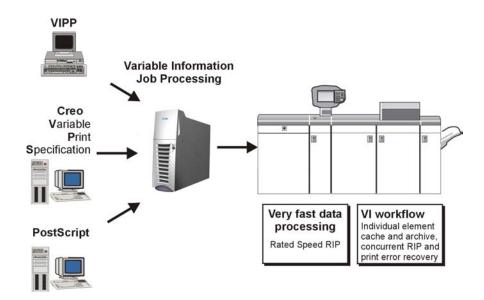
The format you choose can be a stand-alone format that covers all aspects of document design, data management and text capture or it can be an extension of an existing program that enables the creation of VI documents and VI jobs.

The Spire CXP5000 color server can process VI jobs that are in one of the following file formats:

- Creo Variable Print Specification
- Xerox Variable data Intelligent Postscript Printware (VIPP)
- Personal Print Markup Language (PPML)
- PostScript.



**Note:** Variable Print Specification, VIPP, and PPML elements are displayed in the Resource Center under the **Cached VI Elements** area.



#### **Creo Variable Print Specification**

Creo Variable Print Specification is the Creo developed formal language designed for effective production of VI documents.

Creo Variable Print Specification is comprehensive and can specify a complete range of VI documents. It also provides the means for efficient implementation - fast and efficient data processing, and storage prior to printing.

A Variable Print Specification job consists of the following components:

Booklet

A personalized copy of a document within a single print run where pages and/or elements within a page may vary from booklet to booklet.

• Sub-job

All copies of a particular document—for example, book, brochure, or flyer—within a single print run. On the Spire CXP5000 color server, sub-jobs can be deleted, archived, or reprinted at any time. However, you can still maintain reusable elements for future runs. Reusable elements are cached elsewhere, so only the unique data, which is embedded in the job, is deleted.

#### Reusable Elements

Self-contained graphical entities that can be line art, text, raster images or a combination of these types. Reusable elements are represented in PostScript and can be stored as EPS files when appropriate. Reusable elements include clipping and scaling instructions as well as the image data.



**Note:** Grayscale TIFF and EPS images that are created in CMYK applications (such as PhotoShop) are counted correctly as **B&W** instead as **Color** in both the Spire CXP5000 color server and the Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press billing meters.

Reusable elements can be used repeatedly in different pages, booklets and jobs. On the Spire CXP5000 color server, all reusable elements are processed once and cached as RTP elements for further use. They can then be reused either within the sub-job itself, or in additional runs of sub-jobs.

Inline Elements

Unique information is drawn from a database and is embedded in the sub-job. This data prints only once for individual booklets.

#### VIPP

The VIPP format was developed in 1993 by Xerox. The VIPP is a PostScript-based format that merges the VI pages during the processing stage. The VIPP is used mostly for financial applications, which typically employ the dynamic graph charting capability of VIPP, and for bank statements, telephone bills, and electric bills.



**Note:** To use VIPP files on your Spire CXP5000 color server, you first need to install the VIPP software on your system. This installation should be done by a service engineer. Contact your service provider for more information.

VIPP jobs are composed of the following four files:

Table 15: VIPP files

File Name	File Description
File.PS	The PostScript Master Form, which holds all of the fixed elements from the original document.
File.JDT	The Job Descriptor Ticket, which holds header and setup information for the job.
File.DBM	The Database Master, which holds the VIPP coding.
File.DBF	The Database File, which holds all the ASCII data to be merged. It should contain database information taken from the range of database records that were specified in the DataMerge dialog.

VIPP software creates xgf and xgfc folders on your system. Within the xgfc folder, a number of sub-folders are created. Table 16 lists in which sub-folders you should store VIPP job files.

Table 16: VIPP sub-folders

File Name	Store in VIPP Sub-folder		
File.PS	formlib		
File.JDT	jdtlib		

Table 16: VIPP sub-folders

File Name	Store in VIPP Sub-folder
File.DBM	formlib
File.DBF	mislib
Variable Image Files	imglib

#### To print a VIPP job:

> Import the \*.DBF file to the Spire CXP5000 color server.

The VIPP job is processed and printed.

#### VIPP 2001 and PPML

The PPML format is a new XML-based industry standard that printtechnology manufacturers developed for the high-speed production of reusable page content.

The Spire CXP5000 color server supports VIPP 2001 and PPML formats. Some of the features that are included enable you to:

- Process VIPP 2001 and PPML jobs efficiently
- Manage VIPP 2001 and PPML reusable elements
- Import jobs in various VI formats to the Spire CXP5000 color server
- Import VI elements to the Spire CXP5000 color server and submit them for pre-cache
- View VI elements in their structural hierarchy

Both PPML and VIPP 2001 have a hierarchical structure. Document components are separated from their submission file and can be organized and stored in different levels of the hierarchical structure.

In PPML there is an ability to store different jobs in one PPML file. Thus, the display in the navigation pane varies from the way Variable Print Specification and VIPP appears.

## **PostScript Files**

PostScript files are suitable for simple, very short run jobs. All page elements are re-RIPed for each page. These jobs do not use a VI authoring tool at all. Instead, they use a mailmerge function in a Microsoft Word document or a Microsoft Excel spreadsheet.

# Using Creo Variable Print Specification to Print a VI Job

The Spire CXP5000 color server first searches for high-resolution files in the input folder that contains the PDL file, and then in the predefined APR path—**D:\Shared\High Res**. The Spire CXP5000 color server will look for VI images in these locations when it RIPs the job.



**Note:** You can also define a custom path to any connected server or disk. For more information about adding an APR path, see *Setting a High-Resolution Path* on page 254.

#### To print a VI job:

- 1. Copy VI graphic elements to one of the defined APR folders on the Spire CXP5000 color server.
- 2. Submit your job to the Spire CXP5000 color server.



For more information about how to import files, see *Importing Files* on page 154.

Reusable elements are identified, processed, and placed in the Resource Center under the **CachedVI Elements** area. They are ready for rapid assembly into pages and for reuse during the printing stage.

Your VI job is processed and printed on the Spire CXP5000 color server. The Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press prints RTP booklets at full engine speed working uninterrupted from the printer disk. Booklets are compiled concurrently while the printer prints. As pages are sent to the print engine, they are assembled from the various inline and reusable elements on-the-fly. After the job is completed, an RTP job is placed in the Storage window. This RTP job contains the complete variable job including all booklets, variable images, and unique elements.



#### Notes:

- If an element is to be used more than once but with different clipping or scaling parameters, it is treated as a new page element and processed again.
- The cache is kept intact until the job is completed. This enables you to reuse RIPed elements anywhere in the job. Elements may remain in the cache for subsequent jobs. You can also archive job elements.
- Deleting a job does not delete the cached job sub-folder. This must be done manually in the Resource Center.

#### **Useful VI Print Options**

#### Gallop

The **Gallop** parameter on the **Print Settings** tab enables the Spire CXP5000 color server to RIP and print VI jobs concurrently. Large jobs do not have to be RIPed entirely to disk before printing. You can predefine the number of pages to be processed before the engine starts to print. As soon as these pages are processed, printing starts while the rest of the job is streamlined through the Spire CXP5000 color server. The Xerox DocuColor 5252 Digital Color Press continues printing at its rated speed without interruption or slowing down until the job is finished.



For more information about setting the **Gallop** option, see *Gallop* on page 166.

_				
🚰 Job Parameters				×
Job name: PANTONE_C	_A31 Submitted:	May 04 , 18:07:00	Virtual printer name:	Process Print
Print Settings Paper S	Block Print Quality	Color Imposition	Services Finish	ing Exceptions
Parameters	Values	Automatic deletion	options	
Job deletion Substitute fonts	Save Yes	Delete after co Delete on job fa	<u> </u>	
APR	High		allure	
Job flow	Process & Print			
Compression	Normal			
Preflight	Skip			
Job info				
Split to booklets	No			
PDF optimization	No			
		Submit	Save	Cancel

#### Job Deletion

When you are printing a large VI job that takes up a substantial amount of the Spire CXP5000 color server disk space, it is recommended that you use the **Job Deletion** parameter.

When you select this parameter, the Spire CXP5000 color server deletes each page on the fly once it has been successfully printed. In this way, the Spire CXP5000 color server maintains enough free disk space for the duration of the print run. Reusable elements are not deleted.



#### Notes:

- This option sustains enough free disk space for the duration of the print run and only affects the sub-job.
- The Variable Print Specification file is also deleted.

#### To set a deletion policy:

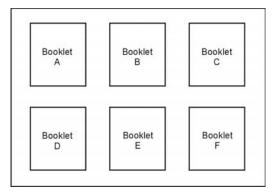
- 1. Suspend the **Process Queue** and import your job.
- 2. Double-click your job to open the Job Parameters window.
- 3. Select the **Services** tab.

- 4. In the **Automatic deletion options** area, select one of the following options:
  - To remove pages or jobs from the Spire CXP5000 color server after printing is completed, select **Delete after complete**.
  - To remove failed jobs while processing or printing from the Spire CXP5000 color server, select **Delete on job failure**.
- 5. Click Submit.
- 6. Select the **resume** button to resume the **Process Queue** and start the processing of your job.

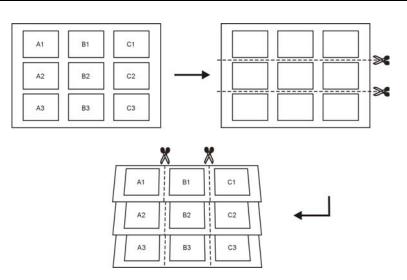
#### Imposition

When you impose VI jobs:

- Every booklet must have the same number of pages
- When you use the **Step & Repeat** method to print a single page booklet, the VI job does not print the same image repeatedly. Several booklets are printed on the same sheet and each record is printed on the sheet once.



For a booklet with several pages, the pages are printed in order along the length of the sheet. The next booklet is printed beside the first. After the sheets are cut, the booklets are aligned with their pages in the proper order.





**Note:** The above example uses the step and repeat method. There are no special considerations for VI jobs using saddle stitch and perfect bound methods.



For more information about setting Imposition parameters, see *The Imposition Tab* on page 231.

# **Managing VI Elements**

When the Spire CXP5000 color server processes your VI job, it stores the reusable VI elements in a specific location. When the job is printed, the RIP engine looks for the VI elements in that locations and reuses the elements when necessary. The VI elements can also be reused in future jobs.

In the Resource Center, use the **Cached VI Elements** area to manage the VI elements on your system and to perform the following tasks:

- Delete VI elements
- Archive VI elements
- Retrieve VI elements

# **Deleting VI Elements**

VI elements that are no longer in use take up valuable disk space on the Spire CXP5000 color server. To free up disk space, you can delete the VI elements you no longer need.

- 1. On the toolbar, click Resource Center.
  - 2. In the **Resource** list, select **Cached VI Elements**.

Resou	irce Center						×
Res	ource:	Cashed VI El	ements 🜲				
							View:
	PS IPP PPML	lcon	Element Name	System Name	Submitted Time	Size	Source File Fe
				LY14_BX22	12/3/03	8.0KB	iTrustBank_L LE
ß	iTrustBank_BA6	<b>1</b>	student credi	LY14_BX23	12/3/03	842.0KB	iTrustBank_L LE
			Mortgage.eps	LY14_BX23	12/3/03	645.0KB	iTrustBank_L LE
				LY14_BX24	12/3/03	106.0KB	iTrustBank_L LE
				LY14_BX25	12/3/03	166.0KB	iTrustBank_L LE
1	<u> </u>	•					
							Delete Archive
							Close

Your VI jobs are listed in the left pane. In the right pane, you can see all of the VI elements that are associated with your job. In addition, a thumbnail viewer lets you check elements visually.

3. Select the element that you want to delete, and then click **Delete**.



Note: You can also delete the entire folder.

#### **Archiving VI Elements**

If you have finished printing a large VI job and you know that you will need to reprint it in the future, it is a good idea to archive the VI elements and retrieve them when needed. You can archive your VI job folder in a location that you specify.

- 1. On the toolbar, click Resource Center.
  - 1. In the **Resource** list, select **Cached VI Elements**.
  - 2. Select the VI folder in which to archive, and then click Archive.

<b>5</b> Open				>
Look in: 📘	Shared	t t		
	Name	Date	Size	Туре
📙 High Res	5	12/3/03 4:40 PM		File Folder
🗀 NP		12/3/03 3:14 PM		File Folder
🔁 Robin		12/3/03 4:52 PM		File Folder
Files of type:	Cabinet file	\$		
Name:	iTrustBank_BA62ED74			
			Archive	Cancel

The Open dialog box appears.

3. Find the location in which to archive your VI elements, and then click **Archive**.

# **Retrieving VI Elements**

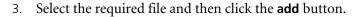
When you need to reprint your job, you can retrieve the VI elements from the archive.

1. From the Job menu, select **Retrieve from Archive**.

The Open dialog box appears.

<b>5</b> 0pen				×
Look in:	Robin	\$ t		
	Name	Date	Size	Туре
📄 iTrustBar	nk_Letter1_20.Cab	12/3/03 5:03 PM	40 MB V	VinZip File
Files of type:	Cabinet files	\$		
				Open
1 Items				
	oin\iTrustBank_Letter1_20.Cal	0		
			Retrieve	Cancel

2. Select the folder in which your VI elements are archived.



**Note:** Use SHIFT or CTRL to select several files or CTRL+A to select all the files.

#### 4. Click Retrieve.

The Spire CXP5000 color server retrieves the archived VI elements and displays them at the end of the file list in the Cached VI elements dialog box.

# Applying VI Structure to Large Files (Split to Booklets)

Parameters		
Job name: Golfer_Lett	ter3 Virtual pri	nter name: V4_SPIRECOLORSE Submitted: Mar 10 , 13:57:19
nt Settings Paper Sto	ck Print Quality Col	or Imposition Services
Parameters	Values	Split to booklets options
Job deletion	Save	O No
Substitute fonts	Yes	•
APR	High	Yes
Job flow	Process & Print	Number of pages per booklet:
Compression	Normal	
Preflight	Skip	
Job info		
Split to booklets	No	
PDF optimization	No	
		Submit Save Cancel

The **Split to booklets** parameter enables you to split a PostScript, PDF, or large VI job that does not have a booklet structure into booklets.



**Note:** A VI job that doesn't have a booklet structure can be split to booklets using this feature. Unexpected results might occur when you use this option for VI jobs that already have a booklet structure.

If you split a VI, PostScript, or PDF job into booklets, you can simulate the VI job structure. If your VI, PostScript, or PDF job contains variable information, setting the imposition method per booklet, the stapling options per booklet, and using duplex printing per booklet is a more efficient way to manage your job. Duplex printing will automatically insert blank pages if the number of pages per booklet is an odd number.

#### To split a job to booklets:

- 1. In the **Split to booklets options** area, select **Yes**.
- 2. In the **Number of pages per booklet** box, type the required number.



**Note:** If the specified number of pages per booklet is not sufficient to produce complete booklets and there is a remainder of pages, the last pages will form a booklet that contains less pages then specified.

This page is intentionally left blank.

# System Administration

Setting Up and Configuring the Spire CXP5000 Color Server	398
System Messages	425
Reinstalling the System	430

# Setting Up and Configuring the Spire CXP5000 Color Server

Basic system configuration and settings are defined in the Spire CXP5000 color server Settings window. The Settings window contains items that enable you to manage your system.

#### To open the Settings window:

> From the **Tools** menu select **Settings**.

The Settings window appears. The settings are divided into two lists: **Administration** and **Preferences**. Both lists are explained in the following sections.

Administration items can be viewed by users of all levels, but are only available to users of Administrator level. **Preferences** items can be viewed by all user levels, but are only available to users of Administrator and Operator user levels. All items in the Settings window are view only to Guest users.

#### Server Setup

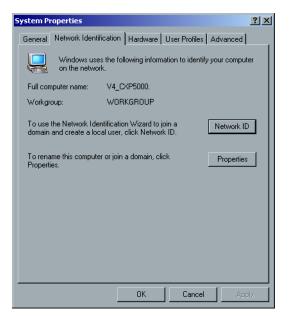
Set the server's name and the current date and time in Server Setup.

Settings			2
Administration	Server Name		
Server Setup Network Setup Remote Tools Setup Security System Disks Configuration Backup <b>Preferences</b> Localization Pre-RIP Preview General Defaults Print Queue Manager Color Messages View Configuration	Host Name: Date & Time Date: Time:	POSQA_SF_O Feb 8 2004 14:34:56	Change
			Save Cancel

#### Changing the Server Name

- 1. In the Settings window, select Administration>Server Setup.
- 2. In the Server Name area, click Change.

The System Properties dialog box appears.



3. In the Network Identification tab, click **Properties**.

The Identification Changes dialog box appears.

Identification Changes	<u>? ×</u>
You can change the name and the membership computer. Changes may affect access to networ	
Computer name:	
V4_CXP5000	
Full computer name: V4_CXP5000.	
	More
Member of	
C Domain:	
Workgroup:	
WORKGROUP	
OK	Cancel

- 4. In the **Computer Name** box, type a new name for the computer.
- 5. If you want to change the **Workgroup** or the **Domain** in which your computer appears, select the required option and type a new name in the corresponding box.

**Note:** Do not change the workgroup or domain unless you are instructed to do so.



**Important:** If you want to change the domain, you will be required to type the password for the domain account. If the password is unavailable, the computer will be locked.

- 6. Click **OK**.
- 7. Click **OK** in the System Properties window.

The system prompts you to reboot your computer for the new settings to take effect.

8. Click **No** if you want to change other system parameters, or click **Yes** and reboot your computer.

#### Changing the Date and Time

- 1. In the Settings window, select Administration>Server Setup.
- 2. In the **Date & Time** area, click **Change**.

The Date/Time Properties dialog box appears.

Date	:/Tin	ne P	rope	ertie	5				<u>? ×</u>
Da	te &	Time	Tir	ne Zo	one )				
	<u>D</u> ate		<u> </u>						_ <u>T</u> ime
	Nov	embe	er 🗖	] [	2003	}	<u>.</u>	ł	
	s	М	Т	W	Т	F	s		
							1		
	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		
	9	10	11	12	13	14	15		
	16	17	18	19	20	21	22		
	23	24	25	26	27	28	29		
	30								10 11 19 AM ÷
a	Irren	: time	e zon	ie: C	entr	al Sta	andar	d 1	Time
							(	ЭК	Cancel Apply

3. In the **Date & Time** tab, select your local time settings.



4. Select the **Time Zone** tab and set the correct time zone.

5. Click **OK**.

# **Network Setup**

The IPX Printing settings, TCP/IP settings and the Apple Talk Setup settings are set in the Network Setup parameter.

/ Sett	tings				×
Ad	ministration	IPX Printing			-
s	erver Setup	Tree:		Change Settings	
N	letwork Setup				.
R	emote Tools Setup	Context:		Change Settings	
s	Security	ТСРЛР			-
s	lystem Disks				.
C	Configuration Backup	IP Address	10.4.18.169	Change Settings	J
Pre	eferences	Subnet Mask	255.255.254.0		
L	ocalization	Default Gateway	10.4.18.1		
P	re-RIP Preview				
G	eneral Defaults	Preferred DNS Server:	10.4.2.12		
P	rint Queue Manager	Alternate DNS Server:	10.4.58.11		
C	Color	Angela Tally Catum			
N	lessages	Apple Talk Setup			-
V	/iew Configuration	The System will appear in zone:		Change Settings	
					´
			Sau	ve Cancel	

#### **IPX Printing**

**IPX Printing** enables the Spire CXP5000 color server to act as a job server for the Novell queue. A job server checks each assigned queue at a specified interval, taking care of jobs on a first-in, first-out basis. Once a job is processed, its associated file is deleted from the queue directory.

#### To set the Spire CXP5000 color server IPX parameter:

- 1. In the Settings window, select Administration>Network Setup.
- 2. In the **IPX Printing** area, click **Change Settings** next to the **Tree** parameter.

The Local Area Connection Properties dialog box appears, followed by the NWLink IPX/SPX Properties dialog box.

NWLink IPX/SPX/NetBIOS	Compatible Transport Prot <mark>?</mark> 🗙
General	
Print Services for NetWare	c number if you plan to run File and , IPX routing, or any other NetWare AP Agent. This number applies to all iter that use such services.
Internal network number:	84745429
manually configure the Fr	d choose Auto Detect. You should rame type and Network number not work in your enviroment.
Erame type:	Auto Detect
<u>N</u> etwork number:	

- 3. To change the frame type, select a frame type from the **Frame type** list, then click **OK**.
- 4. Click **OK** also in the Local Area Connection Properties window.

You are prompted to restart your computer.

5. Click **No** if you need to make more changes, or **Yes** to reboot.



**Note:** Using this procedure requires further setup by the network administrator.

#### TCP/IP Setup

The Spire CXP5000 color server is predefined with a default IP address. The TCP/IP option enables you to change this IP address and other TCP/IP settings.



**Note:** Before changing the network settings, consult your System Administrator.

#### To change the TCP/IP network settings:

- 1. In the Settings window, select Administration>Network Setup.
- 2. In the **TCP/IP** area, click **Change Settings** next to the **IP Address** parameter.

The Local Area Connection Properties dialog box appears, followed by the Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) dialog box.

Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Propertie	5	? ×
General		
You can get IP settings assigned autor this capability. Otherwise, you need to a the appropriate IP settings.		
Obtain an IP address automatical	y	
<ul> <li>Use the following IP address: —</li> </ul>		- 1
IP address:	192.168.62.1	
Subnet mask:	255 . 255 . 255 . 0	
Default gateway:		
O Obtain DNS server address autor	natically	
Use the following DNS server add	tresses:	- II
Preferred DNS server:		
Alternate DNS server:		
	Advanced.	
	OK Can	cel

3. Change the IP Address by selecting **Obtain an IP address** automatically.

Or:

Select **Use the following IP address** and type the required address—for example, **IP address:192.168.62.1** and **Subnet mask:255.255.255.0**.

4. Click **OK**.

5. Click **OK** in the Local Area Connection Properties window.

You are prompted to restart your computer.

6. Click **No** if you need to make more changes, or **Yes** to reboot.

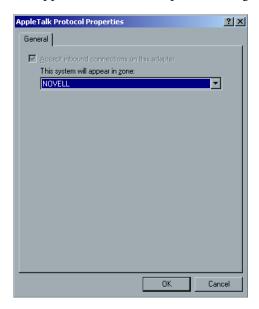
#### Apple Talk Setup

The **AppleTalk Setup** utility enables you to change the AppleTalk zone in which your Spire CXP5000 color server is located.

#### To change the Apple Talk network settings:

- 1. In the Settings window, select Administration>Network Setup.
- 2. In the Apple Talk Setup area, click Change Settings next to the The System will appear in zone parameter.

The Local Area Connection Properties dialog box appears, followed by the AppleTalk Protocol Properties dialog box.



3. From the zone list, select the required AppleTalk zone for your computer, and click **OK**.

#### **Remote Tools Setup**

The **Remote Tools Setup** includes setup for the **Remote Admin** tool and enables the connection of clients to the Spire CXP5000 color server over the network using the **Spire Web Center**.

#### **Remote Admin**

The **Remote Admin** utility enables the System Administrator to connect, view, operate and perform administration actions on the Spire CXP5000 color server from his client workstation. While this remote connection and operation takes place, the regular operation of the Spire CXP5000 color server is not affected. In fact, the only indication the spire operator has that such connection takes place, is in the **DFE and Printer Animation** and in DFE Monitor window.

The following graphic shows the **DFE and Printer Animation** as it is presented when the remote session is active.



To secure the remote connection, a password should be assigned by the System Administrator.



**Note:** This tool is designed for the exclusive usage of the System Administrator. Clients who would like to connect to the Spire CXP5000 color server from their workstations may do so by using the **Spire Web Center**, which enables you to view and monitor your jobs in the Spire CXP5000 color server queues.



For more information about viewing and monitoring your jobs from a client workstation, see *Spire Web Center* on page 76.

The remote admin setup process includes the following stages:

- 1. On the Spire CXP5000 color server: The remote admin service is enabled and a password is assigned.
- 2. On the System Administrator's station: The client program is downloaded and launched.

#### To enable the remote admin service and set a password:

- 1. In the Settings window, select Administration>Remote Tools Setup.
- 2. In the **Remote Tools Setup** area, select **Enable RemoteAdmin Service**.

Settings	<u>&gt;</u>
Settings Administration Server Setup Network Setup Remote Tools Setup Security System Disks Configuration Backup Preferences Localization Pre-RIP Preview General Defaults Print Queue Manager Color Messages View Configuration	Remote Tools Setup  Enable RemoteAdmin Service Password: Web Connect Setup  Enable Web Viewer
	Save Cancel

3. In the **Password** box, type a password.

**Note:** This password will be used later on to connect to the Remote Admin application from the System Administrator workstation.

#### To download and launch the Remote Admin Client application:

 From the System Administrator workstation, connect to the required Spire CXP5000 color server, and from the Utilities folder (related to your computer type, Windows or Macintosh) double-click SpireRemoteAdmin.exe.



**Tip:** You can also download the application from the **Spire Web Center** under **Downloads**.

When the installation is complete, the Login window appears.



- 2. From the **Spire Server** list, select the required Spire CXP5000 color server.
- 3. Click **OK**.

The next Login window appears.



- 4. In the **Session password** box, type the password you have previously created in the Remote Tools Setup window.
- 5. Click **OK**.

The Spire CXP5000 color server workspace appears on your screen and you can perform any required action.

#### Web Connect Setup

The **Web Connect Setup** enables clients to connect to the Spire CXP5000 color server over the network by using the **Spire Web Center**. This possibility is disabled by default.



For more information about viewing and monitoring your jobs from a client workstation, see *Spire Web Center* on page 76.

#### To enable web connections:

- 1. In the Settings window, select Administration>Remote Tools Setup.
- 2. In the Web Connect Setup area, select Enable Web Viewer.

# Security

The user **Passwords** and **Disk Wipe** settings are set in **Security**.

Settings	×
Administration	Passwords
Server Setup	Auto Log On
Network Setup	
Remote Tools Setup	Administrator:
Security	Enter Old Password:
System Disks	
Configuration Backup	Enter New Password:
Preferences	Verify New Password: Apply
Localization	Operator:
Pre-RIP Preview	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
General Defaults	Enter Old Password:
Print Queue Manager	Enter New Password:
Color	Verife New Processes
Messages	Verify New Password: Apply
View Configuration	Disable Guest Connection
	The password can contain up to 30 characters
	Disk Wipe
	Wipe disk on system shutdown
	Save Cancel
	Jave Caller

#### **User Passwords**

#### To set Password settings:

- 1. In the Settings window, select Administration>Security.
- 2. Select **Auto Log On** to enable users to log on automatically.
- 3. Select **Disable Guest Connection** to prevent Guest users from accessing the Spire CXP5000 color server.

#### To change Administrator/Operator passwords:

- 1. In the Settings window, select Administration>Security.
- 2. In the Administrator/Operator area, enter the old password.
- 3. Enter the new password.
- 4. Verify the new password.
- 5. Click **Apply** and **Save** in the Settings window.

The password is changed and the Settings window closes.

#### **Disk Wipe**

Usually when you delete a file, the file's dictionary entry is removed but data still remains on the disk. The **Disk Wipe** utility enables you to clear previously deleted files. The utility eliminates the contents of your deleted files by scanning all of the empty sectors on the disk and replacing them with zeros. Nonempty sectors are left untouched. This feature enables you to work in a more secure environment. If there is a system shutdown, the disk wipe operation can begin immediately.

#### To operate the Spire Disk Wipe utility:

- 1. In the Settings window, select Administration>Security.
- 2. To enable the disk wipe feature, select **Wipe disk on system shutdown**.
- 3. Exit the Spire Color Server application.
- 4. On the Windows desktop, double-click **My Computer**, and then select **D:\Utilities\PC Utilities\Disk Wipe**.
- 5. To install the utility, double-click the Disk Wipe installer icon.

The Disk Wipe utility icon appears on the Spire CXP5000 color server desktop.

6. Double-click the Disk Wipe utility icon.

The Disk Wipe utility appears.



7. To start the disk wipe operation, click Start Wiping.

A progress bar appears while the disk wipe operation permanently deletes files.

8. Close the Disk Wipe application when the operation finishes.

#### Notes:

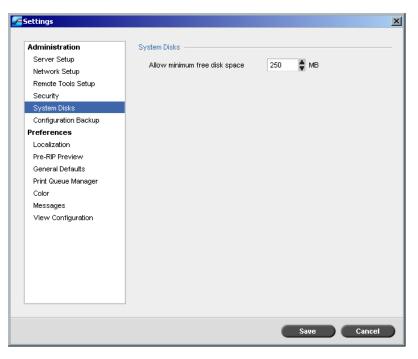
- The disk wipe operation does not function well when the Norton Utilities application is installed. Before you activate the **Disk Wipe** utility, make sure that Norton Utilities is not installed on the Spire CXP5000 color server.
- In rare cases, the process of deleting files from the Storage window is not completed—for example, the system shuts down before the deletion process is completed. In these cases, parts of the deleted files still reside in the **D\:Output** folder. Therefore, it is recommended that before you start the disk wipe operation, check the **D\:Output** folder to ensure that all the relevant files were deleted.
- The **Disk Wipe** utility affects the user disk and printer disk.
- Do not operate the **Disk Wipe** utility while another application is running.
- The supported language is English.

#### System Disks

When the Printer or User Disks reach a pre-defined threshold of minimum available space (the default is 250 MB), RIP is suspended and the system provides a warning message. The RIP will resume automatically only after disk space is available.

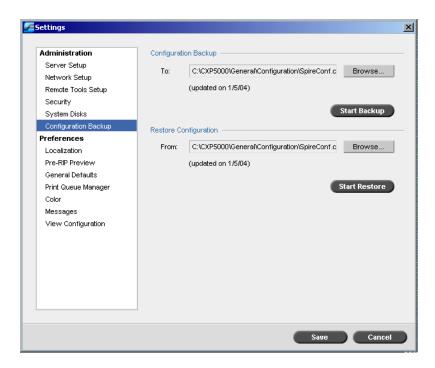
#### To set the system disks threshold:

- 1. In the Settings window, select Administration>System Disks.
- 2. In the **System Disks** area, set the minimum free disk space required for RIP.



# Backing up the Configuration

The **Configuration Backup** item enables you to backup your Spire CXP5000 color server configuration to a local hard disk, to a network drive or to an external media—for example, an external zip drive—connected to the Spire CXP5000 color server.



# **Configuration Backup**

#### To backup the configuration of your Spire CXP5000 color server:

- 1. In the Settings window, select Administration>Configuration Backup.
- 2. In the **Configuration Backup** area, click **Browse**.

The Save window appears.

Save 5				X
Look in:	Configuration	÷ t 🗀	New	
	Name	Date	Size	Туре
SpireCor	1	1 <i>1</i> 5/04 4:24 PM	103 KB	SpeedDial
File name:			_	
Files of type:	CNF file (*.cnf)	\$	]	
			Cancel	Save

3. Browse to the required directory path for the backup.

8

Note: You can also backup to an external media.

- 4. Click Save.
- 5. In the Settings window, click **Start Backup**.



**Note:** The last path will be saved and displayed to the path box. If the backup was made to an external media, the displayed path will be the default: **C:/CXP5000/General/Configuration**.

#### **Configuration Restore**

#### To restore the configuration of your Spire CXP5000 color server:

- 1. In the Settings window, select Administration>Configuration Backup.
- 2. In the **Restore Configuration** area, click **Browse** and locate a different directory path in which to restore the configuration.

#### Notes:

- The configuration files name will always be: "SpireConf.Cab" (Cabinet file.)
- You may also restore the configuration from an external media.
- 3. Click Start Restore.

The Restore Configuration window appears.



4. Select the categories you want to restore, and click **OK**.



**Note:** When restoring the configuration all the custom tables/sets are added to the system (for example imported user-defined imposition templates, new virtual printers, downloaded fonts etc.

The following message appears:



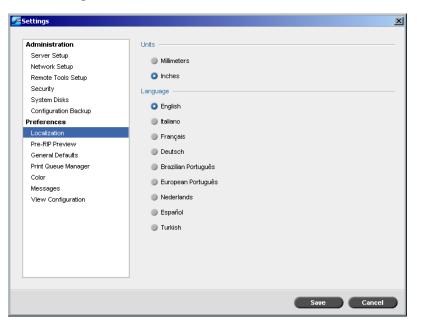
5. Click **Yes** if you would like the restored files to replace the current ones. Click **No** if you do not want the restored files to replace the existing files.



**Note:** The Restore Configuration date is updated in the Configuration Backup window.

# Localization

The Localization measurements and the Language are set in the Localization parameter.



### Setting the Localization Measurement

- 1. In the Settings window, select **Preferences**>Localization.
- 2. In the Localization area, select Millimeters or Inches, as required.

#### Setting the Language

- 1. In the Settings window, select **Preferences**>Localization.
- 2. In the Language area, select the language, as required.



**Note:** If you switch to another language, you need to restart the Spire CXP5000 color server application.

# **Pre-RIP Preview**

1. In the Settings window, select **Preferences**>**Pre-RIP Preview**.

Administration	PS Preview		
Server Setup	Volton allocity the Adalate and at Designed		
Network Setup	When closing the Adobe acrobat Preview		
Remote Tools Setup	Save file as PDF		
Security	Return to the original PS file		
System Disks			
Configuration Backup	VI Job Preview		
Preferences	Number of booklets for Pre-RIP preview	5 🛟	
Localization			
Pre-RIP Preview			
General Defaults			
Print Queue Manager			
Color			
Messages			
View Configuration			

- 2. In the **PS Preview** area, select your choice:
  - **Save as PDF**: to save the file as PDF
  - Return to original PS file: to return to the original PS file
- 3. In the **VI Job Preview** area, select the required number of booklets for pre-RIP preview.

# **General Defaults**

Administration	Default image size
Server Setup	Size: Quatro
Network Setup	Size.
Remote Tools Setup	OPI
Security	Enable OPI Spire Support
System Disks	Support Helios Server
Configuration Backup	
Preferences	Disable OPI Spire Support
Localization	Default Archive Path
Pre-RIP Preview	Archiving Path: Browse
General Defaults	Diowse
Print Queue Manager	
Color	
Messages	
View Configuration	

- 1. In the Settings window, select Preferences>General Defaults.
- 2. In the **Default Paper Size** area, select the **Size**.
- 3. Select the required **OPI** setting.

- For more information about setting the OPI, see OPI on page 256.
- 4. Select the **Default Archive Path**.

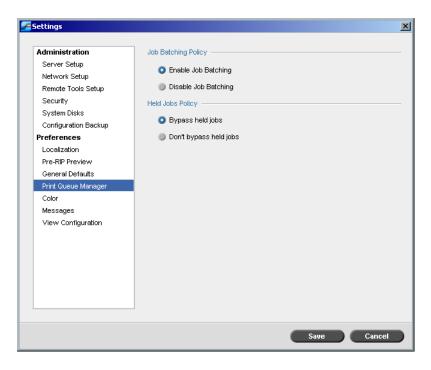


For more information on the default archive path, see Archiving and Retrieving Jobs on page 202.

### Print Queue Manager

The Job Batching and Held Jobs Policy options are set in the Print Queue Manager parameter.

The Job Batching utility enables you to print several jobs with the same settings in a batch, one after the other without the cycle down, and consequently save production time.



#### To set the required job batching option:

- 1. In the Settings window, select Preferences>Print Queue Manager.
- 2. Select **Enable Job Batching** to print jobs with the same page parameters, one after the other without the cycle down.

Or:

Select **Disable Job Batching** to disable the printing of jobs with the same page orientation, one after the other, and enable cycle down.



For more information about job batching, see *Job Batching Workflow* on page 191.

#### To set the required held jobs option:

In the Held Jobs Policy area, select Bypass held jobs, to bypass frozen jobs in the In Print queue.

Or:

Select **Don't Bypass held jobs** to stop the printing from the queue when a job is assigned a frozen status.

# Color

The Calibration Method, Emulations, Automatic Screening, Color conversion tables, and Calibration Reminder settings are set in Color.

<b>Z</b> Settings	×
Administration Server Setup Network Setup Remote Tools Setup Security System Disks Configuration Backup Preferences Localization Pre-RIP Preview General Defaults	Calibration Method  Target  Auto Adjusted  Advanced  Emulations  Device Link  Automatic Screening  LW: Line 200
Print Queue Manager Color Messages View Configuration	CT: Dot 200 Color conversion tables Current version color tables Calibration Reminder Set calibration reminder every (Hours) 24 \$
	Save Cancel

# Calibration



For more information on setting the calibration method, see *Color Calibration Methods* on page 314.

# Emulations

Using this utility, you can select the required emulation method:

- Device Link (default)
- CSA



**Note:** The emulation profiles that are displayed in the Job Parameters window are related to the chosen emulation method.

### To specify the emulation method:

- 1. In the Settings window, select **Preferences**>**Color**.
- 2. In the **Emulation** area, select the required emulation method from the list.

### Automatic Screening

The Spire CXP5000 color server supports Dot and Stochastic screening. When you print a job from the Spire CXP5000 color server, select the required screening method or choose **Automatic** in the **Color** parameter of the Settings window. By default, **Automatic** applies two types of screens:

- For CT (Continuous Tone): The system uses Dot type screen of Dot 200.
- For text / line-art elements LW (Line Work): The system uses Line type screen of Line 200.

### To change the values of the automatic screening method:

- 1. In the Settings window, access Preferences>Color.
- 2. In the **Automatic Screening** area, select the required Auto screen settings for LW from the **LW** list.
- 3. Select the required Auto screen settings for CT from the **CT** list.

You are prompted to restart the application for the new settings to take effect.

### **Color Conversion Tables**

The **Color Conversion Tables** utility enables you to select the set of color conversion tables used for your jobs.



**Important:** The **Process** queue needs to be closed while changing the color tables set.

### To select the color conversion tables:

- 1. In the Settings window, select Preferences>Color.
- 2. In the **Color conversion tables** area, select the conversion table to be used.

By default the current version color tables are selected. To apply the previous version color tables, select **Previous version color tables**. The following message appears.



3. Click **OK**.

# **Calibration Reminder**

Set the Calibration Reminder to remind you when to perform a calibration.

- 1. In the Settings window, select **Preferences**>**Color**.
- 2. In the **Calibration Reminder** area, select the **Set calibration reminder every (Hours)** check box and select the number of hours in the list.



The **calibration reminder** indicator appears when it is time to calibrate.



# Messages

The Alert Messages, Accounting Log Setup, and Message Viewer Log Setup settings are set in Messages.

Settings Administration Server Setup Network Setup Remote Tools Setup Security System Disks Configuration Backup Preferences Localization Pre-RIP Preview General Defaults Print Queue Manager Color	Alert Messages  Clear Log Now  Alerts window automatically on new error  Launch Alerts window on user selection only  Accounting Log Setup  Overwrite messages after:  Clear Log Now  Clear Log Now  Clear Log Now	<u>×</u>
View Configuration	Save	ancel

# Alert Messages

The **Alert Messages** utility enables you to select whether the Alerts window will open automatically, or not, when an error occurs.

### To set the Alerts window settings:

- 1. In the Settings window, select **Preferences**>Messages.
- 2. In the Alert Messages area, select Launch Alerts window automatically on new error (default).

If you would like to open the Alerts window upon selection only, select Launch Alerts window on user selection only.

# Accounting Log Setup

By default, all the jobs that were handled during the past 90 days are listed in the Spire CXP5000 color server Accounting window. This utility enables you to specify different values for how long information remains before being overwritten.

### To setup the accounting log:

- 1. In the Settings window, select **Preferences**>Messages.
- 2. In the Accounting Log Setup area, select the required value to Overwrite messages after.
- 3. To remove all the existing information from the windows, whenever desired, click **Clear Log Now**.



**Note:** For more information about the Accounting window, see *Job Accounting* on page 215.

# Message Viewer Log Setup

By default, all the jobs that were handled during the past 90 days are listed in the Spire CXP5000 color server Message Viewer. This utility enables you to specify different values for how long information remains before being overwritten.

### To setup the message viewer log:

- 1. In the Settings window, select **Preferences**>Messages.
- 2. In the **Message Viewer Log Setup** area, select the required value to **Overwrite messages after**.
- 3. To remove all the existing information from the windows, whenever desired, click **Clear Log Now**.



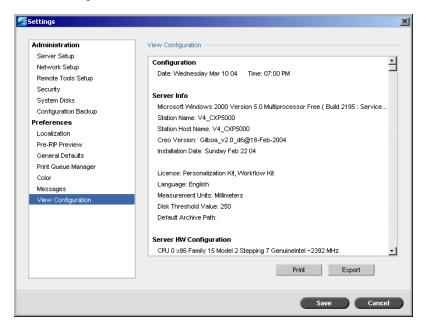
**Note:** For more information about the Message Viewer, see *Job Accounting* on page 215.

# **View Configuration**

The **View Configuration** utility enables you to view the configuration of your Spire CXP5000 color server and to print it to any printer on the network connected to your Spire CXP5000 color server. In addition you can save the configuration in the network or export it to an external media as a text file.

### To view the configuration:

1. In the Settings window, select **Preferences**>**View Configuration**.

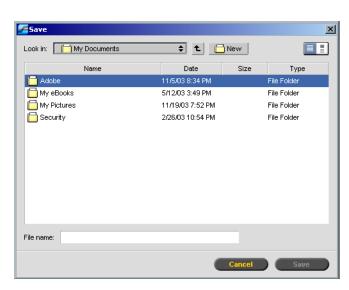


2. Click **Print** to print the configuration.

The Print window appears.

- 3. From the **Printer** list, select one of the defined printers and click **OK**.
- 4. If you would like to save the configuration click **Export**.

The Save window appears.



5. Locate the required folder, and click Save.

# System Messages

While jobs are being handled by the Spire CXP5000 color server, various messages are emitted. You can view the messages of each job in the Job History window, of the entire session in the Message Viewer window, or just the error messages within the Alerts window.

# The Alerts Window

By default, the Alerts window is open in the Spire CXP5000 color server workspace. Any time the system emits an **Error** type message, the message appears in the Alerts window. The Alerts window lists all the error messages that were generated during the workflow (the total number of messages is also indicated).



**Note:** You can specify whether you would like the Alert window to launch automatically on a new error, or upon user selection only. To set the preferred option, see *Alert Messages* on page 422.

From the View menu, select Alerts.

The Alerts window appears, listing all the **Error** messages that were generated during the workflow.

Date & Time	Job Title	Details	
Jan 7 14:14	Imposition Made Easy	Job <imposition a4_2.0="" easy="" made=""> fe</imposition>	ailed in F <mark></mark>
Jan 6 16:27	System	Configuration Restore Completed!.	
Jan 6 16:27	System	Configuration Restore Started!.	
Jan 6 16:26	System	Configuration Restore Completed!.	
Jan 6 16:26	System	Configuration Restore Started!.	
lan 6 16:26	System	Configuration Restore Completed	آ
Job <impositio< td=""><td>n Made Easy A4_2.0&gt; failed</td><td>in Process_Queue.</td><td></td></impositio<>	n Made Easy A4_2.0> failed	in Process_Queue.	



**Note:** By default, new messages are shown at the top of the list. For each message, the origin of the message is indicated, and a task that will solve the problem is suggested.

### To delete messages from the Alerts window:

Select the message(s) you want to delete and click Clear. Or:

Click the **Clear All** button to remove all messages.



**Note:** Cleared messages are not removed from the Message Viewer or from related Job History windows.

# System Disks Threshold Message

When the Printer or User Disks reach a pre-defined minimum available space threshold (usually of 256 MB), RIP is suspended and the system provides a warning message. The RIP resumes automatically only after disk space is available. In this case, you may increase the System Disk threshold.



For more information about setting the system disks threshold, see *System Disks* on page 410.

# Job History

### To view the job history:

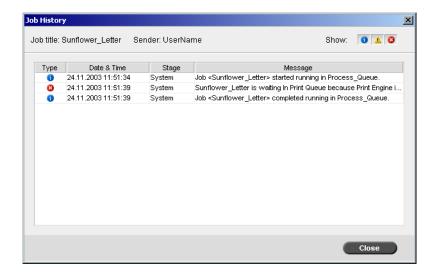
Right-click a job in the Queues window or in the Storage window, and from the menu select Job History.

Or:

Select a job and from the **Job** menu select **Job History**.

The Job History window appears, listing all the messages that were generated during the workflow of the selected job.

The Job History window indicates the job title and the sender name (the user name of the system from which the job originated).



# Message Information

For each message, the following information is indicated by default:

- An icon denoting the type of message (Error, Warning, or Information)
- The date and time on which the message was emitted (the time stamp)
- The stage in the workflow (for example, Print or Process)
- The message text

You may filter the messages by type, and/or sort the list by one of the column headers.

### The Message Viewer

### To open the Message Viewer:

> At any stage of work, from the **Tools** menu, select **Message Viewer**.

The Message Viewer window appears, listing all the messages that were generated during the workflow.



For more information about viewing messages related to a specific job, see *Job History* on page 427.

Type ∠	Job Title	Date & Time	Message	Sender	Stage
8	Imposition Made E	7.1.2004 14:14:29	Job <imposition a4_2.0="" easy="" made=""> failed in Process_Queue.</imposition>	SYSTEM	System
8	Sunflower_Letter	6.1.2004 15:17:42	Job <sunflower_letter> failed in Process_Queue.</sunflower_letter>	SYSTEM	System
8	Sunflower_Letter	6.1.2004 15:17:16	Job <sunflower_letter> failed in Process_Queue.</sunflower_letter>	SYSTEM	System
8	ATF_A3	6.1.2004 10: 7:57	ATF_A3 is waiting In Print Queue because Print Engine is not ready. J	SYSTEM	System
8	Golfer_Letter	6.1.2004 8:51:55	Golfer_Letter is waiting In Print Queue because Print Engine is not rea	SYSTEM	System
8	Imposition Made E	5.1.2004 15:16:46	Imposition Made Easy A4_2.0 is waiting In Print Queue because Print E	SYSTEM	System
8	Imposition Made E	5.1.2004 15:15: 8	Imposition Made Easy A4_2.0 is waiting In Print Queue because Print E	SYSTEM	System
8	Imposition Made E	5.1.2004 15:14:14	Imposition Made Easy A4_2.0 is waiting In Print Queue because Print E	SYSTEM	System
8	Imposition Made E	5.1.2004 15: 6:59	Imposition Made Easy A4_2.0 is waiting In Print Queue because Print E	SYSTEM	System
8	Imposition Made E	5.1.2004 15: 4:53	Imposition Made Easy A4_2.0 is waiting In Print Queue because Print E	SYSTEM	System
8	ATF_Woman_Letter	5.1.2004 15: 4:11	ATF_Woman_Letter is waiting In Print Queue because Print Engine is	SYSTEM	System
8	IQ_Test_Letter	5.1.2004 9:52:51	IQ_Test_Letter is waiting In Print Queue because Print Engine is not re	SYSTEM	System
8	IQ_Test_A41	4.1.2004 15:22:25	IQ_Test_A41 is waiting In Print Queue because Print Engine is not rea	SYSTEM	System
8	IQ_Test_Letter	4.1.2004 15:16:16	IQ_Test_Letter is waiting In Print Queue because Print Engine is not re	SYSTEM	System
8	IQ_Test_Letter	4.1.2004 14:51:47	IQ_Test_Letter is waiting In Print Queue because Print Engine is not re	SYSTEM	System
8	IQ_Test_Letter	4.1.2004 13:23:36	IQ_Test_Letter is waiting In Print Queue because Print Engine is not re	SYSTEM	System
8	IQ_Test_Letter	4.1.2004 13:19:46	IQ_Test_Letter is waiting In Print Queue because Print Engine is not re	SYSTEM	System
8	TourJob_1000_A4	4.1.2004 10:36:48	Job <tourjob_1000_a4> aborted by user!</tourjob_1000_a4>	SYSTEM	System

By default, all the jobs that were handled during the last 3 months (90 days) are listed.



The default may be changed in the Settings window under **Messages**. For more information about changing the default setting, see *Messages* on page 422.

### Managing Messages

You can filter the messages by type, and/or sort the list by one of the column headers. In addition, you may print the list of messages.

If required, you may reorder and resize columns, filter the list or sort the list by one of its column headers.

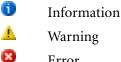


#### Notes:

- This section is relevant for the Message Viewer and Job History windows (but not for the Alerts window).
- These settings are retained after closing a window.

### Filtering the Messages by Type

Each message in the Message Viewer and Job History windows is assigned an icon to denote the message type:



Error

You can filter the list in order to view only messages of certain types.

Click any message type icon—for example, Error— in order not to list such messages.



By default, all message types are listed in the Message Viewer.



Note: If the message type is not selected, messages of this type do not appear in the list.

The list updates accordingly.

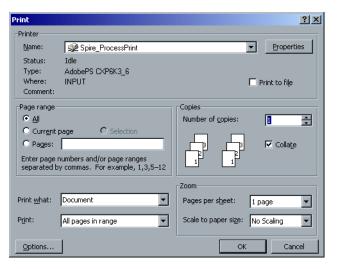
### **Printing the Message List**

You can print the information as it is presented in the Message Viewer (as it is currently filtered and sorted).

### To print the message list:

- 1. Filter and sort the list as required (the data is printed according to the current filtering and sorting).
- 2. Click Print List.

The Print window is displayed.



3. Set the printing options as required, and then click OK.

# Reinstalling the System

This section describes the two methods of reinstalling your Spire CXP5000 color server software by complete overwrite or by system partition. It describes how to install the Windows 2000 Professional operating system, the Creo Software application, and to configure the system using the Configuration Wizard.

This section also describes how to back up and restore the Creo system partition, and the Job List database.



#### Notes:

System Partition Overwrite should be performed when the Windows 2000 Professional operating system is corrupt and needs to be reinstalled.

Complete Overwrite should be performed only when installing a new operating system.

If you are installing a new operating system, or you are replacing any SCSI hard disk, low-level formatting must be performed (contact Xerox Support for further information).

### Preloaded Software

The Spire CXP5000 color server is delivered to the customer site preloaded with the following software and configuration:

- Windows 2000 Professional
- MS Service Pack 4.0
- Internet Explorer 6.0
- Spire CXP5000 Color Server for Xerox DocuColor 5252 and 2045 Digital Color Presses
- Adobe Acrobat 5.0
- Ultimate InSpire Software
- Network Parameters (hostname, IP address, network services and protocols)

### **Disk Configuration**

The following table outlines the Spire CXP5000 color server disk configuration:

Disk 0	<b>C:</b> Windows 2000 Professional software Creo application	<b>D:</b> Spool files Shared files Output directory files Apr high res files		
Disk 1	Image storage			
Disk 2	Image s	torage		

### **Reinstalling Overview**

It may, however, become necessary, for example after a system crash, to reinstall the system.

The reinstallation is mostly unattended. User interaction is needed only for entering the OS license number and the computer hostname, for rebooting the computer when requested, for inserting the final application CD-ROM and for the Configuration Wizard.



**Note:** Establish which printer is connected to the server. If required, uninstall the current Spire software application and install the correct Spire software application (contact Xerox Support for more information).

The reinstallation of the system requires two CD-ROMs: One CD-ROM #1:

• CD-ROM #1 (Windows 2000 Professional Fast Install)

One of the following CD-ROM #2s (depending on the printer type):

- CD-ROM #2B (Spire CXP5000 color server version 4.0 for the DocuColor 2045 Application Software)
- CD-ROM #2C (Spire CXP5000 color server version 4.0 for the DocuColor 5252 Application Software)



**Note:** CD-ROM #2A is not supplied in the software kit, as it only applies to the DocuColor 6060 printer.

### Two Methods of Reinstalling the System

**Creo Software Complete Overwrite Installation**: This procedure replaces the entire system disk, operating system partition, Creo application, and user partition (partitions C: and D:). A complete overwrite should be performed only when you are upgrading the operating system.



**Note:** This option deletes all the files stored on disks C: and D:. Make sure to back up any important customer files before selecting this option. **Back up the files to the local disk, and then back up the files to an external device or to a network (you cannot back up directly to an external device or network).** 

• **Creo Software Preservation Installation** (System Partition Overwrite): This procedure replaces only the operating system partition (C:). You should perform System Partition Overwrite when the Windows 2000 Professional operating system is corrupt and needs to be reinstalled.

### Back Up and Restore

These procedures can be performed at any time you want to backup and restore your Creo system partition, and backup and restore your job list database.

### Notes:

- To enable the restoration of customer settings and job data, we recommend that you back up the Spire CXP5000 color server configuration and other information, before loading the operating system, see *Backing Up and Restoring the Creo System Partition* on page 471 and *Backing Up and Restoring the Job List Database* on page 473.
- Once you have backed up all the required information to your local disk, back up this information to an external device or to a network (you cannot back up directly to an external device or network).
- Determine whether VIPP or any other Xerox/Creo supported application is loaded on the Spire CXP5000 color server. Such applications have to be reloaded after the reinstallation is completed.

# Reinstalling the Operating System

Before reinstalling, ensure that:

- all external SCSI devices are disconnected from the Spire CXP5000 color server.
- the following information is available:
  - CD-ROM software pack
  - Computer name (for example, XP-9)
  - TCP/IP information
  - Windows 2000 Professional OEM product ID number
  - Gateway, WINS address, and DNS information
  - Required AppleTalk zone
  - IPX information



For more details, refer to the Xerox Installation and Planning Guide.

### Backing Up the Job List Database

If you want to back up the Job List Database, proceed to *Backing Up the Job List Database* on page 473.

# Reinstalling the Windows 2000 Professional Operating System

- 1. If your Spire Color Server is on, and the Spire workspace is open:
  - a. Exit the workspace.
  - b. Place CD-ROM #1 (Windows 2000 Fast Install), into the CD/ DVD-ROM drive.
  - c. On the Windows desktop, follow the path, Start>Shut Down>Restart>OK.
     Wait until the PC DOS 7.1 Startup Menu appears.

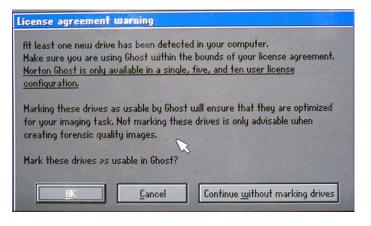
If your Spire Color Server is off:

- a. Press the Power On/Off button on the front panel.
- b. As soon as power is applied, place CD-ROM #1 (Windows 2000 Fast Install), into the CD/DVD-ROM drive.
   Wait until the PC DOS 7.1 Startup Menu appears.
- 2. When the PC DOS Start Up Menu appears, the following choices are available:
  - Creo Software Complete Overwrite Installation
  - Creo Software Preservation Installation (System Partition Overwrite)
  - Backup Creo System Partition
  - Restore Creo System Partition
  - DOS prompt

3. Use the keyboard arrows to select **Creo Software Complete Overwrite Installation** and press ENTER.



**Note:** If the Norton Ghost® License Agreement Warning appears, click **OK** to mark the drives as usable by Norton Ghost. The warning will only appear if you have installed a new SCSI hard disk.



The system starts copying the files.

After about five minutes, you are prompted to remove the CD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive and reboot.

4. Remove the CD-ROM from the drive, and press CTRL+ALT+DEL to reboot.

The system copies files and restarts. This process takes about six minutes.

- 5. When the Windows 2000 Professional Setup screen appears type the 25-digit Product Key, that comes with the Windows 2000 Professional manual, and click **Next**.
- 6. In the Computer Name and Administrator Password screen, type the name for the Spire CXP5000 color server, for example XP-9.



#### Important:

In the administrator name and password area, use the default settings.

If required, you can change the administrator name and password, but only at the end of the installation process (see *If you want to change the administrator name and password:* on page 469, or *If you want to change the user password:* on page 470).

7. Click Next.

The installation process continues.

8. At the end of the installation (about five minutes), the system reboots. You are asked to insert the application software CD-ROM. Proceed to *Reinstalling the Creo Application Software*.

# Reinstalling the Creo Application Software

- 1. Insert CD-ROM #2A, #2B, or #2C #2B or #2C, depending on your printer type, into the DVD-ROM drive.
- 2. In the SPIRE application splash screen that appears, click **Start**. The Adobe Acrobat setup begins.
- 3. After the Adobe Acrobat setup is complete, the Spire CXP5000 color server installation starts.
- 4. When the License Agreement window opens, click **Yes** to continue the Spire CXP5000 color server installation.
- 5. When the installation is complete, remove CD-ROM #2 from the DVD-ROM drive.
- 6. The system restarts automatically. Proceed to *Disk Striping* on page 437.

# **Disk Striping**

Once the Spire CXP5000 color server reboots, the Wrong Disk Configuration message appears. This message indicates that the disks need to be striped.

### Initial Disk Striping Procedure

1. In the following message, click **OK**.

VBScript X
Wrong Disk Configuration. Run Disk Administrator to Correct.
ОК

Action       yiew       Image: market in the system       Status       Capacity       Free S         Image: market in the system information       Partition       Basic       NTFS       Healthy (System)       3.91 GB       2.20 G         Image: market in the system information       Partition       Basic       NTFS       Healthy (System)       3.91 GB       2.20 G         Image: market in the system information       Partition       Basic       NTFS       Healthy (System)       30.27 GB       30.27 GB       30.21 GB         Image: market in the system information       Image: ma	📮 Computer Management	Computer Management						
Computer Management (Loca)     Computer Management (Loca)     System Tools     System Tools     System Tools     System Information     Generate Folders     System Information     Social Bers and Groups	Action ⊻iew	2						
Image: System Tools       Image: System Tools         Image: System Tools       Image: System Tools <th>Tree</th> <th></th> <th>Layout</th> <th>Туре</th> <th>File System</th> <th>Status</th> <th>Capacity</th> <th>Free S</th>	Tree		Layout	Туре	File System	Status	Capacity	Free S
Image: System Tools       Image: Children Construction         Image: System Tormation       Image: Children Construction <td>Computer Management (Local)</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>	Computer Management (Local)							
System Information     Performance Logs and Alerts     Shared Folders     Device Manager     Device Manager     Disk Management     Disk Management     Disk Ofragmenter     Logical Drives     Services and Applications     Services and Applications     Services and Applications	🚊 🌇 System Tools	(D:)	Partition	Basic	NTFS	Healthy	30.27 GB	30.21
Performance Logs and Alerts     Shared Folders     Shared Folders     Shared Folders     Disk Management     Cold Users and Groups     Disk Management     Disk Defragmenter     Disk Defragmente								
Image: Started Folders     Image: Started Folders       Image: Storage     Image: Storage       Image: Storage     <								
Device Manager         Device Manager         Disk Outlases and Groups         Disk Management:         Disk Deragement:								Þ
Basic 3: 91 GB MTF5 Disk Management Disk Defragmenter Disk Defragme	- 🖳 Device Manager	-	1					
3.91 G 6B       3.91 G 6B NTF5         W Disk Defragmenter       0nline         Dynamic       Foreign         Poreign       000000000000000000000000000000000000			R ::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::		71			_
Online     Healthy       Disk Defragmenter     Logical Drives       Logical Drives     Colored       Coreign     Poreign       Colored     Colored       Colored <td></td> <td></td> <td>(C:)</td> <td></td> <td>(D:) 30.27 GB NTES</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>			(C:)		(D:) 30.27 GB NTES			
Removable Storage     Drynamic     Foreign      CObick 2     Dynamic     Foreign      Forei		Online	(Healthy (System)					
Big Removable Storage     Dynamic       Foreign     Foreign       Constructions     Foreign       Construction     Foreign       Construction     Foreign       Construction     Foreign		Dick 1						_
Foreign								
Image: Second	H- C Services and Applications	Foreign						
Dynamic Foreign CDRom 0 DVD (E:) Online								
Foreign CDRom 0 DVD (E:) Online								
CDRom 0 DVD (E:) Online		Dynamic						
DVD (E:) Online		Foreign						
DVD (E:) Online		ACDRom 0						
Primary Partition		Online						
Primary Partition								
Primary Partition								
		Primary Partition	ו					

The Disk Management window appears.

2. Maximize the window.

# Establishing the Correct Disk Striping Procedure

- 1. In the Disk Management window, verify that Disk 1 and Disk 2 are labelled **Dynamic**. Perform the procedure: *Striping Dynamic Disks* on page 439.
- If you have replaced a disk or low-level formatted any disk, the disk will be labelled Unknown. Once you have low-level formatted both disks (a required procedure, contact Xerox Support for further information), both disks will be labelled Unknown.
   Perform the procedure: *Striping Unknown Disks* on page 443.

🖵 Computer Management							_ 🗆 ×
Action View ↓ 🗢 → 主 🔃	2 🛛 💀						
Tree	Volume	Layout	Туре	File System	Status	Capacity	Free 9
Computer Management (Local)	➡ (C:) ➡ (D:)	Partition Partition	Basic Basic	NTFS NTFS	Healthy (System) Healthy	3.91 GB 30.27 GB	2.20 0 30.21
🗈 🔁 Shared Folders	•				]		Þ
Device Manager     Social Users and Groups     Social Users and Groups     Social Users and Groups     Disk Management     Disk Defragmenter     Disk	Image: Constraint of the second se	(C:) 3.91 GB NTF5 Healthy (System)		(D:) 30.27 GB NTFS Healthy			
	Disk 2		Ch	eck wheth	er the		
	Foreign			ks are			
	DVD (E:)		Dy	namic or L	Jnknown		
	Online						
1	Primary Partition	1					

# Striping Dynamic Disks

1. Position the mouse pointer in the area where the disk is designated **Dynamic**.

Right-click and select Import Foreign Disk.



Foreign disks are any hard disks that were recognized as dynamic disks from a previous installation.

<b>M</b> Disk Dynamic	1
D yn dinie	Create Volume
Foreign	Import Foreign Disks
<b>@Dis</b> l	Revert To Basic Disk
Dynamic	Reactivate Disk
Foreign	Remove Disk
	Properties
DVD (E:]	Help

 Import Foreign Disks
 ? ×

 These disks need to be added to your system configuration before you can use them.

 ✓ Foreign disk set (2 of 2 disks selected)

 Select Disk...

 OK

 Cancel

2. Verify that Foreign disk set (2 of 2 disks selected) is selected, and click OK.

The following window appears.

Verify	Verify Volumes on Foreign Disks					
	The list below shows the st disks. Choose OK if you sti			nese foreign		
	Туре	Data Condition		Length	Ī	
	Striped Volume	OK		157057		
			<u> </u>	Cancel		

3. Click **OK.** 

The Dynamic disks are striped as shown in the following window.

CDISK 0 Basic 34.18 GB Online	(C:) 3.91 GB NTFS Healthy (System)	(D:) 30.27 GB NTFS Healthy
<b>Disk 1</b> Dynamic 76.69 GB Online	(F:) 76.69 GB Healthy	
<b>Disk 2</b> Dynamic 76.69 GB Online	(F:) 76.69 GB Healthy	
<b>CDRom 0</b> DVD (E:) Online		

4. Position the mouse pointer in the white area to the right of the first disk

and right-click.

Select Change Drive Letter and Path.

Cisk 1 Dynamic 76.69 GB Online	(F:) 76.69 GB Healthy	Open Explore
Cisk 2 Dynamic 76,69 GB Online	<b>(F:)</b> 76.69 GB Healthy	Change Drive Letter and Path Format Reactivate Volume
DVD (E:)		Delete Volume Properties
Of Millio		Help

Change Drive Letter and Paths for (F:)	<u>?</u> ×
Allow access to this volume through the drive letter and paths listed	below.
Add <u>E</u> dit <u>R</u> emove	
	ose

# 5. The drive letter is preselected. Click **Remove**.

The following Confirm message appears.

Confirm	×
?	Removing the drive letter of a volume may cause programs to no longer run. Are you sure you want to remove this drive letter?
	<u>Y</u> es <u>N</u> o

- 6. Click Yes.
- 7. Confirm that the Disk Management window appears as illustrated in the following window, which shows that the drive letters have been removed.

📮 Computer Management							_ 🗆 🗵
Action ⊻iew	😢 🛛 🖸 🗙 🖆	' 🚅 🔯					
Tree	Volume	Layout	Туре	File System	Status	Capacity	Free S
Computer Management (Local)		Striped	Dynamic		Healthy	153.38 GB	153.3
🛱 🐔 System Tools	🖃 (C:)	Partition	Basic	NTFS	Healthy (System)	3.91 GB	2.20 0
🕀 💼 Event Viewer	(D:)	Partition	Basic	NTFS	Healthy	30.27 GB	30.21
🗄 💁 System Information							
Performance Logs and Alerts							
	•				]		<u> </u>
Local Users and Groups	Pisk 0						
E-Storage	Basic	(C:)		(D:)			
Disk Management	34.18 GB Online	3.91 GB NTFS		30.27 GB NTFS	5		
- 😽 Disk Defragmenter	Online	Healthy (System)		Healthy			
	🗇Disk 1						
	Dynamic 76,69 GB						
	Online	76.69 GB Healthy					
	🗇 Disk 2	<b></b>					
	Dynamic 76,69 GB	76.69 GB					
	Online	Healthy					
		r					
	DVD (E:)						
	Online						
<u> </u>	Unallocated	Primary Partition	Striped Volume				

- 8. Close the Disk Management window.
- 9. The Image Disks File System is not Formatted message appears. Click **OK**.

### 10. You have completed Disk Striping.

- If configuration recovery information is available, proceed to *The Configuration Wizard (If Backup Available)* on page 452.
- If there is no backup and the system configuration must be done manually, proceed to *The Configuration Wizard (If Recovery Fails or is Unavailable)* on page 457.

### Striping Unknown Disks

Perform the following procedures if you:

- Have replaced an image disk (low-level format both disks)
- Have low-level formatted one image disk (low-level format both disks)

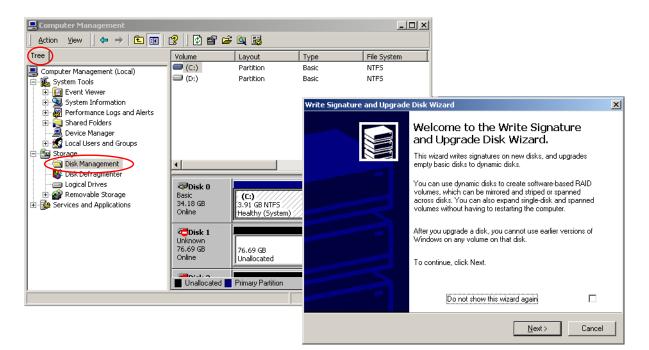


**Important:** When you replace an image disk or low-level formatted one disk, you must low-level format both image disks, before you perform the *Striping Unknown Disks* procedure.

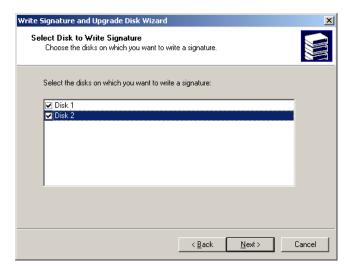
### Allocating a Write Signature

- 1. Open the Computer Management window (on the Windows desktop, right-click **My Computer** and select **Manage**).
- 2. In the Computer Management window, from the Tree tab, select **Disk** Management.

The Welcome to the Write Signature and Upgrade Wizard window appears.



3. Click Next.



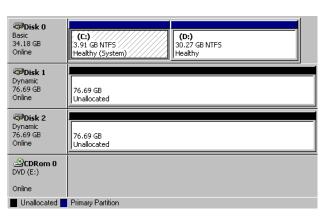
4. Click Next.

Write Signature and Upgrade Disk Wizard	×
Select Disks to Upgrade Choose the disks to be upgraded.	
Select the disks you want to upgrade:	
☑ Disk 1 ☑ Disk 2	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

5. Click Next.

Write Signature and Upgrade	Disk Wizard	×
	Completing the Write Signature and Upgrade Disk Wizard You have successfully completed the Write Signature and Upgrade Disk Wizard. You have selected these settings: Write a signature on the following disks: Disk 1 Disk 2 Upgrade the following disks: None	
	< <u>B</u> ack Finish Cancel	

6. Click Finish.

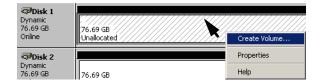


7. The disks are labelled Dynamic but are not striped. Proceed to *Creating a Striped Volume*.

### **Creating a Striped Volume**

1. Position the mouse pointer in the cross-hatched area to the right of the first disk.

Right-click and select **Create Volume**.



The Create Volume Wizard appears.



2. Click Next.

The following window appears.

Volume type -		 	
O Simple vo	blume		
O Spanned	volume		
Striped vol	olume		
Description—			
	ume stores data in s you faster access		

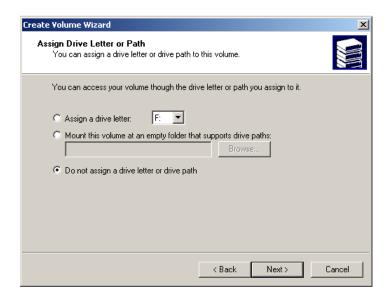
3. Select Striped volume and click Next.

Select two or more disks.	
All a <u>v</u> ailable dynamic disks:	<u>S</u> elected dynamic disks:
Disk 2	Add >>         Disk 1           << Bemove
_ Size	Total volume size: 78529 MB
For all selected disks:	78529 - MB Maximum: 78529 MB

4. Select **Disk 2** and click **Add**.

Create Volume Wizard	×
Select Disks You can select the disks and	set the disk size for this volume.
Select two or more disks.	
All a <u>v</u> ailable dynamic disks:	Selected dynamic disks:
	Add >> Disk 1
	Disk 2
	<< Remove All
	Total volume size: 157058 MB
Size	
For all selected disks:	78522 - MB Maximum: 78529 MB
	< Back Next > Cancel

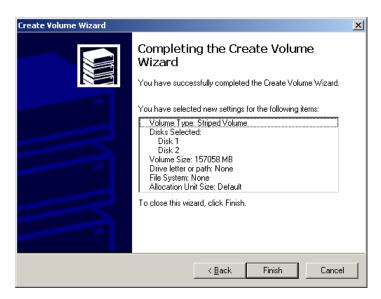
 Disk 1 and 2 are listed under Selected dynamic disks. The Total volume size has increased from 78529 MB to 157058 MB. Click Next.



6. Select **Do not assign a drive letter or drive path.** Click **Next.** 

You	can customize the formatting	g of the partition
Speci	ify whether you want to form	nat this volume.
۲	Do not format this volume	
0	Format this volume as follo	ows:
	Formatting	
	File system to use:	NTFS
	Allocation unit size:	Default
	Volume label:	New Volume
	Perform a Quick Fo	rmat 🗖 Enable file and folder compression

7. Select **Do not format this volume** and click **Next**.



8. To complete the Create Volume Wizard, click Finish.

### **Confirming the Disk Striping**

After you click Finish, the following window appears.

📙 Computer Management					<u> </u>
<u>Action</u> <u>View</u> ↓ ← → 1 € 1	2   🖸 📽 😼				
Tree	Volume	Layout	Туре	File System	Status
	Volume Volume (C:) (D:) (D:) (D:) Volume Vol	,	Dynamic Basic Basic	NTF5 NTF5	Status Healthy Healthy (System) Healthy
	DVD (E:) Online				_
	Unallocated	Primary Partition 🗖 🤅	Chined Volume		<b>_</b>
		Frimary Fartition	salpea voidme		

- 1. Confirm that the Disk Management window appears as illustrated in the previous window, and verify that the drive letters have been removed.
- 2. Close the Disk Management window.
- 3. The Image Disks File System is not Formatted message appears. Click **OK**.
- To make sure that the changes take effect, restart the Spire CXP5000 color server. On the Windows desktop, follow the path: Start>Shut Down>Restart>OK. You have completed *Disk Striping*.

- 5. After the computer restarts, the Configuration Wizard appears.
  - If configuration recovery information is available, proceed to *The Configuration Wizard (If Backup Available)* on page 452.
  - If there is no backup and the system configuration must be done manually, proceed to *The Configuration Wizard (If Recovery Fails or is Unavailable)* on page 457.

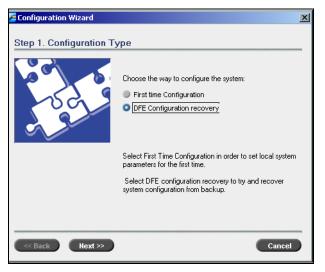
# The Configuration Wizard (If Backup Available)

The Spire CXP5000 color server Configuration Wizard automatically appears after the installation is complete. Follow the steps of the wizard to complete the Spire CXP5000 color server configuration recovery.



**Note:** If you received the message Error in default configuration, click **OK**, and go to step 2 in *Restoring the Configuration*.

# **Restoring the Configuration**



1. Select DFE Configuration recovery and click Next.

Sconfiguration Wizard	×
Step 2. Recovery	Default Configuration (Update at 1/5/04)     Select Configuration     Browse      Start Recovery
	Select backup to restore system configuration from the default backup path on the DFE, or browse to another backup path, and then select backup.
<pre>&lt;&lt; Back Next &gt;&gt;</pre>	Cancel

### The following dialog box appears.

- 2. If you would like to restore the default configuration, select **Default Configuration**.
- 3. If you received the message Error in default configuration, or if you want to use a different configuration file than the default, choose Select Configuration and click Browse.
- 4. Locate the required configuration file and then click **OK**.
- 5. Click the **Start Recovery** button.



6. By default, no categories are selected. Select the categories you want to restore.



**Note:** When restoring the configuration all the custom tables/sets will be added to the system (for example, imported user-defined imposition templates, new virtual printers, and downloaded fonts).

# 7. Click **OK**.

The following message appears.



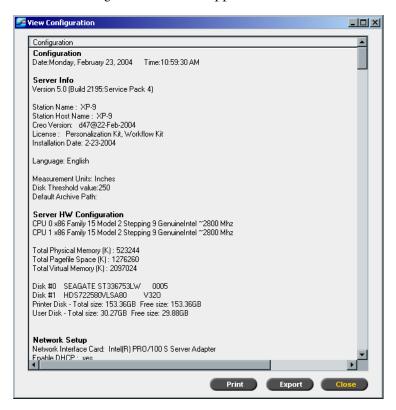
### 8. Click Yes.

After the recovery is complete, the following confirmation message appears.

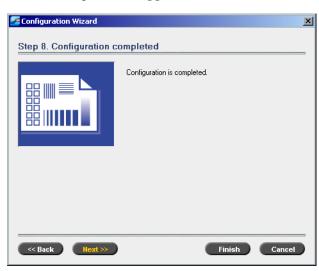
Configuration
Restore Completed. Changes Will take effect after restart.
OK

9. Click **OK**.

10. Click **Next** in Step 2 Recovery window. The View Configuration window appears.



11. Click Close.



The following window appears.

12. Click Finish.

The Spire CXP5000 color server application workspace appears on your screen.

To make sure that any you made changes take effect, restart the computer.

- 13. Close all open applications, and on the Windows desktop, click **Start>Shut Down>Restart>OK**.
- 14. If you want to change the administrator name and password, or only the user password, proceed to *If you want to change the administrator name and password:* on page 469, or *If you want to change the user password:* on page 470.

# The Configuration Wizard (If Recovery Fails or is Unavailable)

If there is no backup configuration in your system, you need to perform the following steps to configure your system.

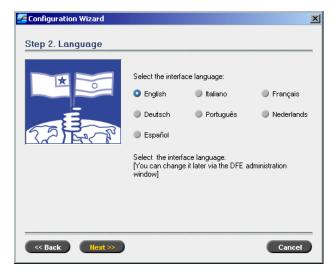
# Choosing the Configuration Type

The Spire CXP5000 color server Configuration Wizard automatically appears the first time you turn on the Spire CXP5000 color server.

Configuration Wizard	×
Step 1. Configuration Ty	/pe
150	<ul> <li>First time Configuration</li> <li>DFE Configuration recovery</li> </ul>
	Select First Time Configuration in order to set local system parameters for the first time.
	Select DFE configuration recovery to try and recover system configuration from backup.
< Next >>	Cancel

> Verify that First Time Configuration is selected and click Next.

# Setting the Language



> Select the required interface language, and click **Next**.

# Configuring the Host Name

The Spire CXP5000 color server contains a default Computer Name (Hostname) set from the factory. Check with your System Administrator if the computer's name needs to be changed.



**Note:** The Hostname is taken from the computer name you typed during the Windows 2000 Professional Fast Installation, see *Reinstalling the Operating System* on page 434.

<b>5</b> Configuration Wizard	X
Step 3. Host Name	
	Host Name: V3_DC6060
	Change
	This is your Host Name as it currently appears on the network.
	Select change to change the current setting.
<pre></pre>	Cancel

1. Verify that the correct host name is displayed and click **Next**. Otherwise, click the **Change** button.

The System Properties dialog box appears.



 Click the Properties button. The Identification Changes window appears.

Identification Changes		? ×
You can change the name a computer. Changes may affe		
Computer name:		
SpireColor1		
Full computer name: SpireColor1.		
		<u>M</u> ore
Member of		
C <u>D</u> omain:		
• Workgroup:		
WORKGROUP		
	OK.	Cancel

3. In the **Computer name** area, type the new name for the computer. If you would like to change the **Workgroup** or the **Domain** in which your computer appears, type the new name in the corresponding area and click **OK**.



**Note:** Do not change the Workgroup or Domain unless instructed. If you are changing the Domain/Workgroup, verify that you have the user name and password for the Domain/ Workgroup.

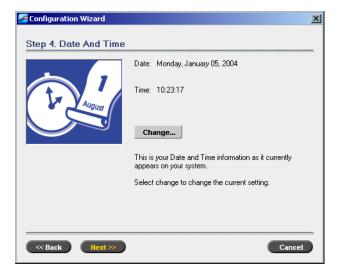
A message appears to inform you that changes will take effect only after restarting the computer.

- 4. Click **OK**.
- 5. In the System Properties dialog box, click **OK**.
- 6. Click **Next** to continue.



**Note:** When prompted to restart your computer, click **No**, since you will be prompted at the end of the Configuration Wizard to restart your system.

# Setting the Date and Time



1. Check that the Date and Time are set correctly and click **Next**. Otherwise, click **Change**.

Date	≥/Tir	ne P	rope	ertie	5			<u>? ×</u>
Da	ate &	Time	Tir	ne Zo	one			
	<u>D</u> ate							<u>I</u> ime
	Jani	Jary	•	] [	2004	ł	 	
	S	М	Т	W	Т	F	S	
					1	2	3	
	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	
	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	
	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	
	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	
								4:21:46 PM 🗧
C	urreni	t time	e zon	ie: C	ientr	al Sta	andar	Time
							(	K Cancel Apply

2. Set the Date and Time correctly.

3. Select Time Zone.



- 4. Set the Time Zone, click **OK**.
- 5. Click Next.

# Setting the Default Measurement Units



> Select the default measurement unit you require, and click **Next**.

# Configuring the IP Address



- 1. The Spire CXP5000 color server is set to DHCP server configuration. Click **Next** to continue.
- 2. If you would like to specify a specific IP address, click the **Change** button.

The Local Area Connection Properties dialog box appears, followed by the Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties dialog box.

Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties				? ×
General				
You can get IP settings assigned automa this capability. Otherwise, you need to as the appropriate IP settings.				
Obtain an IP address automatically				
Use the following IP address:				
IP address:				
S <u>u</u> bnet mask:				
Default gateway:				
C Obtain DNS server address automa				
	esses:			
Preferred DNS server:				
Alternate DNS server:				
			Advan	ced
		OK		Cancel

3. Select **Use the following IP address** and type the **IP address**, **Subnet mask** and **Default gateway** in their corresponding boxes.



For more details on how to get the IP or DHCP (also subnet mask and default gateway) information, refer to the *Xerox Installation and Planning Guide*.

- 4. Click **OK**.
- 5. In the Local Area Connection Properties dialog box, click **OK**.
- 6. Click Next.

# Configuring the Apple Talk Zone

This option enables you to change the AppleTalk network zone that your Spire CXP5000 color server will appear in.

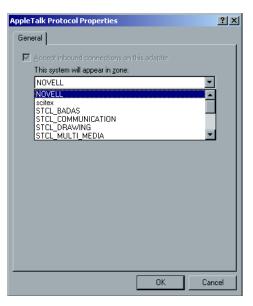
**Note:** This option only applies to networks that contain Macintosh computers.

Sonfiguration Wizard	×
Step 7. Apple Talk Zon	e AppleTalk Zone:
	Change
	This is the Apple Talk Zone that your machine currently appears in on the network.
	Select change to change the current setting.
<pre>&lt;&lt; Back Next &gt;&gt;</pre>	Cancel

1. Click the **Change** button.

\$

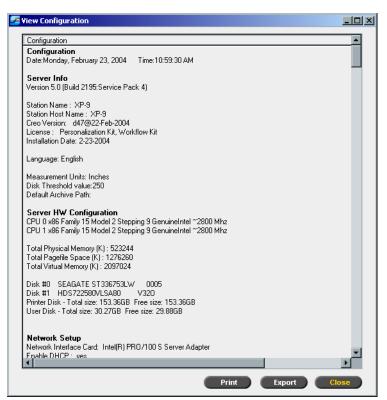
The Local Area Connection Properties dialog box appears, followed by the AppleTalk Protocol Properties dialog box.



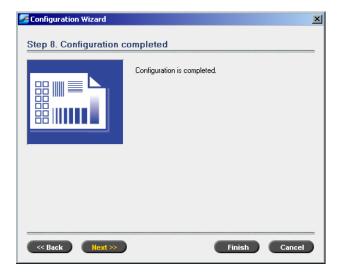
- 2. Select the required zone from the list and click **OK**.
- 3. In the Local Area Connection Properties dialog box, click **OK**.
- 4. Click Next.

# Completing the Configuration

After the configuration is complete, the View Configuration window appears.



1. Click Close.



#### The following window appears.

2. Click **Finish** to complete the First-time setup. When the backup is complete, the following message appears.



3. Click **OK**.

After a few minutes, the Spire CXP5000 color server workspace appears on your screen.

- 4. If you want to change the administrator name and password:
  - a. On the Windows desktop, right-click **My Computer** and select **Manage**.
  - b. Expand the Local Users and Groups tree, and select Users.
  - c. Select Administrator. Right-click and select Properties.
  - d. Type the Full name and click **OK**.
  - e. Select Administrator. Right-click and select Password.
  - f. Type and confirm the new password and click **OK**.

- 5. If you want to change the user password:
  - a. Press CTRL+ALT+DELETE.
  - b. In the Windows Security window, click Change Password.
  - c. Type the old and new password and confirm the new password.
  - d. Click OK.
- 6. If you have a Novell network running IPX protocol, proceed to *Installing and Configuring Novell Client for Spire*.

## Installing and Configuring Novell Client for Spire

Contact Xerox Support for further information.

## Backing Up the Creo System Partition

If you want to back up the Creo system partition, proceed to *Backing Up the Creo System Partition* on page 471, and then configure the McAfee VirusScan (contact Xerox Support for further information).

## Backing Up the Job List Database

If you want to back up the Job List Database, proceed to *Backing Up the Job List Database* on page 473, and then configure the McAfee VirusScan (contact Xerox Support for further information).

## Configuring the McAfee VirusScan

Contact Xerox Support for further information.

# Backing Up and Restoring the Creo System Partition

The following procedures can be performed at any time you want to backup and restore your Creo system partition.

When you backup your Creo system partition, Norton Ghost copies the files on partition C: to an image file on partition D:.

If you want to restore the information from the image file on partition D: back to partition C:, any current jobs on partition C: will be lost. We therefore recommend that you backup any important current jobs using the procedures described in *Backing Up and Restoring the Job List Database* on page 473.

#### **Backing Up the Creo System Partition**



**Note:** If you are already logged on your system and the Spire CXP5000 color server workspace is open, exit the workspace and proceed to step 4.

- 1. Turn on your computer.
- 2. Place CD-ROM #1 (Windows 2000 Fast Install) in the DVD-ROM drive.
- 3. Restart the computer.
- 4. If you are already logged on to your system, on the Windows desktop, follow the path **Start>Shutdown>Restart**.
- 5. Wait until the **PC DOS Start Up Menu** appears. The following choices are available:
  - Creo Software Complete Overwrite Installation
  - Creo Software Preservation Installation (System Partition Overwrite)
  - Backup Creo System Partition
  - Restore Creo System Partition
  - DOS prompt
- 6. Use the keyboard arrows to select **Backup Creo System Partition**, and press ENTER.

The Norton Ghost window appears and the files on partition C: are copied to an image file on partition D:. The process takes about three minutes to complete.  A message appears instructing you to remove the CD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive and restart the computer. Remove the CD-ROM and press CTRL+ALT+DELETE to restart the computer.

You have completed *Backing Up the Creo System Partition*.



**Tip:** If you want to copy this file to an external device, it is located on D:\Backup\SYSPART.GHO.

#### **Restoring the Creo System Partition**

Before restoring the Creo system partition, we recommend that you backup any important jobs, using the procedure described in *Backing Up and Restoring the Job List Database* on page 473.



**Note:** If you are already logged on your system and the Spire CXP5000 color server workspace is open, exit the workspace and proceed to step 4.

- 1. Turn on your computer.
- 2. Place CD-ROM #1 (Windows 2000 Fast Install) in the DVD-ROM drive.
- 3. Restart the computer.
- 4. If you are already logged on to your system, on the Windows desktop, follow the path **Start>Shutdown>Restart**.
- 5. Wait until the **PC DOS Start Up Menu** appears. The following choices are available:
  - Creo Software Complete Overwrite Installation
  - Creo Software Preservation Installation (System Partition Overwrite)
  - Backup Creo System Partition
  - Restore Creo System Partition
  - DOS prompt
- 6. Use the keyboard arrows to select **Restore Creo System Partition**.
- 7. Press ENTER.

The system takes about one minute to respond, and then the following message appears. The restore process is irreversible and overwrites all information on the system partition.
To save job and other resource information use the
Backup\_Joblist.bat script.
Continue and restore system partition??
Yes/No

- If you press N (No), the following message appears.
   Please remove the CD-ROM and floppy from the drive and press CTRL+ALT+DELETE to reboot the computer.
- 9. If you press Y (Yes), the Norton Ghost window appears, and the files on partition D: are restored to partition C:.
- 10. When the process is complete, the following message appears. Please remove the CD-ROM and floppy from the drive and press CTRL+ALT+DELETE to reboot the computer.
- Remove the CD-ROM from the DVD-ROM drive, and press CTRL+ALT+DELETE to reboot.
   You have completed *Restoring the Creo System Partition*.

# Backing Up and Restoring the Job List Database

The following procedures can be performed at any time you want to backup and restore your job list database.

#### Backing Up the Job List Database

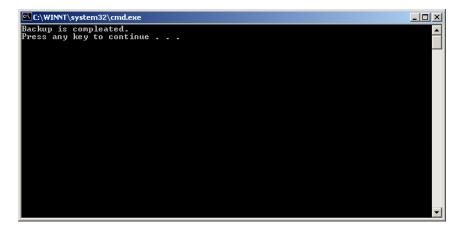


**Note:** If you are already logged on your system and the Spire CXP5000 color server workspace is open, exit the workspace and proceed to step 3.

- 1. Turn on your computer.
- 2. Exit the Spire application.
- 3. On the Windows desktop, double-click **My Computer**, and follow the path, **D:>Backup>Scripts**.

- D:\Backup\Scripts <u>\_ | ×</u> <u>File Edit View Favorites Tools H</u>elp Address 🔄 D:\Backup\Scripts ∂G0 • Name Size Type Modified Backup\_Joblist.bat 11/27/2003 12:41 PM 1 KB MS-DOS Batch File 1 KB MS-DOS Batch File 11/27/2003 12:42 PM Type: MS-DOS Batch File Size: 659 bytes 659 bytes 🖳 My Computer
- 4. In the D:\Backup\Scripts window, double-click **Backup\_Joblist.bat**.

5. When the backup is complete, the following message appears.



6. Press any key to continue. You have completed *Backing Up the Job List Database*.

#### **Restoring the Job List Database**



**Note:** If you are already logged on your system and the Spire CXP5000 color server workspace is open, exit the workspace and proceed to step 3.

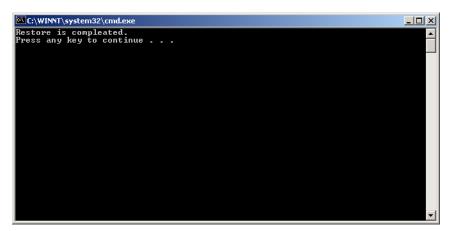
- 1. Turn on your computer.
- 2. Exit the Spire application.
- 3. On the Windows desktop, double-click **My Computer**, and follow the path, **D:>Backup>Scripts**.

- D:\Backup\Scripts <u>File Edit View Favorites Tools Help</u> 1  $\Leftrightarrow \mathsf{Back} \, \bullet \, \Rightarrow \, \bullet \, \textcircled{\bullet} \, \left[ \begin{array}{c} \textcircled{\sc op}{2} \mathsf{Search} & \fbox{\sc op}{1} \mathsf{Folders} & \textcircled{\sc op}{3} \end{array} \right] \overset{\bullet}{\operatorname{Pi}} \, \overset{\bullet}$ • 🖓 😡 Address 🔄 D:\Backup\Scripts Name 🔺 Size Type Modified Backup\_Joblist.bat 1 KB MS-DOS Batch File 11/27/2003 12:41 PM 1 KB MS-DOS Batch File 11/27/2003 12:42 PM Type: MS-DOS Batch File Size: 835 bytes 835 bytes 🖳 My Computer
- 4. In the D:\Backup\Scripts window, double-click **Restore\_Joblist.bat**.

The following message appears.



5. Press Y to continue.



The following window appears.

 Press any key to continue. You have completed *Restoring the Job List Database*. This page is intentionally left blank.

# Glossary

24 bit/3 byte image	An image can be either RGB or CMY and each of the three colors uses 1 byte or 8 bits of data. Since 3 bytes equals 24 bits, these images are also known as 24 bit images. This system is used for high quality video imaging and scanning. For process color printing, a fourth color (black) is added for optimum effect.
32 bit/4 byte image	An image that uses 8 bits each for CMYK pixels, or 8 bits for each RGB pixel and 8 pixels for a mask layer or other future use. Since 4 byte equal 32 bits, these images are also known as 32 bit images. An 8 bit CMYK image is the minimum required for high quality print reproduction.
4 color printing	Color reproduction method used to create full color output by overlaying cyan, magenta, yellow and black inks.
8 bit/1 byte image	An image limited to 256 tones of one color or 256 different colors. Since 1 byte contains 8 bits and each bit has two choices, 1 byte equals 28 choices or 256 possibilities.
Additive color model	Color system in which the picture is composed of the combination of Red (R), Green (G) and Blue (B) light transmitted by the original subject. Effective for monitors and TV's but not for print. Scanners normally first scan in RGB and it is converted into CMYK for printing. See also <i>RGB</i> , <i>CMYK</i> , <i>Process colors</i> , <i>Subtractive color model</i> .
Amplitude Modulation	Halftone screening, as opposed to FM screening, has dots of variable size with equal spacing between dot centers.
Anti-Aliasing	A step effect in which angled lines or curved edges of elements in an electronic image look broken or jagged, as a result of producing it in a grid format. Increasing resolution can reduce this effect or using a technique called anti-aliasing where the edges are softened.

APR	Creo's Automatic Picture Replacement workflow. In this workflow, two versions of a file are created - a high-resolution file and a low- resolution file called PSImage. The latter is used for positioning and manipulation within a DTP application. The low-resolution file is replaced automatically by the high-resolution version during the RIP process. See also <i>PSImage</i> .
Binding	The process by which pages of a book or other publication are attached to one another.
Bit	Abbreviation of binary digits. The smallest unit of information used to store information in a computer. Bits are expressed as a binary notation, that is, in ones and zeros.
Bitmap graphics	An image composed of individual pixels. The color value and position of each pixel are individually described in bits and bytes of computer memory. It is called a bitmap because it is effectively a map of bits. See also <i>Raster file</i> .
Bleed	An extra amount of printed image, which extends beyond the trim edge of the sheet or page.
Booklet	VI jobs are composed of booklets, which are personalized copies of a document. A booklet can consist of several pages, but the entire document is targeted at a specific individual or address. VI jobs include elements that may differ from booklet to booklet, including text, graphics, pictures and page backgrounds.
Butt	To join without overlapping or space between.
Byte	A grouping of 8 bits of stored information, giving 256 levels of data. Each byte represents a value or character such as a letter or a number. In a color system, a byte can describe one out of 256 distinct shades.
CIE	Abbreviation for Commission Internationale d'Eclairage. This body was created for the study of illumination problems. CIE color coordinates specify proportions of the three additive colors required to produce any hue and are used for comparative color measurement.
СМҮК	The process colors - Cyan, Magenta, Yellow and Black. See also <i>Color separations</i> , <i>Process colors</i> , and <i>Subtractive color model</i> .
Color gamut	The range of colors possible with any color system.

Color separations	Separate films are prepared for each of the process printing inks - cyan, magenta, yellow and black. These films are used to prepare the printing plates for printing on press. See also <i>CMYK</i> .
Composite mode	In composite mode, the data required to separate a page into its CMYK components is all contained within one single (composite) file. Brisque or PS/M then separates the file into CMYK as part of the conversion process. This processing mode is the fastest and most efficient in the majority of cases.
Creep	The effect of middle pages of a folded signature extending slightly beyond outside pages, compensated by shingling. See also <i>Shingling</i> .
Сгор	To eliminate portions of an illustration or photography so the remainder is more clear, interesting or able to fit the layout.
ст	Abbreviation for continuous tone. Color or black and white photographic images with tones that change gradually from dark to light (unlike the abrupt changes in linework).
DCS	Abbreviation for Desktop Color Separation, an EPS format containing 5 files. Four of the files contain the color information for each of the CMYK colors and the fifth is a low-resolution composite file for use in electronic page layout. See also <i>OPI</i> .
Degradé	A gradual blend or transition between colors. Also known as vignette or graduated blend ( <i>Vector drawing</i> ).
Digital front end system	In electronic publishing, this is the workstation or group of workstations containing the applications software for preparing pages of type and graphics. In prepress, this is the workstation that gives access to the user for the operation of hardware. For example, proofer, platesetter, imagesetter.
Digital proof	A black and white or color image reproduction made from digital information without producing intermediate films. It can be output as a digital hard proof using a peripheral output device or displayed as a digital soft proof on a video monitor.
Dot	The individual element of a halftone.
Dot area	The percentage of an area covered by halftone dots ranging from no dots at 0% to a solid ink density at 100%. The size of a single dot is stated in a percentage of the area it occupies.

DTP	Abbreviation for Desktop Publishing. The process of page production using personal computers, off-the-shelf software and an output device such as a printer or imagesetter. Usually, these components form a system that is driven by a device-independent page description language such as PostScript.
EPS	Abbreviation for Encapsulated PostScript, a graphic file format used to transfer PostScript, graphic files from one program to another. It includes both a low-resolution preview and the high resolution PostScript image description. On the Macintosh, the preview is in PICT format, on the PC it is in TIFF format. Also known as EPSF.
Finishing stage	Stage following the press process, which may include procedures such as laminating, perforating and varnishing.
Font	A complete assortment of letters, numbers, punctuation marks, characters etc. of a given design and size.
Frame	A color overlap created intentionally at a color border so as to minimize the effects of misregistration. Also known as trap or grip. See also <i>Trapping</i> .
Frequency modulated screens	A method of creating halftones where the spots are all the same size, but the frequency or number of dot changes in a given area. There are more dots in a dark area and fewer in a light area.
Frozen job	A job for which the appropriate paper stock is not available, for example, the correct paper type, paper size or paper weight.
GCR	Abbreviation for Gray Component Replacement. Method for reducing the CMY amounts that produce the gray component in a color, without changing the color hue.
Graduated blend	See Degradé.
Gravure printing	A printing method in which the image is engraved through a screen below the surface of a cylinder. The ink is transferred to paper when pressed to the cylinder. Gravure is used for very long print runs and on many substrates.
Gray component	The amounts of CMY in a color, which result in neutral gray, based on the lowest separation value of the color. See also <i>GCR</i> .
Grayscale	A scale of gray tones from white to black. Digitally, grayscale images have up to 256 different levels of gray. See also 8 <i>bit/1 byte image</i> .

Halftone	A negative or positive image whereby detail of the image is reproduced with dots varying area but of uniform density. Creates the illusion of continuous tone when viewed with the naked eye.
Highlights	The whitest portions of the original or reproduction that have no color cast. The highlight dot is ranged in the reproduction from the smallest printable dot to approximately 25%. See also <i>Midtones</i> and <i>Shadows</i> .
HSL	Abbreviation of Hue, Saturation and Lightness. This is a color model, which specifies a color by its wavelength (Hue), chroma or purity of the color (Saturation) and value of its brightness (Lightness).
lmage area	Portion of a negative or plate corresponding to inking on paper. The portion of paper on which ink appears.
Imposition	The arranging of pages in a press form to ensure the correct order after the printed sheet is folded, bound and trimmed.
Ink jet proof	A proof of a digital image printed by using jets that squirt minuscule drops of ink. Ink jet proofers can print onto a variety of surfaces.
Job Flow	Job flow refers to the job parameter settings of selected virtual printers that are automatically applied to all jobs printed using that virtual printer. These settings determine how a sent or imported file is processed. For example, a file sent to a virtual printer with a Process & Print job flow will be RIPped, printed and stored in the Storage Folder. A file sent to a Process & Store job flow virtual printer will be RIPped and stored, without printing.
LEF	A printer page orientation, where pages are delivered long edge first.
Laserwriter driver	A part of the Macintosh system software which generates PostScript instructions from an application file when the Print command is activated.
Look-up table (LUT)	A two or three-dimensional array of values stored for specified input- output relationships. When one input value is known, the system can automatically determine the correct output value. For example, the system can find the needed dot size for a given set of printing conditions based on the stored gray level; color setups can be saved in color tables (color transformation tables) which are one of the many kinds of LUTs.

Linework	Linework graphics are characterized by sharply defined lines and very clear transitions from one color to another. Linework is stored in the computer as a series of geometric (vector) drawing instructions.
Metamerism	Metamerism occurs when two colors match under one light source, but appear different under another light source. Those two colors are called a metameric match. A metameric match might cause problems when trying to match proofs to press-sheets under different lighting conditions.
Midtones	Density values of an image (original or reproduction) between the highlights and the shadows. In the reproduction, midtones are printed with dot areas between approximately 40% or 60%. See also <i>Highlights</i> and <i>Shadows</i> .
Misregistration	A situation common during printing where one or more of the color separations is slightly misaligned with regard to the others on press. Misregistration shows up as white gaps or tinted overlaps at the borders of color pairs. Colors containing such files are trapped to compensate for this possibility. On Continous Tone images, misregistration can lead to blurring. See also <i>Overprint</i> and <i>Trapping</i> .
Moiré	An interference pattern caused by differences in halftone screen angles or rulings. In process color printing, screen angles are selected to minimize this pattern. If the angles are not correct, a pattern that distracts the eye from the picture may be produced.
Newton's rings	Small concentric circles that can appear on film when two surfaces are closed together but not in perfect contact.
OPI	Abbreviation of Open Prepress Interface. A prepress convention established by Aldus Corps. OPI refers to tags or place holders in source PostScript that point to TIFF or EPS images that have not been embedded in the PostScript. These images reside in other locations and are merged with the PostScript file when processed. Normally used for performing high res/low res image substitution (alternative to Creo APR).
Output resolution	The number of laser dots per unit of linear measurement (millimeter, inch etc.) on film or paper.

Output tone curve	A graph showing the relationship of original input densities and the corresponding dot percentages on film.
Overprint	A technique, which overlaps colored elements to eliminate the appearance of gaps between elements caused by misregistration of the various separations during printing. For example, black text is normally set to overprint. See also <i>Trapping</i> and <i>Misregistration</i> .
PDL	Printer Description Language files (for example, PostScript, PDF, EPS, VPS, VIPP). The CXP5000 Color Server processes image files in PDL formats, converting them into a suitable Ready-To-Print format for direct, high-quality printing.
PICT	A Macintosh file format for bitmaps and vector graphics.
Pixels	Contraction of Picture Element. The smallest element of a digital image.
PostScript®	A programming and page description language that has become industry standard for electronic publishing. It is used to describe the entire page, including both text graphics and images. PostScript is completely independent of the printing device. Developed by Adobe Systems, Inc. <sup>™</sup>
Prepress	Generic term used to describe the processes involved in preparing images for printing. Includes the input, edit and output stages.
Printer description files	PPDs (PostScript Printer Definition), and PDFs (Printer Definition Files). These files are used by the Macintosh applications to prepare page and documents for specific output devices.
Process colors	The four ink colors used to reproduce full color images - cyan, magenta, yellow and black.
PSImage	A low-resolution EPS file used in the Creo APR workflow. This file is used for positioning in page layout. Changes made to this file will be applied to the high-resolution file, which automatically replaces it shortly before exposure. See also <i>APR</i> .
Quartertone	The tone area of an image influencing highlight detail and with density values between the white point and midtone. Typically, printed with a dot area near 25%. See also <i>Highlights</i> , <i>Midtones</i> , <i>Shadows</i> .

Raster file	A file of data that was scanned, processed or output sequentially, bit by bit and line by line. Also known as a bitmap.
Rasterization	The translation of vector information into bitmap information. Bitmaps may also require a new rasterization to comply with the screening parameters (dot shape, dot size) of the imagesetter that will expose them on film. See also <i>RIP</i> and <i>RIPing</i> .
Register	Fitting of two or more printing images or plates in exact alignment with each other.
Register marks	Crosses or other targets applied to original copy prior to printing. Used for positioning films in register or for register of two or more colors in process printing.
Resolution	The number of pixels, points or dots per unit of linear measurement. For example, pixels per millimeter on a video display, number of dots per inch or millimeter on film or paper.
	The resolution of an image is usually set the same vertically and horizontally. For example, a square millimeter with a resolution of 12 contains 144 pixels. The higher the resolution, the more image detail is recorded and the larger the digital file size.
RGB	Abbreviation for the additive primaries Red, Green and Blue. They are used in video monitors, scanning, and other uses where the light is direct and not reflected. The component colors are the three predominant colors in the visible light spectrum detected by the human eye. Combining these 3 colors together creates white light.
RIP	Abbreviation for Raster Image Processor. This is a software program or hardware device that converts vector information into pixel information to be imaged on an output file. This output file is imaged based on commands from the page description language.
RIPing	The process of rastering or converting bitmaps and vector graphics into raster images suitable to the screening parameters of the output device. Files are RIPed prior to exposure or plotting.
Saturated color	A color where the high and medium values approach 100%. In a saturated clean color, the values of the wanted colors are near 100% and the value of the unwanted color is near 0%. For example, when the color is red, 5% cyan, 90% magenta, 80% yellow is more saturated than 30% cyan, 90% magenta, 80% yellow.

Glossary

Saturation	The strength of a color.
Screen angle	The angle of rows of halftone dots represented in degrees. During output of films for reproduction, the dot arrangement of each separation film is placed at a distinct and different angle to the other separations. See also <i>Moiré</i> .
Screen rulings	The number of rows of printing dots per inch on a halftone film. A 150lpi-screen ruling provides much better quality than 65lpi.
SEF	A printer page orientation, where pages are delivered short end first.
Shadows	The darkest part of an image (original and reproduction) having densities near to maximum density. In the reproduction, shadows are printed with dot areas between 80% and 100% See also <i>Highlights</i> and <i>Midtones</i> .
Shingling	A procedure that moves the image area of a page toward the direction specified, usually towards the binding, in order to compensate for creep.
Signature	Sheet of printed pages which when folded becomes part of the publication.
Solid	The point in the picture printed with a dot area of 100%. See also <i>Highlights</i> , <i>Midtones</i> and <i>Shadows</i> .
Spectrophotometer	Spectrophotometer (X-Rite DTP41), which is a 24 band color measurement instrument that reports densitometric, colorimetric and spectral data.
Spot color	An additional separation (fifth, or more) that is used with special inks to achieve difficult color combinations, such as gold, or chocolate brown. Spot color is sometimes used by graphic artists to define special corporate colors, for example, for company logos. On the CXP5000 Color Server, spot colors are tanslated into CMYK values using a dictionary, that can be edited to adjust CMYK values.
Step and repeat	The procedure of copying the same image by stepping it in position both horizontally and vertically according to a predetermined layout.

Stochastic screening	A method of creating frequency-modulated halftones that depends on the number of laser dots in a given area rather than the size of the laser dots in a given area. The dots are randomly placed and very small. Areas with a higher dot percent have more spots exposed in that area and those with a low dot percent have fewer spots. Stochastic screening is used to eliminate moiré and improve picture detail and sharpness in high-end color printing.
Subtractive color model	A color process in which the red, green and blue components of the original subject are reproduced as three super-imposed images in the complementary (subtractive) colors of cyan, magenta and yellow respectively. See also <i>CMYK</i> , <i>Process colors</i> , <i>Additive color model</i> .
Three quartertone	Tone area of an image influencing the shadow detail and with density values between the Midtone and the Dark Point. Typically printed with a dot area near 75%.
Three quartertone	Tone area of an image influencing the shadow detail and with density values between the Midtone and the Dark Point. Typically printed with a dot area near 75%.
Tone compression	The reduction of the density range of an original to the density range achievable in the reproduction.
Tone reproduction curve	A graph showing the density of each point of the original and its corresponding density on the reproduction.
Trapping	Creating and overlap (spread) or an underlap (choke) between colors that adjoin each other to hide misregistration during printing. Trapping is sometimes referred to as spreads and chokes, or fatties and skinnies.
UCR	Abbreviation of Undercolor Removal. This is a method for reducing the CMY content in neutral gray shadow areas of a reproduction and replacing them with black. As a result, the reproduction appears normal but less process color inks are used. See also <i>GCR</i> .
Unsaturated color	A color whose highest value is less than approximately 80%. In an unsaturated, dirty color, the difference in the values of the wanted colors and the unwanted color is relatively low.
	For example, when the color is red, 30% cyan, 80% magenta, 70% yellow is more unsaturated than 0% cyan, 90% magenta, 80% yellow.

Variable Information (VI)	Variable information (VI) jobs are jobs in which the printed materials are individualized for specific recipients or purposes. These materials can include bills, targeted advertising and direct mailings.
Vector drawing	The geometric system used to define lines and curves in many computer graphics most often used for line drawings.
Vignette	See Degradé.
Virtual Printer	For Macintosh and PC networks, the CXP5000 Color Server provides three default network printers, known as virtual printers. Virtual printers contain preset workflows that are automatically applied to all print jobs processed with that virtual printer.
White point	The whitest neutral area of an original or reproduction that contains detail and is reproduced with the smallest printable dot (typically 3% to 5%).

This page is intentionally left blank.

# Index

# Α

Aborted status, 199 Absolute colorimetric, 43, 336 Accounting Log printing and exporting, 218 setup, 423 Accounting Viewer setting, 218 viewing log, 215 Actual size button, 206 Adding crop marks, 239 fold marks, 240 interleaves, 172 new virtual printer, 221 Admin Page, 46, 289 Administration Items, 398 Administrator user, 18 Adobe Acrobat, 64 Photoshop, 9, 258 Alert Messages, 422 Alerts tab, 81 Alerts window, 20, 425 Anti-aliasing, 9, 41 AppleTalk Setup, 404 Application, opening, 17 APR. See Automatic Picture Replacement Archiving a job, 202 VI elements, 393 VI jobs, 202 Auto Adjusted Calibration, 314 Auto Log On, 18 Automatic deletion, 46 screening, 346 Automatic Picture Replacement about, 253 file formats, 258 preparing to print, 258 printing with, 259 sample job, 260 setting APR options, 253

workflow, 261 Automatic Screening, 420

## В

Back Cover, 293 Backing up calibration tables, 331 Black overprint, 42, 181 Bleed, 239 Book-finishing technique, 233 Booklets tab, 206 Brightness, 45, 351 slider, 368 Brochure, 260 Bypass held jobs, 418

# С

Cached VI Elements, 391 Calibration, 45, 308 auto adjusted calibration, 314 backing up tables, 331 creating a table, 318 editing tables, 326 frequency, 312 full calibration, 313 graph, 329 guidelines, 309 methods, 314 organizing tables, 330 process, 309 quick calibration, 313 saving tables, 330 select table, 347 separations, 327 target calibration, 314 value tables, 328 when to calibrate, 308 window, 316 wizard, 318 X-Rite DTP34 QuickCal Densitometer, 310 Calibration Method, 315 Client workstations Macintosh, 66

Windows, 48 CMYK editing values, 357 workflow, 44, 340 Coating, 41, 174 Collating templates, 243 Collation, 40, 163 Color adjustments, 350 conversion tables, 420 flow, 334 formats, 334 last-minute corrections, 334 management, 9 mapping, 355 tab, 334, 360 tools, 352 Color density data, 331 Color mode, 43, 338 Color Server, turning on, 16 Color settings, 419 Color Space Array. See CSA (Color Space Array) Colorimetric Absolute, 336 Relative, 336 Complete overwrite, 433 Completed status, 199 Configuration Backup, 412 Restore, 413 restoring, 452 view, 424 Consumables tab, 25 Contrast, 45, 351 center, 369 slider, 368 Copying page from a job, 213 Creating gradation tables, 370 spot colors, 359 Creep, 241 Creo Synapse InSite export, 379 Creo system partition backing up, 471

restoring, 472 Crop marks, 239 CSA (Color Space Array), 335, 341, 419 CT (Continuous Tone), 45, 345, 357, 420 Curling effect, 45 Cut & Stack, 232

## D

Data flow, 12 Date changing, 400 Default Archive Path setting, 417 Default Gradation Table, 360, 363 Default Paper Size setting, 417 Deleting pages from a job, 212 spot colors, 359 VI elements, 392 virtual printers, 224 Deletion policy, 167 Delivery, 162 Densitometer. See X-Rite DTP34 QuickCal Densitometer Density graph, 331 Destination ICC profile importing, 354 Destination profile, 45 Device Link, 341 managing profiles, 353 DFE and Printer Animation, 405 DFE Monitor, 22 Disk configuration, 432 Disk threshold, 411 Disk Usage tab, 22 Disk wipe, 409 Distilling a PS file, 262 Domain changing, 400 Dotted line, 237 Downloads, 83 DTP application, 240 DTP34 Tutorial, 319 Duplex head to head, 40, 160 head to toe, 40, 160 Dynamic page exceptions, 279

adding in PDF, 281 adding in PS and Variable Specification formats, 280 adding in VIPP format, 283 creating a dedicated virtual printer, 286 in PS and VPS, 280 printing tabs, 285 setting the Spire Color Server, 279 tips and limitations, 288 viewing preflight report, 379

#### Ε

Editing calibration tables, 326 CMYK values, 357 imposition jobs, 251 pantone colors, 357 separations, 364 virtual printers, 223 Emulate RGB Elements, 44 RGB elements, 342 source paper tint, 44 EPS, 10 Exceptions dynamic page exceptions, 279 Exceptions tab, 267 deleting exceptions, 269 managing exceptions, 268 managing inserts, 270 Exporting accounting log, 218 as InSite, 379 as PDF2Go, 265

## F

Face Down, 40, 162 Face Up, 40, 162 FAF, 9, 41 Failed status, 199 Fast Web View, 263 Features, new, 6 File formats, 10 Filtering messages, 429 Storage window, 200

Finisher, 294 module, 47 offset, 47 Finisher tab, 24 Finishing tab, 289 First page button, 205 Fit to page button, 206 Fit to paper, 165 Fold marks, 240 Font Report, 378 Fontdownloader, 38, 297 Fonts, 297 downloading, 301 fontdownloader hot folder for Windows, 304 list of, 297 managing fonts, 300 substituting, 305 Front Cover, 291 Frozen job, 175, 186

# G

Gallop, 166, 167 GAP (Graphic art port), 10, 86 GAP (Graphic art port). See also Graphic Art Port files, 372 GCR (Gray Component Replacement), 45, 348 General Defaults, 417 Gradation, 350 brightness, 368 contrast, 368 controls, 365 creating tables, 370 end, 368 graph, 365 highlight, 366 mid point, 367 organizing tables, 369 shadow, 367 start point, 366 table, 350 tool, 360 window, 360 Graphic Art Port files, 372 importing, 372 structure, 373 supporting, 372

Gray RGB, 43 Grayscale, 43 Grayscale images, 39 Guest user, 18 Gutter size, 238

#### Η

Hardware components, 6 HCS (High Capacity Stacker), 47 Held Jobs Policy, 418 Held status, 199 Help online help, 30 Help menu, 29 High-resolution Automatic Picture Replacement, 253 deleting a path, 256 modifying a path, 256 Open Prepress Interface, 256 setting a path, 254 workflow, 252 Hot folders file formats, 86 GAP formats, 86 Mac OS 9, 87 Mac OS X, 89 using, 85 using from client workstations, 86 Windows, 86 HTH, 40 HTT, 40

#### I

ICC profiles deleting, 357 Ignoring overprint information, 183 Image noise, 43, 183 quality, 41 Image orientation for imposition, 40 Image Position, 164 Image quality, 178 Image Scale, 40, 165 Importing destination ICC profiles, 354 files, 154 GAP files, 372

jobs, 154 source ICC profiles, 353 user-defined imposition templates, 249 Imposed sheets, 208 view, 209 Imposition, 9 editing jobs, 251 method, 231 settings, 208 tab, 230, 231 workflow, 230 Imposition templates, 242 collating templates, 243 deleting, 251 predefined, 243 renaming, 251 user defined, 249 Improving quality of images, 178 Initial creep out, 242 Ink saving, 45, 348 Inline elements, 384 Inserts, 267 Interleave, 172 Internet Explorer, 77 IPX printing, 402 configuring, 148, 149

## J

Jagged edges, 9 Iob abort running, 194 accounting, 215 archiving, 202 batching, 191, 417 copying pages from another job, 213 deleting, 196 deleting pages, 212 duplicating, 201 editing parameters, 196 flow, 46, 224 frozen, 186 history, 427 merging jobs, 212 move to storage, 195 moving pages, 211 Preview & Editor, 205

reprinting, 156 retrieving, 203 run immediately, 197 running job, 187 submitting, 201 ticket report, 226 Variable Information (VI), 382 waiting job, 187 Job Deletion, 389 Job Parameters window, 27 Color tab, 29 Exceptions tab, 29 Finishing tab, 29 Imposition tab, 29 Paper Stock tab, 28 Print Quality tab, 28 Print Settings tab, 28 Services tab, 29

## Κ

Key job components, 375

## L

Landscape, 40, 160 Language settings, 415 Last page button, 205 Last-minute adjustments, 352 Lead, 164 LEF, 171 Line Work (LW), 420 Links, 84 Linux printing from, 114 user interface, 108, 115 using commands, 114 Localization, 415 Logging On as a different user, 18 LPR printing, 91 in Windows NT 4.0, 91 setting up in Mac OS X, 106 Spire over TCP/IP in Mac OS 9, 108 using Windows commands, 105 Windows 2000 and Windows XP, 97 LW (Line Work), 10, 45, 345, 357

#### Μ

Mac OS 9 copying PPD file, 66 setting network printer, 68 using a hot folder, 87 using Spire over TCP/IP, 108 Mac OS X copying PPD file, 68, 70 setting up an LPR printer, 106 using a hot folder, 89 Macintosh, 10 defining a printer on client workstations, 66 printing from, 75 using the fontdownloader, 301 working from client workstations, 66 Margins, 237, 238 Marks & bleed, 239 Max details button, 206 Menu bar, 20 Merging jobs, 212 Message Viewer, 428 Message Viewer Log setup, 423 Messages, 422 system disks threshold, 426 Misregistration, 41 Mode, 43 Monitoring jobs, 78 Moving pages within a job, 211 waiting jobs to storage, 195

#### Ν

Navigation buttons, 205 NDS PConsole using, 137, 148 Network printer setting for Mac OS 9, 68 setting for Mac OS X, 72 Network Setup, 401 Network tab, 22 Next page button, 205 No. of Copies, 158 Novell client installing printer drivers using Adobe PS, 151 Novell Directory Services configuring and setting, 135 defining printer queues, 136 defining the Spire Color Server as a client, 151 Novell Netware Administrator opening, 136 Novell NetWare Administrator application using, 136 Number of copies, 158

## 0

Online help, 30 Open Prepress Interface, 256 file formats, 258 preparing to print, 258 printing with, 259 Operator user, 18 OPI. *See* Open Prepress Interface Optimize for Fast Web View, 263 Orientation, 40, 234 Override PPD parameters, 223 Overwrite installation, 433

## Ρ

Page exceptions dynamic, 279 Exceptions tab, 267 inserts, 267 printing on tabs, 271 setting for imposed jobs, 271 workflows, 270, 271 Pantone colors, 357 Paper stock tab, 167 tint, 44, 342 type, 40 Paper Set Name, 168 Paper sets, 40 adding, 168 deleting, 170 modifying, 170 name list, 168 Paper Size, 170

Paper Stock tab, 23, 167 Paper type, 172 Passwords, 408 changing, 409 PC, 10 PDF, 10 optimization, 261 workflow, 261 PDF2Go exporting, 264 PDL, 32 PDL files, 13 Perceptual (photographic), 43, 337 Perfect bound, 233 Personal Print Markup Language (PPML), 10, 383, 386 Photoshop, 9 Portrait, 40 jobs, 160 PostScript, 383 PostScript files creating on Windows, 58 PowerPoint, 39 PPD file copying for Mac OS 9, 66 copying for Mac OS X, 70 copying from Windows, 64 setting job parameters, 39 PPML. See Personal Print Markup Language (PPML) Preferences, 398 Preflight Check, 374 Preflight Report about, 375 viewing, 376 Preloaded software, 431 Pre-RIP editing, 8 Preview, 416 Preservation installation, 433 Preserve Pure Colors, 44 Preview buttons, 206 gradations, 361 Previous page button, 205 Print grays using only black toner, 338, 340 quality tab, 259

#### Index

Print Method, 40, 160 Print Order, 161 Print Quality tab, 176 Print Queue, 33, 186 status indicators, 188 Print Queue Manager, 417 Print range, 158, 159 Print Settings tab, 157 Printer defining on Macintosh client workstations, 66 defining on UNIX, 118 defining on Windows client workstations, 48 Printer icon, 21 Printer Monitor, 23 Printer tab, 82 Printer's default, 39, 65 Printers default network, 38 Printing accounting log, 218 book-style hard copies, 160 from Linux, 114 from UNIX, 118 jobs, 154 LPR, 91 using a hot folder (Mac OS 9), 87 using a hot folder (Mac OS X), 89 using a hot folder (Windows), 86 Process Queue, 33, 186 status indicators, 188 Processing, 33 ProcessPrint, 13, 46, 221 ProcessStore, 13, 46, 221 Product overview, 4 Profile Manager, 352 PS (PostScript) distilling files, 262 files, 387 Image Exporter, 258 overprint, 42, 182 PS overprint, 182 PS Preview, 416

# Q

QuarkXPress, 9, 256, 358 Queues handling jobs, 193 managing, 186 reordering, 192 resuming, 193 setting preferences, 186 suspending, 193 window, 33, 186 Queues tab, 79 Queues window, 20 QuickCal Densitometer. *See* X-Rite DTP34 QuickCal Densitometer

#### R

Rasterized Brisque jobs, 373 Realistic images, 337 Rear, 164 Red corners, 237 Reinstalling methods, 433 Reinstalling the System, 430 Relative colorimetric, 43, 336 Remote Admin, 405 Remote Admin Client, 406 Remote connection, 405 Remote Tools Setup, 405 Rendering intent, 335 absolute colorimetric, 336 for CMYK, 44, 341 for RGB, 43 perceptual (photographic), 337 relative colorimetric, 336 saturated (presentation), 336 Reordering columns, 429 Repeated elements, 262 Resource Center, 26 Restoring configuration, 413, 452 Resubmitting, 35 Retrieving a job, 203 VI elements, 393 VI jobs, 202 Re-usable elements, 384 Reverse print order, 40 RGB, 39 workflow, 43, 339 RIP, 4, 8 Rotate 180, 40, 166 RTP, 4, 8 discarding data, 199

editing RTP jobs, 211 jobs, 360 Rush job, 197

#### S

Saddle stitch, 233 Saturated (presentation), 43, 336 Screening method, 45, 345, 420 Security, 408 SEF, 171 Separation calibration, 327 editing, 364 field, 364 viewing, 329 Server icon, 21 Server Name changing, 399 Server Setup, 398 Settings Administration, 398 Color, 419 Configuration Backup, 411 Date and Time, 400 General Defaults, 417 Localization, 415 Messages, 422 Network Setup, 401 Preferences, 398 Pre-RIP Preview, 416 Print Queue Manager, 417 Remote Tools Setup, 405 Security, 408 Server Name, 399 Server Setup, 398 System Disks, 410 Settings window, 25, 398 Administration, 398 Show info button, 210 Signature colors, 336 Simplex, 40, 160 Sizes, 233 Slip Sheet, 47, 290 Software components, 6 Source ICC profiles importing, 353 Spine trim size, 238 Spire over TCP/IP, 108

Spire Web Center, 76, 407 connecting from a client, 77 Downloads, 83 Links, 84 Web Viewer, 78 Split to booklets, 46, 395 SpoolStore, 13, 46, 221, 225 Spot color create new, 359 deleting, 359 Spot Color Editor, 357 Spot Colors Report, 377 Spot workflow, 343 Stack tray, 47 Staple options, 47 Status of imported jobs, 155 Status indicators Queues window, 188 Status panel, 20 information, 190 Step & Repeat, 232 Storage tab, 80 Storage window, 13, 20, 34, 195, 198 filtering, 200 status indicators, 199 Submitting, 32 an RTP job, 156 jobs, 201 Suspend/Resume button, 193 SWOP, 44 Synapse, 379 System Disks, 410 System partition backing up, 471 backup and restore, 433 overwrite, 433 restoring, 472

## Т

Tabs printing, 271 Target Calibration, 314 TCP/IP Setup, 403 Template, 235 Text and line quality, 41 Text/Line quality, 176 Thumbnail window, 20 Thumbnails

tab, 207 view, 207 Time changing, 400 Tips, 288 Toner tab, 24 Toolbar, 20 Top tray, 47 Total creep in, 241 Transparency, 172 Trapping, 9, 41, 179 Tray, 175 Trim size, 234 conflicting settings, 237 Turning off Spire Color Server, 36 Turning on Spire Color Server, 16 Type, 172

## U

UNIX, 10 defining a printer, 118 printing from, 118 UNIX connectivity checking NFS, 130 configuring NFS server settings, 123 creating file-name translation file, 122 installing and configuring Brisque, 131 installing SFU 3.0 software, 119 mounting Windows NFS volume, 132 NFS performance, 121 sending samples to Windows NFS volume, 134 setting up Windows SFU for Brisque, 123 sharing an NFS folder, 128 Use Spire Spot color dictionary, 44 User defined imposition templates deleting, 251 importing, 249 renaming, 251 User Passwords, 408 Using overprint information, 183

Utilities folder, 10, 83

## V

Variable data Intelligent Postscript Printware (VIPP), 10, 383, 385 Variable Information (VI), 9 archiving VI elements, 393 booklets, 384 deleting VI elements, 392 document formats, 383 elements, 202 gallop, 388 imposing VI jobs, 390 inline elements, 384 jobs, 382 managing VI elements, 391 printing VI jobs, 387 retrieting VI elements, 393 sub-job, 384 workflow, 382 Variable Print Specification (VPS), 10, 383 VI Job Preview, 416 View Queues, 21 refresh, 21 Spire classic, 21 Spire classic plus, 21 View Configuration, 424 Viewing the imposed job, 209 VIPP jobs printing, 386 VIPP. See Variable data Intelligent Postscript Printware (VIPP) Virtual printer, 220 adding, 221 editing, 223 existing, 224 ProcessPrint, 221 ProcessStore, 221 SpoolStore, 221 Virtual Printers tab, 23 VPS. See Variable Print Specification (VPS)

#### W

Web Connect, 407 Web Connect Setup, 407 Web connections enabling, 408 Web Viewer, 78, 408 Alerts tab, 81 API, 82 Printer tab, 82 Queues tab, 79 Storage tab, 80 Weight, 41, 173 Windows copying the PPD file, 64 creating PostScript files, 58 defining a printer on a client workstation, 48 printing from, 64 printing using a hot folder, 86 working from client workstations, 48 Windows 2000 printing using commands, 105 Windows 2000 and Windows ME defining a printer, 52 Windows 2000 and Windows XP setting up an LPR printer, 97 Windows 98 defining a printer, 50 Windows NT 4.0 defining a printer, 48 printing using commands, 105 setting up an LPR printer, 91 Windows XP defining a printer, 55 defining a printer using the add printer wizard, 55 printing using commands, 105 Workflow, 10, 43 basic, 31 importing and printing from the client, 32 importing and printing from the Spire Color Server, 33 resubmitting a job, 35 Workflow extenders, 9 Workgroup changing, 400

Workspace alerts, 20 cutomizing, 20 menu bar, 20 opening, 17, 27 overview, 19 queues, 20 status panel, 20 storage, 20 thumbnail, 20 toolbar, 20

#### Х

X-Rite DTP34 QuickCal Densitometer calibrating, 310, 312 configuring, 311 connecting, 311 quick calibration, 313

#### Υ

Yellow corners, 237

This page is intentionally left blank.